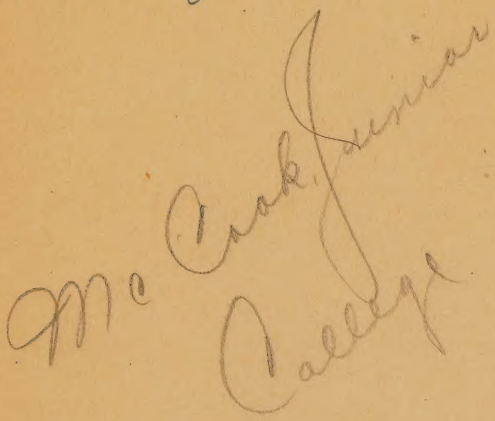
A SPANISH GRAMMAR

COESTER

Mary Carpenter
511 East Third Street

McCook Junior College.



LIBRERIA

A SPANISH GRAMMAR

WITH PRACTICAL INTRODUCTORY LESSONS

BY

ALFRED COESTER, PH.D.

GINN AND COMPANY

BOSTON · NEW YORK · CHICAGO · LONDON

ATLANTA · DALLAS · COLUMBUS · SAN FRANCISCO

COPYRIGHT, 1912, 1917, BY
ALFRED COESTER

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

PRINTED IN THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

A 428.5

The Athenæum Press
GINN AND COMPANY · PROPRIETORS · BOSTON · U.S.A.

PREFACE

This book is the outcome of teaching Spanish for several years to different types of pupils. The author's purpose has been to supply a useful book to English-speaking students of Spanish. Usefulness has therefore been the standard in determining the arrangement of the material. The introductory lessons are easy and progressive, assuming little or no general knowledge of grammar and language. They attempt to take advantage of the strength of first impressions; for example, the use of **usted** is given prominence at the outset so that the pupil will be less likely at a later period to employ **tú** and the second singular in business correspondence. Other features of the book are, (1) exercises specially designed for drill on peculiarities of grammar that require habit to fix; (2) ample material for oral work; (3) a progressive vocabulary that attempts to include the commonest and hence most important words and phrases with many colloquial expressions that are necessary in social intercourse; (4) an order of development that has been proved of practical value.

In the first few lessons, sentences illustrative of the grammatical topic of the lesson have been given before the explanation, as it is intended that these sentences should be committed to memory before proceeding to the explanation. Special vocabularies to each lesson have been omitted because the preparation of such a special vocabulary is a useful exercise which is too often sacrificed in elementary books.

Part I furnishes an introduction to the chief characteristics of Spanish and is sufficient for a good working knowledge of the language. Part II takes up in systematic order those details of

grammar which were neglected or hastily passed over in the first part. As the second part will not be studied until the pupil finds his reading in a continued text, no Spanish exercises are given. On the other hand, abundant material is provided for the translation of English to Spanish. The sentences in these exercises are short, according to the author's principle of presenting to the pupil only a few difficulties at one time with ample practice on the point under discussion. As the English sentences are mainly translations of colloquial or literary Spanish, their rendering by the student should result in characteristically idiomatic expression.

The purpose of the illustrations is to teach pictorially some ideas about Spanish civilization and history in Spain and America. The text accompanying the pictures may be used as translation exercises on which the teacher may base questions in Spanish similar to those suggested. In order that early use may be made of the illustrations, the first questions are framed in simple language. The later pictures are inserted in a historical order so as to give a brief survey of the most important events in Spanish history.

The teacher who desires to use only Spanish in the classroom will find at the end of the book a brief summary in Spanish of the rules discussed in Part I. This will supply not only the proper grammatical terms but also idiomatic language to use when talking about grammar with the pupils.

The author wishes to thank Mr. E. S. Harrison for his suggestions and kindness in reading the manuscript and proof.

ALFRED COESTER

CONTENTS

PART I

INTRODUCTORY LESSONS

LESSON		PAGE
I.	Conjugation, Present Indicative. Exercise 1	10
II.	Gender and Number of Nouns. Articles. Exercise 2	13
III.	**Ser. Estar.** Exercise 3	16
IV.	Agreement of Adjectives. Exercise 4	18
V.	Possession. Demonstratives. Exercise 5	21
VI.	Personal Subject Pronouns. Possessive Adjectives. **Tener.** Exercise 6	24
VII.	Numerals. Days. Months. Seasons. Exercise 7	27
VIII.	Comparison of Adjectives. Exercise 8	32
IX.	Radical-Changing Verbs. Indirect Object. Personal **a.** Exercise 9	36
X.	Reflexive Verbs. Exercise 10	41
XI.	Preterit Tense. Exercise 11	45
XII.	Imperfect Tense. Exercise 12	49
XIII.	Participles. Perfect and Pluperfect Tenses. Relatives. Exercise 13	52
XIV.	Future Tense and Conditional. Exercise 14	57
XV.	Personal Pronouns. Adverbs. Exercise 15	61
XVI.	Irregular Verbs. Exercise 16	66
XVII.	Imperative Mood. Present Subjunctive as Imperative. Exercise 17	71
XVIII.	Two Objective Pronouns. Possessive Pronouns. Exercise 18	76
XIX.	Infinitive Mood. Exercise 19	83
XX.	Subjunctive Mood in Dependent Clauses. Exercise 20	92
XXI.	Subjunctive Mood, Imperfect Tense. Exercise 21	96
XXII.	Letter-Writing. Exercise 22	100

PART II

SYSTEMATIC ACCIDENCE AND SYNTAX

CHAPTER		PAGE
I.	Order of Words. Exercise 23	107
II.	Articles. Exercise 24	111
III.	Nouns. Exercise 25	118
IV.	Adjectives. Exercise 26	126
V.	Adjectives, Continued. Exercise 27	131
VI.	Numerals. Exercise 28	139
VII.	Possessives and Demonstratives. Exercise 29	147
VIII.	Relative Pronouns. Exercise 30	152
IX.	Interrogative Pronouns. Exercise 31	159
X.	Indefinite Expressions. Exercise 32	163
XI.	Personal Pronouns. Exercise 33	171
XII.	Adverbs. Exercise 34	179
XIII.	Prepositions, Conjunctions, Interjections. Exercise 35	190
XIV.	Verb Forms. Exercise 36	204
XV.	Syntax of Verb. Tenses. Impersonals. Exercise 37	241
XVI.	Passive Voice. Participles. Exercise 38	248
XVII.	Infinitive and Subjunctive Moods. Exercise 39	255
XVIII.	Idiomatic Uses of Verbs. Exercise 40	263
	Appendix I. Verb List	271
	Appendix II. Prepositions used with Certain Verbs before Dependent Infinitives	277
	Appendix III. Repaso de Gramática	285

SPANISH-ENGLISH VOCABULARY 297
ENGLISH-SPANISH VOCABULARY 317
INDEX 341

190
IONAL PHRASES - - - P. 191

SPANISH GRAMMAR

PART I

INTRODUCTION

1. The Alphabet. The Spanish alphabet has thirty different signs.

Letters	Names	Letters	Names	Letters	Names
A a	a	**J j**	jota	**R r**	ere
B b	be	**K k**	ka	— **rr**	erre
C c	ce	**L l**	ele	**S s**	ese
Ch ch	che	**Ll ll**	elle	**T t**	te
D d	de	**M m**	eme	**U u**	u
E e	e	**N n**	ene	**V v**	ve (*or* u de corazón) (u consonante)
F f	efe	**Ñ ñ**	eñe	**W w**	doble u (*or* ve doble)
G g	ge	**O o**	o	**X x**	equis
H h	(h)ache	**P p**	pe	**Y y**	y griega (*or* ye)
I i	i	**Q q**	cu	**Z z**	zeta

a. The names of the Spanish letters are feminine: **una b larga** *a long b* (that is, *b* not *v*).

b. The letters **k** and **w** are found chiefly in words adopted from foreign languages; the sound of **rr** at the beginning of words is represented by **r**.

2. Vowels. Spanish vowels have approximately the following values:

a as in *father*; **Ana**
e as *ā* in *gate*; **Pepe**
i as in *machine*; **Anita, María**
o as in *note*; **Manolo, Pedro**
u as *oo* in *moon*; **Tula**

a. At the end of a word after a vowel (with a few exceptions), and when standing alone, **i** is written **y**: **rey**, *king*; **y**, *and*.

b. The Spanish sounds of **e**, **o**, and **u** are simple and not diphthongal as frequently in English: **e** is not like *ey* in *they*, **o** is not like *o* in *no*, **u** is not like *u* in *cube*. Learners should try to acquire an accurate pronunciation of the simple sounds without the final glide which characterizes the English vowels.

c. In certain positions, especially before **l** and **r**, Spanish **e** has a more open sound like *e* of *met*: **papel**, *paper*; **tener**, *to have*; **ella**, *she*; **perro**, *dog*; **este**, *this*. The quality of the other vowels varies somewhat according as they stand in an accented syllable or not, but fine distinctions are unnecessary to the learner.

d. The quantity of Spanish vowels is short. The stressed syllable is not prolonged but merely pronounced with greater force.

e. The vowels **a e o** are called strong; **i** and **u** weak.

f. Spoken Spanish contracts two identical vowels into one syllable without lengthening: as, **de este** = **deste**, **cree** = **cre**, **la alta** = **lalta**.

3. Diphthongs. The strong vowels **a**, **e**, and **o** unite with the weak vowels **i** and **u** to form one syllable, called a diphthong. The weak vowels also combine with each other. Though each vowel keeps its own sound, the stress falls on the strong vowel, while the weak one is uttered rapidly: of two weak vowels, the last is stressed. The possible combinations are

ai (ay)	**Maracaibo, Garay**	**ia**	**Santiago, Colombia**
au	**Cauca, Bautista**	**ua**	**Juan, Managua**
ei (ey)	**Leiro, Caney**	**ie**	**Oviedo, Cienfuegos**
eu	**Ceuta, Europa**	**ue**	**Buenos Aires**
oi (oy)	**oiga, Alcoy**	**io**	**Dios, Antonio**
ou	**Bouzas**	**uo**	**cuota, antiguo**
iu	**Liuva, ciudad**	**ui (uy)**	**Luis**

a. Two strong vowels form distinct syllables: **Bil-ba-o, Le-ón, Lis-bo-a, Nar-vá-ez.**

b. If two vowels which commonly form a diphthong are pronounced separately, an accent mark is written over the vowel which bears the stress: **García, María, Valparaíso, Níobe, oído, flúido, Túy.**

4. Triphthongs. A strong vowel between two weak ones forms a combination which is pronounced as one syllable:

iái	**fiáis**	**uai (uay)**	**La Guaira, Paraguay**
iéi	**fiéis**	**uei (uey)**	**acentuéis, buey**

5. Consonants. **b** denotes the same sound as **v**. It resembles English *b* only at the beginning of a word and after **m** or **n**: **bala, también, enviar** (pronounce *embiar*). In other positions **b** (or **v**) represents a bilabial sound not consciously used in English. To produce it, bring the lips together as if to pronounce *b*, but, instead of closing them, allow the breath to issue continuously as in uttering *v*. Avoid English *v*, which is produced by allowing the breath to issue between the lower lip and the upper teeth. This sound does not exist in Spanish. Ex. — **Bilbao, bilbaíno, bebe.** Before **s** and **t**, **b** has the value of **p** or is silent: **obscuro** (often spelled **oscuro**), **subterráneo, absoluto.**

c represents two sounds:

1. A voiceless spirant, *th* in *thin*, before **e** and **i**: **Cervo, Ponce; Cid, Cicerón.**

2. A voiceless guttural, *k*, before **a, o, u,** or another consonant, or when final: **Costa Rica, Cuba, Clara, Tepic, lección.**

ch is pronounced like English *ch* in *church*: **Chile, chileno.**

d represents the voiced sound of *th* in *though*: **Toledo, Granada;** but approaches English *d* at the beginning of words or after **l** or **n**: **don, saldo, anda.** When final, **d** is usually silent: **Madrid, usted;** but some speakers give the voiceless sound of *th* in *thin*: **sed.** Intervocalic **d** is often silent, especially in the termination **ado**: **Prado** = *Prao*, **comprado** = *comprao.*

f is equivalent to English *f*: **Flandes, flamenco.**

g denotes two sounds:

1. A voiced guttural, *g* as in English *go*, before **a, o, u,** or another consonant: **Galicia, gallego, gusto, grande.** To indicate this sound before **e** or **i**, a silent **u** is inserted: **Portugal, portugués; guía.**

2. A strong aspirate before **e** and **i**, similar to German or Scotch *ch* in *loch* but frequently softened to a strong English *h* (see Spanish **j**): **Génova, genovés, Gibraltar.**

h is a silent letter in Castilian Spanish: **la Habana, habanero.** It is sometimes lightly pronounced before **ue**: **huevo.**

j (**jota**) denotes a strong aspiration, the same as **g** before **e** and **i**: **Jalisco, Jérez, Gijón.** When final, it is nearly or quite silent: **reloj** often written **reló.**

In some words the letter **x** used formerly to represent this sound, hence **México,** in Spain now spelled **Méjico**; **Xauxa** = **Jauja.**

k is not a Spanish letter but is used in a few borrowed foreign words with the value of English *k*: **kilo, kodak.**

l is equivalent to an English *l* when pronounced clearly in the forward part of the mouth as in *bill*: **Lisboa, lisbonense.**

ll denotes a sound similar to *lli* in *million*: **Castilla, castellano.** At the beginning of a word this sound is difficult for English speakers, who had better practice the vulgarism pronounced like *y* rather than allow the sound to lapse into a simple **l**: **Llanos, llave, lleno, lluvia, llorar.**

m is equivalent to English *m*: **Manila, manileño.**

n is more clearly pronounced than English *n*: **Nápoles, napolitano.** Before the guttural sounds *k* and *g*, before "jota" (**j**, and **g** before **e** and **i**), and before **hue, n** becomes the velar nasal represented by *ng* in *thing*: **blanco, blanquear, ángel, naranja, un huevo.** The same value is often given to emphatic monosyllables: **ten, pon.**

ñ is a sign having a value similar to *ni* in *onion.* The Spanish name for the mark over the letter is **tilde. España, español.**

p is like English *p*: **Panamá, panameño.** Before **s** and **t, p** is commonly silent: **psicología, séptimo, septiembre** (usually spelled **sétimo** and **setiembre**).

q is used only before **ue** and **ui,** with the sound of *k*; **lorqueño** (from **Lorca**), **Quito, quiteño.** After **q** the **u** is silent.

r at the beginning of a word represents the value of **rr** (see below); but in the middle or at the end of a word it has a reduced value of the same sound, being pronounced with a single flick of the tongue. Care should be taken not to slur the sound at the end of a word but to pronounce it distinctly. Ex. — **pero, comprar.**

rr is a strong trill with the tip of the tongue, produced just back of the upper teeth: **perro, Navarra, navarro, Puerto Rico, portorriqueño.**

s initial, between vowels, and final, has the sharp hissing sound of English *s*, never the value of English *z*. Compare English *president* with Spanish **presidente,** *rose* with **rosa.** Before a consonant, and sometimes when final, **s** tends to be reduced to a breathing and even to become silent: **las niñas** = *lath niñas* or *la' niñas*, **más rico** = *ma' rico*, **dos** = *do'*, **mismo** = *mi'mo*. Before **d, g,** and **m** in the same word, **s** sometimes resembles English *z*: **desde, musgo.** But students had better pronounce **s** as a sharp hiss in all positions: **Solís, Paso, los rusos.**

t is equivalent to English *t*, but more forcibly pronounced by bringing the tongue close to the upper teeth: **Trinidad, trinitario.**

v has the same values as **b**: **Valdivia, beber, vivir.**

w, used only in foreign proper names, has the foreign value: **Washington, Wagner.**

x is equivalent to English *x* pronounced like *ks*; before consonants, however, the sound tends to become a simple **s** and is so written in some words: **sexto** (**sesto**), **excelente.** Between vowels **x** is sometimes given the sound of *gs*: **examen.**

y as a vowel, see **i.** As a consonant **y** is like English *y* in *yes*, though strongly enunciated, not unlike the *y* in *Don't you*: **yo, Yucatán, yucateco.**

z has the sound of English *th* in *thin* (see **c** before **e** and **i**), and occurs before **a, o,** and **u,** final, and sometimes before another consonant: **Zamora, Zorita, Zurbarán, Vera Cruz, Guzmán.**

6. Peculiarities. In Spanish America and in parts of Spain the following peculiarities in pronunciation are common.

c before **e** and **i** is pronounced like *s*: **conocer, cita,** = *conoser* and *sita*.

d is silent between vowels: **matado** = *matao*, **vivido** = *vivio*, **nada** = *na*.

ll is like English *y* or even *j* in *jest*: **caballo** = *cabayo* or *cabajo*, **llega** = *yega* or *jega*.

r final is often silent: **mujer** = *mujé*.

s is reduced to a breathing or is silent: **tres** = *tre*, **usted** = *uté*, **refresco** = *refre'co*.

z is pronounced like *s*: **Zulia, Díaz.**

Dialectical peculiarities that are often heard are

bue = *güe*: **bueno** = *güeno*
gua = *wa*: **agua** = *awa*

7. How to Spell certain Consonant Sounds. The following table of spellings for certain consonant sounds before the five vowels and when final will be found useful for reference when forming plurals or derivatives of nouns and in conjugating verbs.

SOUND	a	e	i	o	u	FINAL
th as in *thin*	**za** *Zamora*	**ce** *andaluces*	**ci** *Andalucía*	**zo** *Arizona*	**zu** *Zurita*	**z** *andaluz*
k	**ca** *Caracas*	**que** *caraqueño*	**qui** *Turquía*	**co** *turco*	**cu** *Cuba*	**c** *Tepic*
g as in *go*	**ga** *Málaga*	**gue** *malagueño*	**gui** *Guillermo*	**go** *Vigo*	**gu** *Guzmán*	
jota	**ja** *Jamaica*	**je, ge** *Jerez, Génova*	**ji, gi** *Méjico, Gijón*	**jo** *Jorge*	**ju** *Julio*	
gw	**gua** *Guatemala*	**güe**[1] *Mayágüez*	**güi**[1] *Güines*	**guo** *antiguo*		
kw	**cua** *Ecuador*	**cue** *Cuenca*	**cui** *Cuico*	**cuo** *cuota*		

[1] The sign ¨ over a letter is called a diæresis, and is used in Spanish to indicate that the **u** of the syllables **gue** and **gui** is not silent but pronounced:

8. Accent. One syllable of a Spanish word receives greater emphasis or stress of voice as in English, but without the slurring of other syllables peculiar to English. The accent falls regularly on —

1. The final syllable of words ending in a consonant except **n** or **s**: **señor, español, usted.**

2. The next to the last syllable (the penult) of words ending in a vowel, **n**, or **s**: **amigo, amigos, venden.**

Words accented contrary to this rule have the stress indicated by an acute accent mark: **López, ejército, inglés, Guzmán.**

NOTE. A word stressed on the final syllable is called in Spanish **aguda**, on the penult **llana**, on the antepenult **esdrújula.**

9. Written Accents. The accent mark is used —

1. To show accentuation not in accord with the general rule: **lápiz, rubí, después.**

2. To separate a diphthong into its elements: **tío, sería, aún.**

3. To distinguish the interrogative use of certain pronouns and adverbs: **¿ qué ? ¿ quién ? ¿ cuánto ? ¿ cómo ? ¿ dónde ? ¿ cuál ?** and in exclamations: **¡ qué ! ¡ cuánto ! ¡ cuán !**

4. To indicate the pronominal use of the demonstratives **éste, ése,** and **aquél.**

5. To discriminate between pairs of words identical in spelling:

de, *of* (preposition)	**dé,** *give* (pres. subj. of **dar**)
el, *the* (definite article)	**él,** *he, him* (personal pronoun)
mas, *but* (conjunction)	**más,** *more* (adverb)
mi, *my* (possessive adjective)	**mí,** *me* (personal pronoun)
se, *self* (reflexive pronoun)	**sé,** *I know* (1st sing. pres. ind. of **saber**)
si, *if*	**sí,** *yes*; *self* (accusative of **se,** disjunctive form)
solo, *alone* (adjective)	**sólo,** *only* (adverb)
tu, *thy* (possessive adjective)	**tú,** *thou* (personal pronoun)

NOTE. The adverb **aun** preceding the verb is not marked, because in this case the vowels form a diphthong; but after the verb it is marked because it is pronounced as a word of two syllables with the stress on the final syllable. **¿ Aun no ha venido ?** *Has n't he come yet ?* **No ha venido aún.** *He has not come yet.*

a. The preterits **dió, vió, fuí, fué** bear written accents.

b. The Spanish Academy authorizes the omission of accents from the words **a,** *to*; **e,** *and*; **o,** *or*, except between figures, **3 ó 4**; **u,** *or*.

6. Plurals require the mark when the addition of **es** causes the accent to fall on the third syllable from the end of the word: **examen, exámenes; orden, órdenes.**

a. On the other hand, the addition of **es** to words ending in **n** or **s** accented on the final syllable will cause the mark to be unnecessary: **inglés, ingleses; nación, naciones.**

7. Verb-forms to which pronouns are added require the accent mark whenever the stress falls on the third or fourth syllable from the end of the combination: **dígalo, diciéndolo, decírselo, hágamelo.**

a. But the addition of pronouns to verbs bearing marks does not cause the removal of the mark: **vióme, véte.**

8. Adverbs formed by the use of **mente,** and compound words, retain the stress and the accent marks of their component parts: **sólidamente, espantapájaros, décimoséptimo.**

10. Division of Syllables. Every Spanish word contains as many syllables as it has vowels or diphthongs; if possible each syllable should begin with a single consonant, though the digraphs **ch, ll, rr,** and combinations of a consonant plus **l** or **r** (except **rl, sl, tl,** and **sr**) are not separated:

Az-cá-ra-te	**Sim-pli-cio**	**To-rre-vie-ja**
Ba-chi-ller	**Pa-dre Is-la**	**Car-los Mi-tre**

a. The prefixes **ab, des,** and **sub** are kept intact: **sub-le-va-ción, ab-ro-gar, des-a-mor.**

b. The letter **s** before a consonant is kept with the preceding syllable: **in-cons-tan-te, ins-truc-cio-nes, en-hies-to.**

NOTE. In printing observe the following.

1. A syllable consisting of a single vowel should not stand at the beginning nor at the end of a line. Thus, **a-gudo** and **efectú-a** are not permissible.

2. Compound words which are distinctly felt as such may be divided accordingly: **nos-otros, extra-ordinario, cari-acontecido**; but derivation, except as indicated here and in section 10 a, is not considered: **de-lante, ma-lestar.**

3. The separation of contiguous vowels, even when not forming a diphthong, should be avoided, according to the general rule that each syllable should begin with a consonant: **geo-logía, arquea-do, poe-sía.**

11. Punctuation. Different from English is the use of the following marks of punctuation:

1. Inverted interrogation and exclamation points before questions and exclamations: **¿Quién es?** *Who is it?* **¡Qué hermosa!** *How beautiful!*

2. Three dots (. . .) to indicate an incomplete sentence where English uses a dash.

3. A dash at the beginning of each speech in conversational matter where English uses quotation marks. See Exercise 6, *B*, 2.

The Spanish names of the marks of punctuation are

.	punto final	. . .	puntos suspensivos	¨	diéresis
,	coma	¿ ?	interrogación	« »	comillas *or* cita
;	punto y coma	¡ !	admiración	-	guión
:	dos puntos	( )	paréntesis	—	raya

12. Capitalization in Spanish differs from its use in English mainly as follows. Not capitalized are

The pronoun **yo**, *I*.

Names of days and months.

Geographical adjectives (except sometimes when used as nouns denoting human beings).

PRACTICAL INTRODUCTORY LESSONS

LESSON I

13.

¿Habla Juan español?	*Does John speak Spanish?*
Sí, señor, habla español.	*Yes, sir, he speaks Spanish.*
¿Qué idioma habla usted?	*What language do you speak?*
Hablo inglés.	*I speak English.*
Carlos y María hablan español.	*Charles and Mary speak Spanish.*
¿No hablan inglés?	*Don't they speak English?*
No, señor, no hablan inglés.	*No, sir, they do not speak English.*
¿Vive usted en España?	*Are you living in Spain?*
No vivo en España.	*I do not live in Spain.*
¿Dónde vivimos?	*Where are we living?*
Vivimos en Nueva York.	*We live in New York.*
Y hablamos inglés.	*And we speak English.*

14. Personal Endings. Observe that the endings of the verb in the Spanish sentences above vary and correspond to the English pronouns. Note that no pronouns appear in the Spanish sentences, except **usted,** meaning *you,* which is used with the same ending as *he.* **Usted** is generally abbreviated to **V.** or **Vd.** The plural **ustedes** (**VV.** or **Vds.**) takes the same ending as *they.*

15. Conjugations. Verbs are divided into three classes or conjugations according to the endings of their infinitives: thus,

I. habl**ar,** *to speak*
II. vend**er,** *to sell*
III. viv**ir,** *to live*

If the ending of the infinitive is dropped, the stem, or radical, remains, to which are added the personal endings.

NOTE. — The infinitive is the name of the verb and is the form given in dictionaries.

16. Present Tense Indicative Mood.

I

habl**o**	*I speak*	*I am speaking*	*do I speak?*
habl**a**	*he speaks*	*he is speaking*	*does he speak?*
habl**a** usted	*you speak*	*you are speaking*	*do you speak?*
habl**amos**	*we speak*	*we are speaking*	*do we speak?*
habl**an**	*they speak*	*they are speaking*	*do they speak?*
habl**an** ustedes	*you speak*	*you are speaking*	*do you speak?*

II

vend**o**	*I sell*	*I am selling*	*do I sell?*
vend**e**	*he sells*	*he is selling*	*does he sell?*
vend**e** Vd.	*you sell*	*you are selling*	*do you sell?*
vend**emos**	*we sell*	*we are selling*	*do we sell?*
vend**en**	*they sell*	*they are selling*	*do they sell?*
vend**en** Vds.	*you sell*	*you are selling*	*do you sell?*

III

viv**o**	*I live*	*I am living*	*do I live?*
viv**e**	*he lives*	*he is living*	*does he live?*
viv**e** Vd.	*you live*	*you are living*	*do you live?*
viv**imos**	*we live*	*we are living*	*do we live?*
viv**en**	*they live*	*they are living*	*do they live?*
viv**en** Vds.	*you live*	*you are living*	*do you live?*

a. Observe that the three English forms correspond to the one form of the Spanish verb. The *simple form*, "He speaks," is not used in English questions or negative statements; but instead, either the *progressive form*, "Is he speaking?" "He is not speaking," or the *emphatic form*, "Does he speak?" "He does not speak."

17. Interrogative Sentences. Questions are asked in Spanish by placing the subject of the sentence after the verb.

¿Habla Juan? *Does John speak? Is John speaking?*

a. As the subject is frequently placed after the verb even in affirmations, an inverted question mark ¿ precedes a question.

18. Negation. To make a sentence negative, place **no**, *not*, before the verb.

No hablo. *I am not speaking, I do not speak.*

VOCABULARY

a, *to*
allí, *there*
aprender, *to learn*
bien, *well*
carta, f., *letter*
comprar, *to buy*
comprender, *to understand*
con, *with*
escribir, *to write*
Inglaterra, f., *England*
leer, *to read*
mal, *badly*
mucho, *much, a great deal*
papel, m., *paper*
poco, *little*
qué, *what?*
quién, *who?*
señora, f., *madam*
también, *also*
tinta, f., *ink*

EXERCISE 1

A. 1. ¿Comprende Vd. bien? No, señor, comprendo mal. 2. ¿Comprenden Carlos y Juan? Sí, comprenden. 3. ¿Qué compra Juan? Compra papel y tinta. 4. ¿Quién vende papel? Carlos vende papel. 5. ¿Qué compran Vds.? Compramos también papel. 6. ¿Leen Vds. mucho? No, señora, leemos poco. 7. ¿Qué aprende Vd.? Aprendo a hablar español. 8. ¿Vive Vd. en Inglaterra? No vivo allí. 9. ¿Con qué escriben? Escriben con tinta en papel. 10. ¿A quién escribe Juan? Escribe a Carlos.

B. Answer in Spanish with a sentence containing a verb: 1. ¿Qué idioma habla María? 2. ¿Habla Carlos inglés? 3. ¿Vive Vd. en Inglaterra? 4. ¿Dónde viven Vds.? 5. ¿Quién compra papel? 6. ¿Qué compran Juan y Carlos? 7. ¿Escribe Vd. mucho en español? 8. ¿A quién escribe Vd.? 9. ¿Qué lee Vd.? 10. ¿Dónde venden tinta?

C. 1. Do you speak Spanish? No, sir, I speak English. 2. Do they understand? They do not understand. 3. Where do Charles and John live? They live in Spain. 4. Where do you (*plural*) live? We live in New York. 5. What does Charles buy? He is

buying paper and ink. 6. What language does he speak? He speaks Spanish. 7. To whom are you reading? I am reading to Mary. 8. Who understands? I understand; they understand. 9. We are writing to Charles. 10. They are learning to speak Spanish. 11. Are you writing to John? No, sir, I am not writing to John. 12. Who reads a great deal in Spanish? Mary and John read in Spanish.

LESSON II

19.

Un hermano.	*A brother.*	**Una hermana.**	*A sister.*
Un libro.	*A book.*	**Una pluma.**	*A pen.*
El hombre.	*The man.*	**Los hombres.**	*The men.*
La mujer.	*The woman.*	**Las mujeres.**	*The women.*
El inglés.	*The Englishman.*	**Los ingleses.**	*The Englishmen.*

El idioma de la inglesa. *The language of the English woman.*

El idioma de las inglesas. *The language of the English women.*

El color del papel. *The color of the paper.*

Los colores de los papeles. *The colors of the papers.*

Juan escribe una carta á la señora. *John writes a letter to the lady.*

¿Escribe Vd. cartas al señor? *Do you write letters to the gentleman?*

20. Gender. Every Spanish noun is grammatically masculine or feminine.

1. Names of male beings are masculine: **el artista,** *the artist*; **el rey,** *the king*; of female beings feminine: **la mujer,** *the woman*; **la reina,** *the queen.*

2. Nouns ending in **o** are generally masculine; in **a**, feminine: **el libro,** *the book*; **la pluma,** *the pen.*

a. But there are many exceptions: **el día,** *the day*; **la mano,** *the hand.* These, like the gender of nouns ending in other letters than **o** or **a,** must be learned individually.

3. Nouns denoting persons, employments, or nationality may often be made feminine by changing final **o** to **a,** or by adding **a**:

hermano, *brother*; **hermana,** *sister*; **español,** *Spaniard*; **española,** *Spanish woman.*

21. Articles. Spanish has two articles, Indefinite and Definite. Each must agree in gender and number with the noun which it modifies.

1. Indefinite article.

Masculine	Feminine
un	**una**
un libro, *a book*	**una carta,** *a letter*

2. Definite article.

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Sing.	**el**	**la (el)**	**lo**
Plur.	**los**	**las**	(lacking)

a. Feminine **el** is an old form of the article which is still used before nouns beginning with a stressed syllable in **a** or **ha**: **el agua,** *the water*; **el hacha,** *the ax*; but **la América,** *America.*

b. The form **el** combines with **de,** *of* or *from*, to form **del,** *of the* or *from the*; and with **a,** *to*, to form **al,** *to the.*

c. The neuter article is used only with adjectives not modifying a noun: **lo mismo,** *the same.*

22. Plural of Nouns. To form the plural of nouns, add **s** to words ending in a vowel, **es** to words ending in a consonant.

el hombre, *the man*	**los hombres,** *the men*
la mujer, *the woman*	**las mujeres,** *the women*

Note. — For exceptions, see section 130.

a. Observe change of spelling: **el lápiz,** *the pencil*; **los lápices,** *the pencils.* The sound of *th* must be written **c** before **es.** See section 7.

b. Final **y** is treated as a consonant: **el rey,** *the king*; **los reyes,** *the kings*; **la ley,** *the law*; **las leyes,** *the laws.*

23. Idiomatic Expressions. No two languages correspond precisely in their methods of expressing ideas. Expressions which do not appear to follow a rule of grammar, or which vary from our own method, we term idiomatic: thus,

A Spanish letter, **una carta en español**
A Spanish lesson, **una lección de español**

EXERCISE 2

A. Give the feminine with the definite article, singular and plural: El abuelo, *grandfather.* El primo, *cousin.* El tío, *uncle.* El hijo, *son.* El sobrino, *nephew.* El muchacho, *boy.* El panadero, *the baker.* El alemán, *the German.* El francés, *the Frenchman.*

Give the plural and translate: 1. El abuelo de la mujer. 2. El hermano del inglés. 3. Al tío del español. 4. La prima del señor. 5. Al hijo de la panadera.

B. (*The meaning of new words must henceforth be looked for in the vocabulary in the latter part of the book.*) *Translate:* 1. El hermano del español vive en España; no vive aquí. 2. ¿ Escribe cartas al inglés? 3. Las hermanas del señor no viven en el país. 4. No comprendemos el idioma de la señora. 5. Escribimos una carta en español a un español. 6. Una mujer compra un libro y aprende a leer el español. 7. Escribo en el papel con una pluma y tinta. 8. Los ingleses viven en Inglaterra, los franceses en Francia, y los norteamericanos en la América del Norte. 9. El tío lee la carta del alemán. 10. La tía habla al panadero.

C. Answer in Spanish: 1. ¿ A quién habla el tío de la inglesa? 2. ¿ A quién escribe el señor? 3. ¿ Qué lee la mujer? 4. ¿ Dónde viven los ingleses? 5. ¿ Quién vive en la América del Norte? 6. ¿ En qué país viven los franceses? 7. ¿ Con qué escribe Vd. la carta? 8. ¿ Qué escriben Vds. al español? 9. ¿ En qué idioma habla Vd. al señor? 10. ¿ No comprende Vd. el idioma del hombre?

D. 1. To whom are you writing the letter? 2. Does John write Spanish letters to the Spaniards? 3. I do not understand the

language of the gentlemen. 4. We live in North America; the Frenchmen live in France. 5. Charles is writing to the girl cousin. 6. John and Mary write English letters to the grandfather. 7. Does he read the books of the Frenchman? 8. What language are you learning from the Spaniard? 9. The baker speaks German to the boy. 10. We write the Spanish lesson with pencils on the paper.

LESSON III

24.

Soy americano.	*I am an American.*
Estoy en la América del Norte.	*I am in North America.*
¿Quién es el profesor?	*Who is the teacher?*
Es el señor Blanco.	*He is Mr. Blanco.*
¿Quiénes son Vds.?	*Who are you?*
Somos españoles, pero estamos en Nueva York.	*We are Spaniards, but we are in New York.*
Buenos días, ¿cómo está Vd.?	*Good morning, how are you?*
Estoy muy bien, gracias.	*I am very well, thank you.*
Y ¿Vd.?	*And you?*
Sin novedad.	*Same as usual* (literally, *without novelty*).

25. Present Indicative.

Ser	*to be*	**Estar**
soy	*I am*	**estoy**
es	*he is*	**está**
es Vd.	*you are*	**está Vd.**
somos	*we are*	**estamos**
son	*they are*	**están**
son Vds.	*you are*	**están Vds.**

a. **Ser** and **estar** both correspond to the English verb *to be*, but each has its distinctive meaning. **Estar** denotes position: **Está en Méjico,** *He is in Mexico.* **Ser** denotes character; hence must be used before all nouns standing in the predicate: **Es español,** *He is a Spaniard* (see section 26, 1).

b. With adjectives **estar** indicates a condition temporary in duration: **Está enfermo,** *He is sick*; while **ser** implies an essential quality of a person or thing: **El papel es blanco,** *The paper is white.*

c. When an adjective is used in the predicate with the meaning of a noun, the proper verb is **ser**: **Es rico,** *He is rich* (that is, *He is a rich man*); **Ella es joven,** *She is young* (that is, *a young woman*).

d. With **bueno,** *good,* and **malo,** *bad,* **estar** refers to health, while **ser** refers to character: **Es bueno, pero está malo,** *He is a good man, but he is sick.*

e. Idiomatic:

Está bien.	*All right.*
¡Está bueno!	*Good! Excellent!*

26. Use of Articles. 1. Before a predicate noun omit the indefinite article: **Es alemán,** *He is a German.*

2. Before a title use the definite article: **el señor González,** *Mr. González*; **el general O'Donnell,** *General O'Donnell.*

3. Before the name of a language, except after **hablar** and **en,** use the definite article:

Aprendemos el español.	*We are learning Spanish.*
El general Gómez habla español.	*General Gómez speaks Spanish.*

EXERCISE 3

A. Insert the correct form of the verb **ser** *or* **estar** *in the following:* 1. Juan —— en Méjico. 2. Carlos —— un muchacho cubano. 3. ¿ Quién —— Vd.? 4. ¿ —— Vd. en España? 5. Los muchachos —— ingleses, pero no —— en Inglaterra. 6. ¿ —— María y Juana muchachas españolas? 7. ¿ Dónde —— las muchachas? 8. El agua no —— caliente, —— fría. 9. El hombre no —— rico, —— pobre. 10. ¿ Cómo —— el señor?

B. Estamos ahora en una sala de clase. Arriba está el techo. Abajo está el suelo. Las ventanas están a un lado de la sala. Al otro lado están las puertas. Contra las paredes están las pizarras. Escribimos en la pizarra con tiza.

Somos discípulos del señor Blanco. Es el profesor de la clase. Delante del profesor está una mesa. El profesor está sentado en una silla. El discípulo debe estar de pie, cuando habla al profesor.

C. 1. ¿ Dónde está Vd. ahora ? 2. ¿ Qué clase es ? 3. ¿ En qué clase estamos ? 4. ¿ Quién es el profesor ? 5. ¿ De quién son Vds. discípulos ? 6. ¿ Está Vd. de pie o sentado ? 7. ¿ Estoy de pie o sentado ? 8. ¿ Soy discípulo o profesor ? 9. ¿ Está Vd. sentado delante o al lado del profesor ? 10. ¿ Dónde está el techo ? ¿ el suelo ? ¿ la puerta ?

D. 1. They are Cubans, but they live in New York. 2. Are you a Cuban or a Spaniard ? 3. Where is Mexico ? It is in North America. 4. I am not the teacher of the Spanish class. 5. Where are you seated ? I am sitting in front of the table. 6. Good morning ! How is Mr. Blanco ? He is very well, thank you. 7. Are the letters from the German ? Where are they ? 8. They are on the chair on the other side of the room. 9. Is the ceiling above or below ? The floor is below, the ceiling above. 10. We are Americans, but Mr. Romero is a Spaniard. 11. The brother of Mr. González is a merchant, not a physician. 12. They are not writing on the walls, but[1] on the blackboards. 13. We stand when we speak to the teacher. 14. We are not rich men.

[1] **sino.** See section 232, 4.

LESSON IV

27.

El libro blanco.	*The white book.*
La casa blanca.	*The white house.*
Los libros son blancos.	*The books are white.*
Las casas son blancas.	*The houses are white.*
El libro está cerrado.	*The book is shut.*
La puerta está abierta.	*The door is open.*
¿Están abiertas las ventanas ?	*Are the windows open ?*
No, señor, están cerradas.	*No, sir, they are shut.*

28. **Agreement of Adjectives.** Spanish adjectives take the gender and number of the nouns which they modify. This rule is true

UN VENDEDOR DE LEGUMBRES

UNA PAREJA DE LA GUARDIA CIVIL DE ESPAÑA

EL VENDEDOR DE LEGUMBRES

1. ¿ Qué vende el hombre con el burro ?
2. ¿ Por qué tiene el muchacho al burro por la cola ?
3. ¿ Qué venden en la tienda ?
4. ¿ Qué hacen « al minuto » en la imprenta ?
5. ¿ Qué son tarjetas ?

LOS GUARDIAS CIVILES

6. ¿ Quiénes son los dos hombres ?
7. ¿ Qué hacen ?
8. ¿ Por qué llaman a los guardias una pareja ?
9. ¿ Qué indica la sombra en el suelo ?
10. ¿ Cómo están las ventanas de la tienda ? ¿ por qué ?

burro, m. *donkey*
cola, f. *tail*
fe, f. *certificate*
imprenta, f. *printing-office*
imprimir, *to print*
legumbre, f. *vegetable*
pareja, f. *couple*
sombra, f. *shadow*

also when the adjective is used after **ser** and **estar.** See section 27 for examples.

a. The attributive adjective is usually placed after the noun: **el hombre cortés,** *the polite man*; **la mujer hermosa,** *the beautiful woman.*

29. Gender of Adjectives. If a masculine adjective ends in **o,** the feminine substitutes **a** for **o**: **blanco, blanca,** *white*; **negro, negra,** *black.*

Adjectives ending in **e** or a consonant have the same form in both genders:

el papel verde, *the green paper*	**la casa verde,** *the green house*
el color azul, *the blue color*	**la luz azul,** *the blue light*

a. **Exception.** Adjectives of nationality add **a** to words ending in a consonant: **inglés, inglesa,** *English*; **alemán, alemana,** *German.*

(For other exceptions see section 135.)

30. Plural of Adjectives. Like the plural of nouns, the plural of adjectives is formed by adding **s** to words ending in a vowel and **es** to words ending in a consonant: **los papeles verdes,** *the green papers*; **las luces azules,** *the blue lights.*

31. Idiomatic Expressions. *a. There is* or *there are,* **hay.**

There are two doors here.	**Hay dos puertas aquí.**
There is no paper.	**No hay papel.** (The negative must precede the verb.)

b. A question introduced by **¿por qué?** *why,* may be answered by **porque,** *because,* with a clause, or by **para,** *for* or *in order to,* followed by an infinitive.

¿Por qué aprende Vd. el español?	*Why are you learning Spanish?*
Porque voy a España.	*Because I am going to Spain.*
Para escribir cartas en español.	*In order to write Spanish letters.*

EXERCISE 4

A. 1. *From each of the following,*

un papel ——	una casa ——
Los papeles son ——	Las casas son ——

make four phrases or sentences (sixteen in all) by substituting for the dash the correct form of the adjectives

blanco, *white*	azul, *blue*
negro, *black*	verde, *green*

2. *Use both adjectives in turn,*

limpio, *clean*, sucio, *dirty*, } *with* { El papel está ——; El suelo está ——; La casa está ——

3. *Put the finished sentences of* 2 *in the plural.*

4. *Explain why* **ser** *and* **estar** *are the proper verbs in the respective sentences of* 1 *and* 2.

B. Para estar bien de salud es preciso habitar una casa sana. En tal casa admitimos el aire y la luz del sol por anchas ventanas. Si no hay luz, las habitaciones están oscuras y vemos mal. En los Estados Unidos alumbramos la casa por medio del gas o de la luz eléctrica y entonces todo está claro. Como el sentido de la vista está en los ojos, debemos tener bastante luz para ver bien sin hacer daño a los ojos. Una madre cubre los tiernos ojos del niño, cuando hay demasiada luz en la habitación, para guardar el niño de la ceguedad. Los hombres que no ven son ciegos.

C. 1. ¿Cómo está Vd. de salud? 2. ¿Por qué admitimos el aire en la casa? 3. ¿Por qué necesitamos la luz? 4. ¿Cuál sentido está en los ojos? 5. ¿Está oscura la sala? 6. ¿Cómo está alumbrada? 7. ¿Por qué alumbramos la casa? 8. ¿Hay bastante luz aquí para ver bien? 9. ¿Cuándo ven Vds. bien? 10. ¿Qué es un ciego?

D. 1. The gentlemen are English, the ladies German. 2. Are the little children happy or unhappy? 3. The light of the sun is

very bright and gives bright colors to the world. 4. There are many electric lights in the house. 5. In a clean house the floors of all the rooms are clean. 6. The president of the United States lives in the White House. 7. We are not blind, because we see very well. 8. We need the air in order to breathe. 9. Is there air enough? 10. The room is too dark to see well. 11. The collar and cuffs of the shirt are dirty. 12. He wears a brown cap to protect his head. 13. The nuts are yellow because they are not ripe. 14. There is no soap nor clean towel. 15. The ladies are sad because the children are sick. 16. The Spanish flag is yellow with red stripes.

LESSON V

32.

¿De quién es este sombrero?	*Whose is this hat?*
¿Es el sombrero de Juan?	*Is it John's hat?*
Este viejo sombrero es de Juan.	*This old hat is John's.*
¿Dónde compra Vd. un sombrero nuevo?	*Where do you buy a new hat?*
En casa de Wanamaker.	*At Wanamaker's.*
Ese libro es de Pedro.	*That book* (near you) *is Peter's.*
Aquel libro es de Carlos.	*That book* (over there) *is Charles's.*
La familia de un hombre.	*A man's family.*

33. Possession is expressed in Spanish by the preposition **de** before the name of the possessor: **el lápiz de Paco,** *Frank's pencil*; **los zapatos de mi abuelo,** *my grandfather's shoes.*

a. English *at* may be rendered **en casa de,** when *at* is followed by a noun in the possessive case without the name of the thing possessed; as, *at Henry's*, meaning *at Henry's house, office, or store,* **en casa de Enrique.**

b. The possessive interrogative pronoun *whose* is expressed in Spanish by **de quién,** which is usually separated from the name of the thing possessed by the verb:

¿De quién es el cortaplumas?	*Whose penknife is it?*
¿De quién es aquella casa?	*Whose house is that?*

34. Demonstratives.

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	
Sing.	**este**	**esta**	**esto**	*this*
Plur.	**estos**	**estas**	(lacking)	*these*
Sing.	**ese**	**esa**	**eso**	*that* (near you)
Plur.	**esos**	**esas**	(lacking)	*those*
Sing.	**aquel**	**aquella**	**aquello**	*that* (yonder)
Plur.	**aquellos**	**aquellas**	(lacking)	*those*

a. Distinguish carefully between **ese,** meaning *that* near the person addressed, and **aquel,** *that,* distant from both speaker and person addressed.

b. Corresponding to the adjectives *this* and *that* are the adverbs *here* and *there*:

este libro aquí, *this book here*
ese libro ahí, *that book there* (near you)
aquel libro allí, *that book* (over) *there*

c. When the demonstratives are not followed by a noun, they are pronouns, taking the gender and number of the noun to which they refer, and are marked by an accent.

Aquí tengo dos plumas: ésta es de Juan, aquélla de María. *Here I have two pens: this one is John's, that one is Mary's.*

d. The neuter forms stand for things not mentioned by name: **¿Qué es esto?** *What is this?* or for clauses or ideas: **¡Eso no!** *Not that* (what you say). **Por eso,** *for that* (reason), *therefore.*

EXERCISE 5

A. a. *Substitute Spanish for the English in these sentences and translate:* 1. Esta pequeña casa aquí es *Henry's.* 2. Aquellos libros allí son *Mary's.* 3. La familia *John's* está aquí. 4. Vivo *at Charles's.* 5. ¿*Whose* son estos cuellos?

b. *Put the Spanish words for* this *and* that (*both forms*) *with each of the following words; also give plurals:* 1. —— puerta cerrada. 2. —— ventana abierta. 3. —— muchacho inglés. 4. —— casa verde. 5. —— papel azul.

c. *In the expressions written for* b, *insert the proper form of* **ser** *or* **estar** *between the noun and the qualifying adjective.*

B. Esta parte del cuerpo es el brazo. Al extremo de los brazos están las manos. Ésta es la mano derecha y ésta otra la izquierda. Éstos son dedos. Con los dedos tocamos las cosas para sentir si son blandas o duras, suaves o ásperas; pero el sentido del tacto está en la piel suave que cubre todo el cuerpo. Si toco la madera, hallo que es dura, pero si tomo el pan fresco en la mano, es blando. Si compro pan en casa del panadero, pregunto si está fresco.

También las partes interiores del cuerpo conocen por el tacto otras substancias: y por eso sentimos las comidas y bebidas frías o calientes cuando bajan por la garganta al estómago. El tacto ayuda al sentido de la vista: por eso sabemos que todos los objetos no están a igual distancia, sino que uno está delante y otro detrás, que los unos están cerca y los otros lejos.

C. 1. ¿ Cuál es la mano derecha ? ¿ y la izquierda ? 2. ¿ Qué está en las manos de Enrique ? 3. ¿ Quién está sentado a la derecha de Vd. ? 4. ¿ Son de Carlos o de María aquellos libros allí ? 5. ¿ Cuál sentido está en la piel ? 6. ¿ Cómo sentimos si una cosa es blanda ? 7. ¿ Dónde compra Vd. pan fresco ? 8. ¿ Está duro o blando aquel pan ? 9. ¿ Están abiertas esas ventanas ? 10. ¿ De quién son esos sombreros ahí ?

D. 1. These windows are open; those (yonder) are closed. 2. That door (near you) is locked. Is the key there ? 3. There is no key for this door. 4. He asks if this child lives in that house. 5. John's brother lives in Mexico. 6. Henry is seated at Mary's right hand. 7. That baker's bread is not fresh; I buy Genaro's bread. 8. This is a child's hat. 9. Whose new books are these ? Charles' books. 10. Who is at that gentleman's ? 11. The servant cleans Alfred's shoes. 12. That penknife does not cut well. 13. These matches do not burn; they are no good. 14. Whose napkin is this here on the floor ?

LESSON VI

35.

Yo tengo mi libro.	*I have my book.*
Tú tienes tu libro.	*Thou hast thy book.*
Él / Ella } **tiene su libro.**	*He / She / It* } *has* { *his / her / its* } *book.*
Usted (Vd.) tiene su libro.	*You have your book.*
Nosotros tenemos nuestro libro.	*We have our book.*
Vosotros tenéis vuestro libro.	*You have your book.*
Ellos, ellas tienen su libro.	*They have their book.*
Ustedes (Vds.) tienen su libro.	*You have your book.*

36. Personal Subject Pronouns have the following forms:

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. **yo,** *I*	**nosotros** / (fem.) **nosotras** } *we*
2. **tú,** *thou*	**vosotros** / (fem.) **vosotras** } *you*
3. **él,** *he* / **ella,** *she* } or *it*	**ellos** / (fem.) **ellas** } *they*

a. The pronoun **tú** and its plural **vosotros,** with their corresponding verb-endings, are used in speaking to members of the family, to children, or to inferiors. Foreign speakers must use **usted** (**Vd.**) with the 3d person singular of the verb. **Usted** is a contraction of **vuestra merced,** *your grace,* which was formerly used in polite intercourse.

b. The personal subject pronouns, commonly omitted, are used —

(1) When there is no verb: **¿Quién es? Yo.** *Who is it? I.*

(2) To emphasize the subject of the verb, since it is not possible to stress the verb-ending: **¿Tiene él mi libro?** *Has* ***he*** *my book?*

(3) To mark a contrast between two persons: **Él es alemán, pero ella es española,** *He is German, but she is Spanish.*

37. Possessive Adjectives.

mi (mis), *my*	**nuestro (-a, -os, -as),** *our*
tu (tus), *your*	**vuestro (-a, -os, -as),** *your*
su (sus), *his, her, its; your* (for **usted**)	**su (sus),** *their; your* (for **ustedes**)

a. These adjectives must be plural before plural nouns: **mis zapatos,** *my shoes*; **sus pantalones,** *his trousers*.

b. **Nuestro** and **vuestro** have feminine forms: **nuestra casa,** *our house*; **vuestras familias,** *your families*.

c. Possessive adjectives must be repeated before each noun modified: **mi padre y mi madre,** *my father and mother*.

For exceptions see section 141.

38. Idiomatic Expressions. *a*. A statement about one's residence may be made by **tener su casa,** *to have one's house, reside*.

Tengo mi casa en el Hotel Inglaterra. *I live at the Hotel Inglaterra.*

b. Note the idiomatic meaning of the subject pronouns when used with **ser.**

Soy yo.	*It is I.*	**¿ Es Vd. ?**	*Is it you ?*
Somos nosotros.	*It is we.*	**¿ Son ellos ?**	*Is it they ?*

The pronoun may also precede:

Él es.	*It is he.*	**Yo soy.**	*It is I.*

c. Reference to a person's relatives is politely made by prefixing the titles **señor, señora: su señor padre,** *your father*.

d. To inquire if another agrees with a statement you have just made:

¿ No es verdad ? or simply **¿ verdad ?**	*Isn't it true ?*
Viene mañana, ¿ no es verdad ?	*He comes to-morrow, doesn't he ?*

e. Leave-takings: **hasta mañana,** *till to-morrow*; **hasta luego,** *farewell for a little while*; **adiós,** *good-by*.

EXERCISE 6

A. a. *Learn the complete conjugation of the present tense, indicative, with and without the personal subject pronouns, of* comprar, vender, vivir, ser, *and* estar. *See sections 240 and 250.*

b. *Insert subject pronouns and possessive adjectives for the blanks in the following sentences:* 1. ¿ Tiene Vd. —— libro en la mano ? 2. —— no tengo —— libro. 3. Juan tiene —— lápices. 4. —— vivimos en —— casas. 5. —— no viven en —— casas. 6. María

escribe a —— madre pero —— no contesta. 7. ¿ Está Juan o María a la puerta? Es —— y no ——. 8. —— tengo —— libros pero no —— pluma. 9. Carlos escribe a —— hermano pero —— no contesta. 10. ¿ Tienen Vds. —— libros españoles?

B. 1. Nuestra familia consta del padre, de la madre y de los hijos, dos niños y una niña. Mi abuelo es el padre de mi madre; por eso, soy su nieto. El hermano de mi padre es mi tío, y su esposa es mi tía. Yo soy su sobrino y sus hijos son mis primos. Tenemos nuestra casa en la calle de Fulton, número dos, de esta ciudad.

2. — ¿ Quién es?
— Soy yo, Juan. Su señor padre está en casa, ¿ no es verdad?
— No está. Estamos todos malos aquí y está él en la fábrica.
— ¿ Quiénes son todos?
— Somos nosotros la madre, el hermano y yo.
— ¿ Está visible su madre?
— Ella no, porque está en cama muy enferma.
— Es lástima. Hasta mañana.
— Adiós.

C. 1. ¿ De quiénes consta su familia? 2. ¿ Tiene Vd. un tío? ¿ y primos? 3. ¿ De quién son hijos sus dos primos? 4. ¿ Quién es el padre de su padre? ¿ y la madre de su padre? 5. ¿ Está en casa su señora madre? 6. ¿ Qué tiene Vd. en la mano? 7. ¿ De quién tiene Vd. el lápiz? 8. ¿ Dónde tienen Vds. su casa en esta ciudad? 9. ¿ En qué ciudad tenemos nuestra casa? 10. ¿ De quién es la casa en que vive Vd.?

D. 1. I have John's pencil and he has my pen. 2. What has Charles in his right hand? He has Peter's books. 3. Is your father at home? No, sir, he is at my aunt's. 4. Their children are my father's nephews. 5. Our family consists of the father and[1] the mother and[1] my brothers. Our grandmother resides with us.[2] 6. Where do you reside? We reside on Macon St. 7. Mary writes to her cousin Jane, but she does not answer. 8. Who are you? It

[1] Insert de. [2] nosotros.

is I, Peter, with my cousin. He has a letter for[3] you. 9. This house has all the windows shut. 10. These United States have many large cities. 11. Who has George's cap? Have you the cap? 12. Whose Spanish letter is this here in the yellow envelope? 13. This umbrella is a gift from your father, isn't it? 14. My shirts and collars and all my clean clothes are in my brother's trunk. 15. You have my grammar and he has my Spanish dictionary.

[3] **para.**

LESSON VII

39. The **Cardinal Numerals** are

0	cero	22	veinte y dos (veintidós)
1	un-o, -a	30	treinta
2	dos	40	cuarenta
3	tres	50	cincuenta
4	cuatro	60	sesenta
5	cinco	70	setenta
6	seis	80	ochenta
7	siete	90	noventa
8	ocho	100	ciento
9	nueve	200	doscientos (-as)
10	diez	300	trescientos (-as)
11	once	400	cuatrocientos (-as)
12	doce	500	quinientos (-as)
13	trece	600	seiscientos (-as)
14	catorce	700	setecientos (-as)
15	quince	800	ochocientos (-as)
16	diez y seis (dieciséis)	900	novecientos (-as)
17	diez y siete (diecisiete)	1,000	mil
18	diez y ocho (dieciocho)	2,000	dos mil, *etc.*
19	diez y nueve (diecinueve)	100,000	cien mil
20	veinte	200,000	doscient-os (-as) mil, *etc.*
21	veinte y uno (veintiuno)	1,000,000	un millón

a. The cardinal numerals are invariable except **uno** (**una casa,** *one house*) and the compounds of **ciento** (**doscientas mujeres,** *two hundred women*).

b. **Uno** drops **o** before masculine nouns even in compound numerals: **un hombre,** *one man*; **treinta y un libros,** *thirty-one books.*

c. **Ciento** becomes **cien** before nouns: **cien pesos,** *one hundred dollars*; **cien mil,** *one hundred thousand.* But *101*, **ciento uno,** etc.

d. With **ciento** and **mil** the indefinite article is not used: **ciento,** *one hundred*; **mil,** *one thousand.*

e. Above 900, Spanish speakers do not count by hundreds; *1200*, for example, is **mil doscientos.**

f. The conjunction **y,** *and*, is used only between the ten and the unit of a compound numeral: *1555*, **mil quinientos cincuenta y cinco.**

g. After **un millón,** the preposition **de** is required: **un millón de duros,** *a million dollars.*

40. The **Ordinal Numerals** are

1st primero	5th quinto	9th noveno (*or* nono)
2d segundo	6th sexto (*or* sesto)	10th décimo
3d tercero	7th séptimo (*or* sétimo)	11th undécimo
4th cuarto	8th octavo	12th duodécimo

a. Abbreviations according to gender and number are 1°, 2ª, 3os, 4as, etc.

b. In titles of sovereigns, chapters of books, names of streets, etc., the ordinals are used only to tenth:

Carlos Quinto, *Charles the Fifth.*
Alfonso Trece, *Alfonso XIII.*
página veinticinco, *page twenty-five.*
la avenida tercera, *Third Avenue.*
la calle catorce al este, *East Fourteenth St.*
la calle 42 al oeste, *West 42d St.*

c. In giving dates, **primero** is used for the first day of the month, but the cardinal numerals are used for the other days. The proper form for writing a date is **el 2 de mayo de 1808,** *May 2d, 1808.* In letters, the name of the place and the date appear in the same line without the article: **Madrid, 8 de abril de 1910.**

d. To inquire the date: **¿A cuántos estamos?** In replying, begin with **a**: **a quince de octubre,** *the fifteenth of October.*

41. **Vez** expresses repetition:

una vez, *once*	**cuántas veces,** *how often*
dos veces, *twice*	**muchas veces,** *often*
tres veces, *three times*	**algunas veces,** *sometimes*
la primera vez, *the first time*	**raras veces,** *seldom*
cada vez, *each time*	**repetidas veces,** *repeatedly*

a. The English indefinite article after such expressions is rendered by **al, por,** or the definite article: **¿ cuántas veces la semana, al día, por año ?** *how often a week, a day, a year ?*

42. **Los doce meses del año,** the twelve months of the year:

enero, *January*	**julio,** *July*
febrero, *February*	**agosto,** *August*
marzo, *March*	**septiembre,** *September*
abril, *April*	**octubre,** *October*
mayo, *May*	**noviembre,** *November*
junio, *June*	**diciembre,** *December*

43. **Los siete días de la semana,** the seven days of the week:

lunes, *Monday* **jueves,** *Thursday*
martes, *Tuesday* **viernes,** *Friday*
miércoles, *Wednesday* **sábado,** *Saturday*
domingo, *Sunday*

el lunes, *on Monday*	**el jueves pasado,** *last Thursday*
los martes, *on Tuesdays*	**el último día del mes,** *the last day of the month*
el miércoles que viene, *next Wednesday*	

a. The names of the months, days, and seasons are usually written without capitalization.

b. The definite article is required before expressions of time that are modified by an adjective: **la semana pasada,** *last week.*

c. In expressions of time the definite article appears where English uses the preposition *on*: **el viernes,** *on Friday.* **El vapor sale el quince del mes,** *The steamer leaves on the fifteenth of the month.*

44. Las estaciones del año, the seasons of the year:

la primavera, *spring*	**el otoño,** *autumn*
el verano, *summer*	**el invierno,** *winter*

45. Las divisiones del día, the divisions of the day:

la mañana, *morning*	**ayer,** *yesterday*
el día, *day*	**hoy,** *to-day*
la tarde, *afternoon*	**mañana,** *to-morrow*
la noche, *night*	**anoche,** *last night*
de día, *by day*	**esta noche,** *to-night*

mañana por la mañana, *to-morrow morning*

EXERCISE 7

A. 1. *Read in Spanish. Add in Spanish.*

5	21	16	105
2	33	45	250
8	15	62	500
7	18	75	725
4	9	26	375

2. *Read.*

El 4 de julio de 1776.
El 12 de octubre de 1492.
El 1° de enero de 1911.

3. *Give in Spanish the date of to-day.*
Give in Spanish the date of your birthday (día de cumpleaños).

B. 1. Medimos el tiempo así: sesenta segundos hacen un minuto; sesenta de éstos componen una hora; veinticuatro horas un día; siete días una semana; cuatro semanas y media un mes; doce meses un año y cien años un siglo.

2.

Amigo mío: Nueva York, 17 de mayo de 1912

Por la noche estudio mis lecciones de aritmética y de español para la mañana. Pero esta noche no estudio porque tengo un periódico de hoy. Leo que éste es el día de cumpleaños de Alfonso

Trece, rey de España. Su esposa y Jorge Quinto de Inglaterra son primos. Dice el periódico que los reyes van a estar juntos en Londres el verano que viene desde el martes hasta el sábado.

C. 1. ¿Cuáles son los días de la semana? ¿los meses del año? ¿las estaciones? 2. ¿Cuántos días tiene una semana? ¿el mes de enero? 3. ¿Cuántos días hay en el año? 4. ¿Qué día de la semana tenemos hoy? 5. ¿A cuántos estamos hoy? 6. ¿Quién es el rey de España? ¿el rey de Inglaterra? 7. ¿Cuál es su día de cumpleaños? 8. ¿Cuál es la fecha del periódico de hoy? 9. ¿Qué lecciones tiene Vd. el lunes por la mañana? 10. ¿Estudian Vds. sus lecciones por la tarde o por la noche? 11. ¿Cuántas veces lee Vd. cada frase? 12. ¿Cuántas veces al día sale un tren para Chicago?

D. 1. The months of spring are March, April, and May; of summer, June, July, and August. 2. There are three hundred and sixty-five days in this year. Next year has three hundred and sixty-six days because it is leap year. 3. To-day's paper has the date Wednesday, the second of May. 4. I am living at 245 East 3d St. 5. On Tuesday morning we have lessons in (**de**) arithmetic and Spanish. 6. My brother's birthday is July 7, 1898. 7. The father of the king of Spain, Alfonso the Twelfth, was the son of Isabella the Second. 8. This is the twentieth century. 9. Summer begins on the twenty-first of June. 10. August is the eighth month of the year. 11. There are a hundred days from January first to the tenth of April. 12. When we study the Spanish lesson, we read each sentence several times. 13. My brother comes home twice a day. 14. December is the last month of the year. 15. These children are in their seventh year. 16. The lesson is on page forty-five, from the third to the thirtieth line. 17. The magazine comes on Fridays. 18. The office is at number fifty East 23d St. 19. He is sick for the first time in (**de**) his life. 20. The steamer leaves to-morrow morning. 21. The steamer for Málaga leaves twice a week. 22. It is the third of October. 23. A million dollars is enough for any (**cualquier**) man. 24. The year 1492 is in the fifteenth century.

LESSON VIII

46. Shortened Form of Adjectives. 1. Before a masculine singular noun the following adjectives drop the final **o**:

uno, *one*, *an* or *a*	**bueno**, *good*	**primero**, *first*
alguno, *some*	**malo**, *bad*	**tercero**, *third*
ninguno, *no*, *none*, *no one*		**postrero**, *last*

un buen hombre, *a good man*
mal tiempo, *bad weather*
algún día, *some day*
el primer mes, *the first month*

But
un hombre malo, *a bad man*
el primero del mes, *the first of the month*

2. **Grande** becomes **gran** before either a masculine or a feminine singular noun that begins with a consonant:

un gran señor, *a great lord*
una gran casa, *a great house*

But **grande hombre**, *great man*
un grande amigo, *a great friend*

a. When **grande** refers to size it is frequently placed after the noun:

el río grande, *the big river*
casa grande, *big house*

47. Comparison of Adjectives. The comparative degree of Spanish adjectives is formed by using **más**, *more*, with the positive. The superlative is made by prefixing the definite article to the comparative.

Positive *rich*	Comparative *richer*	Superlative *richest*
rico	**más rico**	**el más rico**
rica	**más rica**	**la más rica**
ricos	**más ricos**	**los más ricos**
ricas	**más ricas**	**las más ricas**

a. In forming the superlative degree, a possessive adjective may be substituted for the definite article:

mi caballo más fuerte, *my strongest horse*
nuestra mejor tinta, *our best ink*

48. Irregular Comparison.

bueno, mejor, el mejor, *good, better, best*
malo, peor, el peor, *bad, worse, worst*
grande, mayor, el mayor, *great, greater, greatest; older, oldest*
pequeño, menor, el menor, *small, smaller, smallest; younger, youngest*

a. **Grande** and **pequeño** are also compared regularly. In speaking of persons **mayor** means *older*, **menor** *younger*, while the regular comparison refers to size. **Mi hermano mayor,** *my older brother.* **Mi hermano es más grande que yo,** *My brother is taller than I.*

b. Corresponding to these adjectives are the following adverbs:

bien, mejor, *well, better* or *best*
mal, peor, *badly, worse* or *worst*
mucho, más, *much* (*a great deal*), *more* or *most*
poco, menos, *little, less* or *least*

1. **Mucho** and **poco** are also adjectives.
2. The superlative of an adverb is usually the same as the comparative. See section 145, 6.

49. **Than** after comparatives is **que;** but when the comparison means *a greater number than* or *a less number than*, **de** must be used.

Tiene más dinero que yo.	*He has more money than I.*
Tiene más de mil pesos.	*He has more than a thousand dollars.*

50. Comparison of Equality. The comparison of things by the correlative words *as . . . as, as* (*so*) *much . . . as, as* (*so*) *many . . . as*, is called the comparison of equality. Before nouns *as* (*so*) *much, as* (*so*) *many*, are adjectives; hence **tanto** and its feminine and plural forms **tanta, tantos, tantas** are used. Before adjectives *as* (*so*) is an adverb and the short invariable form **tan** is required. The invariable **como** introduces the second term of the comparison.

Tengo tanto pan y tantas manzanas como Juan.	*I have as much bread and as many apples as John.*
Son tan ricos como reyes.	*They are as rich as kings.*

51. Agreement of Adjectives. An adjective agreeing with two nouns is put in the plural.

If the nouns are of different genders, the masculine plural adjective is generally used.

El hombre y la mujer son ricos.	*The man and the woman are rich.*
El presidente y sus hijas están enfermos.	*The president and his daughters are ill.*

52. Position of Adjectives. Spanish adjectives are usually placed after their nouns; but common adjectives like **bueno, malo, pequeño, grande, mucho,** and numerals generally precede the noun:

un libro rojo, *a red book*
el pequeño sombrero, *the little hat*
cinco hombres, *five men*

a. An adjective modified by an adverb is usually placed after its noun: **un buen caballo,** *a good horse,* but **un caballo muy bueno,** *a very good horse.*

b. A superlative adjective has the article before the noun while the remainder may follow the noun:

la roca más elevada, *the highest rock*
el buey más fuerte, *the strongest ox*

c. Some adjectives have a different meaning according as they precede or follow the noun. For these and for further discussion of the position of adjectives see section 139.

53. Idiomatic Expressions. *a.* After a superlative adjective, use the preposition **de:**

the youngest ***in*** *the family,* **el menor de la familia**
the prettiest girl ***in*** *the town,* **la niña más linda de la ciudad**

b. To express age, use the verb **tener,** *to have.*

¿Qué edad tiene Vd.? (lit. *What age have you?*)	*How old are you?*
¿Cuántos años tiene Vd.? (lit. *How many years have you?*)	
Tengo veinte años.	*I am twenty years old.*
Mi padre es mayor que mi madre, pero no tiene tantos años como mi tío.	*My father is older than my mother, but not so old as my uncle.*

LLAMAS EN UN PUEBLO DEL PERÚ

By courtesy of the Pan-American Union

LLAMAS EN UN PUEBLO DEL PERÚ

1. ¿En qué país emplean las llamas?
2. ¿Qué montañas hay en el Perú?
3. ¿Para qué emplean las llamas?
4. ¿Qué clase de animal es la llama?
5. ¿Produce lana tan buena como la de la oveja?
6. ¿Cuál es más grande, un caballo o una llama?
7. ¿Cómo es el cuello de la llama? ¿y la cabeza?
8. ¿Lleva una carga grande o pequeña?
9. ¿De qué modo sujetan la carga sobre el lomo del animal?

bestia de carga, f. *beast of burden*
carga, f. *load*
cuello, m. *neck*
cuerda, f. *rope*
llama, f. *llama, an animal about three feet high, native to the mountainous regions of Peru. It is used as a beast of burden. Garments are made from its wool and its flesh is used for food*
sujetar, *to fasten*

EXERCISE 8

A. a. *Use the Spanish adjectives for* good, bad, great, first, best, richest, *with each of the following; then, put in the plural.*

El hombre	La casa
La mujer	El libro

b. *Supply the proper word for* than *and translate:* 1. Es más rico —— yo. 2. Tiene más —— cinco perros. 3. Un peso vale más —— una peseta. 4. Yo tengo menos —— una peseta. 5. Carlos tiene diez años más —— yo. 6. Juana es menor —— su hermano.

B. 1. La tierra no tiene la superficie plana sino cortada por alturas que son las montañas. Los terrenos llanos entre dos cordilleras son valles. Los montes están formados en su interior de piedra, de donde sacan los hombres las varias clases de minerales y metales como el carbón, el hierro, la plata y el oro. Los montes dan origen a las fuentes y a los ríos que riegan los bosques y las selvas que suministran al hombre la madera para su casa, y los pastos de muchos animales.

2. Algunos animales son muy útiles. El elefante es el animal más grande del mundo; pero el caballo es mejor para el trabajo, aunque menos fuerte. Son también buenos el buey y la vaca. De la piel de estos animales hace el hombre la mejor clase de cuero para los zapatos que protegen sus pies. Para abrigar su cuerpo contra el tiempo frío, el hombre emplea la lana de la oveja, de la cual hace vestidos, un sombrero para la cabeza, una chaqueta para cubrir la espalda, el pecho y los brazos, pantalones para las piernas. El hombre come la carne de los animales, especialmente la carne de vaca, de carnero y de cerdo. La leche es también un alimento de grande importancia.

C. 1. ¿Qué clase de metales saca el hombre de las montañas? 2. ¿De dónde sacan los hombres el oro y la plata? 3. ¿Sacan tanto hierro como oro? 4. ¿Qué saca el hombre de los bosques? 5. ¿Cuál es el animal más grande del mundo? 6. ¿Qué vestidos hace el hombre de la lana? 7. ¿Tiene Vd. un hermano mayor?

¿una hermana menor? 8. ¿Cuántos años tiene ella? 9. ¿Es un hombre tan fuerte como un caballo? 10. ¿Qué clase de carne comen Vds.? 11. ¿Beben Vds. tanta leche como agua? 12. ¿Cuál es el mejor alimento para los hombres?

D. 1. From the forests (the) men get wood for their houses. 2. They do not get as much gold as silver. 3. My older brother has a better horse than I. 4. We use sheep's wool for our best garments. 5. What animal is as strong as the ox? 6. Do you eat as much meat as bread? 7. Bad work is worse than no work. 8. A man wears a hat to protect his head. 9. I have more animals than you. I have more than a hundred. 10. A good cow and a good horse are very useful for men. 11. John is the oldest boy in the class. His sister is the prettiest girl in the town. 12. A great man does not always live in a large house. 13. January is the first month in the year. 14. Beef and mutton are a better food than pork. 15. Our richest friends live in London.

LESSON IX

54. Radical-changing Verbs. Many Spanish verbs having the radical vowel **e** or **o** change the vowel in the present tense when the radical is stressed in pronunciation: **e** becomes **ie**, **o** becomes **ue**. The radical in the present tense is stressed in the 1st, 2d, and 3d person singular, and the 3d person plural.

(To find the radical of a Spanish verb, drop the ending of the infinitive e.g. **pensar**, radical **pens**.)

PRESENT INDICATIVE

Pensar, *to think, intend*	**Encontrar**, *to find, meet*
SING. 1. **pienso**, *I think*	SING. 1. **encuentro**, *I find*
2. **piensas**, *thou thinkest*	2. **encuentras**, *thou findest*
3. **piensa**, *he thinks*	3. **encuentra**, *he finds*
PLUR. 1. **pensamos**, *we think*	PLUR. 1. **encontramos**, *we find*
2. **pensáis**, *you think*	2. **encontráis**, *you find*
3. **piensan**, *they think*	3. **encuentran**, *they find*
¿Piensa Vd.? *Do you intend?*	**¿Encuentra Vd.?** *Do you find?*

Querer, *to desire, wish, be willing*

SING. 1. **quiero**, *I wish, am willing*
2. **quieres**, *thou wishest*
3. **quiere**, *he wishes*

PLUR. 1. **queremos**, *we wish*
2. **queréis**, *you wish*
3. **quieren**, *they wish*

¿**Quiere Vd.?** *Will you?*

Poder, *to be able, can*

SING. 1. **puedo**, *I can*
2. **puedes**, *thou canst*
3. **puede**, *he can*

PLUR. 1. **podemos**, *we can*
2. **podéis**, *you can*
3. **pueden**, *they can*

¿**Puede Vd.?** *Can you?*

Sentir, *to feel, perceive, regret, be sorry*

SING. 1. **siento**, *I feel, am sorry*
2. **sientes**, *thou feelest, art sorry*
3. **siente**, *he feels, is sorry*

PLUR. 1. **sentimos**, *we feel, are sorry*
2. **sentís**, *you feel, are sorry*
3. **sienten**, *they feel, are sorry*

¿**Siente Vd.?** *Do you feel?*

Dormir, *to sleep*

SING. 1. **duermo**, *I sleep*
2. **duermes**, *thou sleepest*
3. **duerme**, *he sleeps*

PLUR. 1. **dormimos**, *we sleep*
2. **dormís**, *you sleep*
3. **duermen**, *they sleep*

¿**Duerme Vd.?** *Do you sleep?*

Some verbs of the **ir** conjugation change **e** to **i**, as

Pedir, *to ask for*

SING. 1. **pido**, *I ask*
2. **pides**, *thou askest*
3. **pide**, *he asks*

PLUR. 1. **pedimos**, *we ask*
2. **pedís**, *you ask*
3. **piden**, *they ask*

¿**Pide Vd.?** *Do you ask?*

55. The Infinitive. A verb depending on another verb is frequently put in the infinitive mood; sometimes with a connecting preposition, but many verbs, such as **poder, querer, sentir, pensar, ver, oír,** are followed directly by the infinitive.

Pienso ir a Cuba.	*I intend to go to Cuba.*
¿**Puede Vd. dormir?**	*Can you sleep?*
Queremos saber.	*We wish to know.*

56. Indirect Object. The indirect object of a verb is that person or thing interested in the action expressed by the verb, but neither performing the action nor receiving it directly; thus, in *He writes Charles a letter*, " Charles " is the indirect object. In English the indirect object is often indicated by merely placing it before the direct object. If the indirect object is placed elsewhere in the sentence, it is preceded by some preposition, usually *to*: thus, *He writes a letter to Charles*. In Spanish, **Escribe una carta a Carlos;** but the preposition **a** must always precede the indirect object in Spanish no matter what its position in the sentence: thus, **Escribe a Carlos una carta.**

a. Verbs denoting separation require the preposition **a** before the name of the person from whom things are obtained just as though it were an indirect object. Hence **a** translates ' from ' in such expressions as the following:

comprar a un español, *to buy from a Spaniard*
pedir un favor a mi padre, *to ask my father a favor*
oír el cuento a una gitana, *to hear the story from a gypsy woman*
robar el dinero al ciego, *to steal the money from the blind man*

b. In speaking of the person or clothing, the definite article is used instead of the possessive adjective, and the indirect object indicates the person if necessary:

Salvó la vida al hombre.	*He saved the man's life.*
El viento llevó el sombrero a mi padre.	*The wind carried off my father's hat.*
En vez de contestar: — No puedo ir, — tomo el sombrero y voy.	*Instead of replying, "I cannot go," I take my hat and go.*
Romperé la cabeza a quien quiera oponerse a mi entrada.	*I will break the head of any one who tries to oppose my entrance.*

57. Direct Object. Personal *a*. The direct object of a verb is that person or thing which suffers the action of the verb. In Spanish, when the direct object denotes a definite person or personified thing, or is a proper noun, the preposition **a** must precede it.

Encuentran un peso.	*They find a dollar.*
Encuentran a su padre.	*They find their father.*
Visitan a Valparaíso.	*They visit Valparaiso.*

The use of the preposition **a** before the direct personal object is very important in Spanish. It permits placing the direct object before the verb. **A Eduardo Séptimo sigue Jorge Quinto,** *George the Fifth succeeds Edward the Seventh.*

58. Idiomatic Expressions. *a.* In regard to the weather, use the impersonal verb **hace,** *it makes*:

¿Qué tal tiempo hace?	*What kind of weather is it?*
Hace mal tiempo.	*It is bad weather.*
Hace buen tiempo.	*It is good weather.*
Hace mucho calor.	*It is very warm.*
Hace mucho frío.	*It is very cold.*
Hace viento.	*It is windy.*

b. When the conditions of the weather concern visible objects, **hay,** *there is,* introduces the expression:

Hay sol.	*The sun is shining.*	**Hay lodo.**	*It is muddy.*
Hay polvo.	*It is dusty.*	**Hay neblina.**	*It is foggy.*
Hay luna esta noche.		*There is a moon to-night.*	

c. Statements concerning the person commonly employ **tener,** *to have,* instead of the verb *to be,* as in English.

Tengo frío.	*I am cold.*	**Tengo hambre.**	*I am hungry.*
Tenemos sueño.	*We are sleepy.*	**Tengo sed.**	*I am thirsty.*
Tengo mucho calor.		*I am very warm.*	
Tienen prisa.		*They are in a hurry.*	
Tiene los ojos azules.		*His eyes are blue.*	

d. As the words **calor, frío,** etc. used with **hace, hay,** and **tener** are nouns, the adverb **muy,** *very,* cannot be used, but instead of it the adjective **mucho,** which must agree with the noun: thus, **Tengo mucho calor y mucha sed,** *I am very hot and thirsty.*

e. **Querer** is a very important verb. Its general meaning, *to desire, to wish,* includes all kinds of willing.

Will you?
Are you willing? } = **¿Quiere Vd.?** *If you please.* **Si Vd. quiere.**
Will you have?

To mean, **querer decir;** as, *What does this word mean?* **¿Qué quiere decir esta palabra?**

EXERCISE 9

A. a. *Find in the vocabulary the infinitive of* **despierta, muere, vistes, sirvo, cuentan.**

b. *Insert the preposition* **a** *in the following sentences. Tell why it is necessary.* 1. La madre da una manzana —— su niño. 2. El chico pide un vaso de agua —— su madre. 3. Juan ama —— su madre. 4. Este señor escribe —— su sobrino. 5. No encontramos —— nuestra hermana.

c. *Translate:* 1. He asks for an apple. 2. We can see. 3. I wish to ask. 4. I can sleep. 5. They are sorry. 6. We are cold. 7. They are very hungry. 8. It is warm. 9. What will you have? 10. I intend to study. 11. How much does he ask? 12. What do you mean? 13. Is the sun shining? 14. It is not cold. 15. I am very warm.

B. Cuando Enrique toca una campanilla u otro instrumento, suena; y él oye el sonido porque tiene el sentido del oído. Un sonido confuso es un ruido. Algunas veces no podemos oír bien a causa del ruido de la calle.

Los demás sentidos son la vista, el gusto, el olfato y el tacto.

Los ojos son los órganos del sentido de la vista. Hay hombres que no pueden ver: estos pobres son ciegos. Y en la obscuridad estamos todos ciegos, porque sin luz no es posible ver.

Enrique siente el sabor de los alimentos en la boca donde tocan la lengua. Como el chico no quiere el café amargo, ni la fruta ácida, pide a su madre azúcar que es dulce. Ella da el azúcar a su hijo.

La nariz de Enrique sirve para sentir los olores. Puede percibir que una flor huele bien o mal, y que la habitación huele a tabaco.

El sonido que de la garganta viene a la boca es la voz; recibe varias modulaciones de la lengua, de los dientes y de los labios. Enrique grita o habla en voz alta a su abuelo porque éste es sordo: pero á su madre puede hablar en voz baja porque ella no tiene el oído duro[1] y está cerca. Pero si está lejos, habla en voz alta también a su madre.

[1] **tener el oído duro = ser sordo.**

C. 1. ¿Cuántos sentidos tienen Vds.? ¿Cuáles son? 2. ¿Oye Vd. el sonido del piano? 3. ¿Cuándo hay mucho ruido en la calle? 4. ¿Quiere Vd. la fruta ácida o dulce? 5. ¿Qué pide Enrique a su madre para hacer dulce el café? 6. ¿Para qué sirve la nariz? 7. ¿Cómo huele una rosa? 8. ¿Qué es un sordo? 9. ¿Qué quiere decir la palabra *sordo*? 10. ¿Puede Vd. oír si hablo en voz baja? 11. ¿Tiene Vd. frío o calor? ¿Mucho? 12. ¿Por qué tienen Vds. frío? 13. ¿Hace frío cuando hay sol? 14. ¿A quién sigue Jorge Quinto?

D. 1. When the bell rings, John opens the door. 2. A deaf man cannot hear so well as you. 3. When the coffee is bitter, I ask for sugar. 4. Do you wish sugar in your coffee? 5. I do not sleep well when there is a great noise in the street. 6. In the street there is a man who[1] says,[1] "Who wants oranges?" How much does he ask? 7. I wish to give my sister a sweet orange. 8. I can hear Henry's voice; he is shouting. 9. Can you see Charles? He is ringing the bell. 10. The Spanish word **la voz** means the sound which comes from the throat, but the plural **las voces** means 'words.' 11. Will you give this poor man a dollar? He is blind. 12. When I am hungry I wish to eat, and when I am thirsty I wish to drink. 13. John's eyes are blue. 14. If you visit London, you will see[2] the king. 15. On account of the darkness we cannot see the persons in the room.

[1] que dice. [2] verá.

LESSON X

59. Reflexive Verbs. A reflexive verb is one which represents the subject as acting on itself: as, *He cuts himself.*

a. The Spanish reflexive pronoun for the third person is **se,** which is appended to the infinitive: **cortarse,** *to cut oneself.*

b. In Spanish many verbs are reflexive in form though not so in English: **levantar,** *to raise*; **levantarse,** *to raise oneself*, i.e. *to get up.*

c. In conjugating a reflexive verb, the pronouns are usually put before the verb; but the infinitive, the present participle, and the imperative without **no**, add the pronoun as another syllable.

Levantándose. *Getting up.*
Levántese Vd. *Get up.*
Siéntese Vd. *Sit down.*
Sentándome. *Sitting down.*
No se levante Vd. *Don't get up.*
No se siente Vd. *Don't sit down.*

60. Present Indicative.

Levantarse, *to get up*	**Ir a levantarse,** *to be going to get up*
me levanto, *I get up*	**voy a levantarme,** *I am going to get up*
te levantas, *you get up*	**vas a levantarte,** *you are going to get up*
se levanta, *he gets up*	**va a levantarse,** *he is going to get up*
nos levantamos, *we get up*	**vamos a levantarnos,** *we are going to get up*
os levantáis, *you get up*	**vais a levantaros,** *you are going to get up*
se levantan, *they get up*	**van a levantarse,** *they are going to get up*
¿ Se levanta Vd. ? *Do you get up ?*	**¿ Va Vd. a levantarse ?** *Are you going to get up ?*

a. It is always necessary to learn the special meaning of a reflexive verb, as it often differs in translation from the simple verb; as, **ir,** *to go*, **irse,** *to go away*; **morir,** *to die*, **morirse,** *to be dying.*

61. The Spanish reflexive verb is often used in a general sense where English uses the passive voice.

Aquí se habla español.	*Spanish (is) spoken here.*
El muchacho se llama Juan.	*The boy is called John.*
¿ Cómo se llama Vd. ?	*How are you called ?* or, more idiomatically, *What is your name ?*
Me llamo Francisco.	*My name is Francis.*

62. Idiomatic Expressions. *a.* When referring to parts of the body or clothing it is customary to use the definite article instead of the possessive adjective. A pronoun before the verb shows what person is meant whenever necessary: **Se pone el sombrero,** *He puts on* ***his*** *hat*; **Me quito el sombrero,** *I take off* ***my*** *hat*; **Se corta el dedo,** *He cuts* ***his*** *finger.* (See section 56, *b.*)

b. To express the time of an action **al** with the infinitive is common: **Al levantarme, me lavo la cara,** *On getting up* (or *When I get up*), *I wash my face*; **Al cerrar yo la puerta, gritaron,** *Upon my closing the door* (or *When I closed the door*), *they shouted.*

EXERCISE 10

A. a. *Write the conjugation and then translate the present tense indicative of* **llamarse, sentarse, acostarse, ir a sentarse** (**sentarse** *and* **acostarse** *are radical-changing*).

b. *Supply reflexive pronouns and translate:* 1. Juan —— sienta a la mesa. 2. Siénte—— Vd. aquí. 3. Los muchachos —— llaman Pablo y Pedro. 4. —— llamamos Juan y María. 5. El hombre —— lava la cara. 6. Voy a lavar—— las manos. 7. Yo —— acuesto temprano. 8. ¿ —— acuesta Vd. tarde? 9. —— sentamos a la mesa. 10. ¿ Cómo —— llama ella? 11. Al levantar——, Pedro —— lava la cara.

c. *After reading Exercise 10, B, 1, change the Spanish verbs into the third person singular.*

d. *Translate:* 1. I cut myself. 2. They cut themselves. 3. He gets up. 4. Do you get up? 5. We sit down. 6. I go to bed. 7. We go to bed. 8. We are going to sit down. 9. They are called (*or*, they call themselves). 10. He takes off his hat. 11. Pedro does not wash his face. 12. On sitting down. 13. On washing my face. 14. Why don't you wash your face? 15. Why don't you sit down?

B. 1. Por la noche me quito los vestidos y me acuesto. Al despertarme por la mañana, despierto a mis hermanos. Nos levantamos, nos lavamos la cara y las manos con jabón y agua, nos secamos con una toalla, y nos ponemos los vestidos. Después me siento a la mesa para el almuerzo. Tomo café con leche, pan y mantequilla, huevos o carne. Para el servicio de la mesa me sirvo de un cuchillo, un tenedor y una cuchara. Después me marcho al despacho. Allí no me divierto mucho.

2. La tierra se mueve alrededor del sol, inclinándose[1] un poco hacia una parte, de lo cual[2] resulta que una mitad del año los pueblos de la mitad superior de la tierra tienen los días más largos que las noches. En la otra parte del año sucede lo contrario y de este modo se verifican las estaciones del año. El invierno es cuando los rayos del sol vienen más inclinados y son los días cortos; por esto hace mucho frío. En la primavera crecen la hierba y las plantas. En el verano hace mucho calor. En el otoño se cogen los frutos del campo mientras caen las hojas de los árboles.

3. El hombre nace, vive y muere sobre la tierra. En su figura se asemeja ésta bastante a una naranja un poco aplastada por los dos extremos, que en geografía se llaman los polos. Los rayos del sol alumbran y calientan la tierra, que da vuelta alrededor del sol, y sobre su eje (*axis*). Así se determinan cuatro puntos cardinales que son norte, sur, este y oeste. Se llama este aquella parte del cielo en que vemos el sol al amanecer. Oeste se llama la parte opuesta por donde se oculta el sol al anochecer.

C. 1. ¿Se despierta Vd. temprano o tarde? 2. ¿Qué hace Vd. después de despertarse? 3. ¿Dónde se sienta Vd. para el almuerzo? 4. ¿De qué se sirven Vds. para el servicio de la mesa? 5. ¿A dónde se marcha Vd. después del almuerzo? 6. ¿Se divierten Vds. mucho en el colegio? 7. ¿Cuándo tenemos los días más cortos que las noches? 8. ¿Por qué tenemos el día y la noche? 9. ¿Qué estación del año tenemos ahora? 10. ¿Por qué hay estaciones? 11. ¿Qué tal tiempo hace en el invierno? ¿en el verano? 12. ¿Cómo se llaman los puntos cardinales?

D. 1. In the morning we wake up early and wake up our friends. 2. The bell wakes John; he cannot wake up without the bell. 3. My brother does not have a good time at the office: he works. 4. We have (the) day and (the) night because the earth turns on its axis (**eje**). 5. We have seasons because the earth is inclined towards one side. 6. It is very cold this winter, but in the spring it is much

[1] **inclinándose**, present participle of **inclinarse**. [2] **de lo cual**, *from which*.

warmer. 7. The two ends of the earth are called the North Pole and the South Pole. 8. When I face the north, the east is on the right, and the west on the left. 9. French is spoken in France, but English is spoken here. 10. What is your name? — My name is Peter Lucas, but they call me Uncle[1] Licurgo. 11. In this season I wake early, but when it is cold weather I rise late. 12. During this part of the year, the nights are longer than the days.

[1] Add the definite article; do not capitalize.

LESSON XI

63. Preterit Tense. The Spanish preterit tense, indicative mood, denotes that a single act was performed and completed in past time. It corresponds to the English past tense: *He saw*, **Vió.** *Did you see?* **¿ Vió Vd. ?**

-ar VERBS	-er AND -ir VERBS
SING. 1. compr**é**, *I bought*	SING. 1. vend**í**, *I sold*
2. compr**aste**, *you bought*	2. vend**iste**, *you sold*
3. compr**ó**, *he bought*	3. vend**ió**, *he sold*
PLUR. 1. compr**amos**, *we bought*	PLUR. 1. vend**imos**, *we sold*
2. compr**asteis**, *you bought*	2. vend**isteis**, *you sold*
3. compr**aron**, *they bought*	3. vend**ieron**, *they sold*
¿ Compró Vd. ? *Did you buy?*	**¿ Vendió Vd. ?** *Did you sell?*

a. Note the importance of the written accent: **compro,** present tense, *I buy*; **compró,** preterit tense, *he bought.*

b. In conjugating the preterit tense, certain changes of spelling must be borne in mind. The radical of a verb must keep the same final consonant sound which it has in the infinitive: consequently verbs ending in **car, gar,** and **zar** are spelled in the first person singular of the preterit like the following models:

sacar : saqué, *I drew out*, **sacaste,** etc.
llegar : llegué, *I arrived*, **llegaste,** etc.
empezar : empecé, *I began*, **empezaste,** etc.

See table of spellings, section 7; and also section 242.

c. Verbs of the **-ir** conjugation that change the radical in the present tense change **e** to **i**, and **o** to **u**, in the third person singular and plural of the preterit tense.

Sentir, *to feel*	**Pedir,** *to ask for*
Sing. 1. **sentí,** *I felt*	Sing. 1. **pedí,** *I asked*
2. **sentiste,** *you felt*	2. **pediste,** *you asked*
3. **sintió,** *he felt*	3. **pidió,** *he asked*
Plur. 1. **sentimos,** *we felt*	Plur. 1. **pedimos,** *we asked*
2. **sentisteis,** *you felt*	2. **pedisteis,** *you asked*
3. **sintieron,** *they felt*	3. **pidieron,** *they asked*
¿**Sintió Vd.?** *Did you feel?*	¿**Pidió Vd.?** *Did you ask?*

Dormir, *to sleep*

Sing. 1. **dormí,** *I slept*	Plur. 1. **dormimos,** *we slept*
2. **dormiste,** *you slept*	2. **dormisteis,** *you slept*
3. **durmió,** *he slept*	3. **durmieron,** *they slept*

¿**Durmió Vd.?** *Did you sleep?*

d. Spanish spelling requires that the letter **i** unaccented should not stand between two vowels; consequently, verbs whose stem ends with a vowel have **y** in the third person singular and plural of the preterit tense.

Creer, *to believe, to think*

Sing. 1. **creí,** *I believed*	Plur. 1. **creímos,** *we believed*
2. **creíste,** *you believed*	2. **creísteis,** *you believed*
3. **creyó,** *he believed*	3. **creyeron,** *they believed*

¿**Creyó Vd.?** *Did you believe?*

64. Idiomatic Expressions. *a.* The verb **hace,** *it makes,* is used with expressions of time to convey the same idea as the English word *ago*:

hace un año, *a year ago* **hace una hora,** *an hour ago*

b. In reckoning time the Spanish count the day on which the calculation is made; hence,

ocho días, *a week* **hace quince días,** *a fortnight ago*

c. **¿Qué hay de nuevo?**	*What's the news?*
Nada de particular.	*Nothing special.*
d. **Muchas gracias, señor.**	*Many thanks, sir.*
No hay de qué.	*Quite welcome.*

EXERCISE 11

A. a. *Conjugate, with English meaning, the preterit tense of* **tomar, escribir, sentarse, servir** (*like* **pedir**), **oír, pagar, tocar.**

b. *Read Exercise 10, B, 1, putting the verbs in the preterit tense.*

c. *Translate:* 1. How much did he ask six months ago? 2. How did you sleep? 3. What did they sell? 4. He took coffee. 5. Where was he born? 6. I felt cold an hour ago. 7. I went to bed. 8. They went away. 9. I got up. 10. How was he called? 11. His name was John. 12. They asked for oranges. 13. Did you hear the bell? 14. Did they read the newspaper?

B. 1. Ayer por la mañana me levanté — me lavé — medio me vestí — leí los periódicos — escribí dos cartas — almorcé — acabé de vestirme — me marché a casa de un amigo.

Por la tarde volví a casa. En la calle me encontré con un pobre — saqué una moneda de cobre del bolsillo — di diez céntimos[3] al pobre — llegué a casa sin otra novedad.

Por la noche comí. Después de la comida me senté al balcón al fresco, y ahora tengo sueño y voy a acostarme.

2. Hernán Cortés, conquistador de Méjico, nació en 1485. Con once navíos y algunos centenares de soldados, desembarcó en el puerto de San Juan de Ulúa en 1519, fundó la fortaleza de Veracruz, quemó sus naves y marchó sobre Méjico. Venció a sus enemigos; sitió y tomó a Méjico donde se apoderó de Montezuma. El emperador Carlos Quinto, rey de España, nombró a Cortés capitán general de Nueva España, nombre que dió[1] al país que conquistó. Cortés volvió a España a contestar a las acusaciones dirigidas[2] contra él, y murió allí en 1547.

[1] **dió**, preterit of **dar**. [2] *directed*. [3] **céntimo**, hundredth part of a peseta.

3. Francisco Pizarro, célebre conquistador español, tenía más de cincuenta años cuando emprendió la conquista del más grande y rico imperio del nuevo mundo. Descubrió las costas del Perú en 1526. El ejército del inca Atahualpa atacó a los españoles, pero éstos salieron vencedores en aquel encuentro y quedaron dueños del imperio y de sus riquezas. Pizarro se casó con la hermana del inca Atahualpa. Fundó a Lima, capital desde entonces del Perú, donde murió en 1541 asesinado por sus enemigos.

C. 1. ¿Cuál periódico leyó Vd. ayer? 2. ¿A quién escribió Vd. las cartas hace ocho días? 3. ¿Con quién se encontró Vd. en la calle? 4. ¿Cuándo dió el señor el dinero al pobre? 5. ¿Qué hizo[1] Vd. después de la comida? 6. ¿Cuándo nació Hernán Cortés? 7. ¿Cuántos soldados desembarcaron con él en Méjico? 8. ¿A dónde marcharon? 9. ¿Qué nombramiento hizo el rey? 10. ¿Qué nombre tiene ahora el país de Nueva España? 11. ¿En qué año murió Cortés?

D. 1. Many years ago, Hernán Cortés and his soldiers besieged Mexico and conquered the country. 2. Charles the[2] Fifth appointed Cortés captain-general of New Spain. 3. My friend rose early in the morning and dressed himself. 4. In the evening he dined at home, and after dinner sat in the open air. 5. Yesterday he read two newspapers and wrote his brother a letter. 6. When I arrived in New York,[3] I took my book from my pocket. 7. When he sat down to the table,[3] he found his newspaper at his place. 8. With our breakfast this morning we took coffee with milk and sugar. 9. Did you sleep well last night? Yes, I slept till my brother arrived. 10. Did you pay the bill? I paid the tailor's bill a fortnight ago. 11. The soldiers died in defense of the city, April 25, 1695. 12. He washed his face and hands and went to bed. 13. Cortés gave the name of New Spain to the country which is now called Mexico. 14. Pizarro was born in the province of Estremadura, in the little village of Trujillo.

[1] **hizo**, preterit of **hacer**. [2] Omit the article.
[3] Translate the clause in two ways.

LESSON XII

65. Imperfect Tense. The Spanish imperfect tense, indicative mood, denotes a past action, either continuous or habitual in character. *He was singing*, **Cantaba.** *He used to write every day*, **Escribía todos los días.**

-ar VERBS

SING.	1.	compr**aba**, *I was buying, used to buy*
	2.	compr**abas**, *you were buying, used to buy*
	3.	compr**aba**, *he was buying, used to buy*
PLUR.	1.	compr**ábamos**, *we were buying, used to buy*
	2.	compr**abais**, *you were buying, used to buy*
	3.	compr**aban**, *they were buying, used to buy*

-er AND -ir VERBS

SING.	1.	vend**ía**, *I was selling, used to sell*
	2.	vend**ías**, *you were selling, used to sell*
	3.	vend**ía**, *he was selling, used to sell*
PLUR.	1.	vend**íamos**, *we were selling, used to sell*
	2.	vend**íais**, *you were selling, used to sell*
	3.	vend**ían**, *they were selling, used to sell*

a. To understand the imperfect tense, contrast its meaning with the preterit.

Escribió una carta.	*He wrote one letter.*
Escribía cuando yo entré.	*He was writing when I entered.*
Estábamos a la mesa cuando sonó la campanilla.	*We were at table when the bell rang.*

b. This tense is frequent in descriptive matter. Though usually translated as above, the simple form of the English past tense may occur: as, *When I lived in Cuba, I spoke Spanish.* As the verbs denote continued or habitual acts, the Spanish uses the imperfect tense, **Cuando vivía en Cuba, hablaba español.**

66. Idiomatic Expressions. *a.* **Había**, *there was, there were*, imperfect tense corresponding to **hay**, *there is, there are.*

b. With expressions of time **todo,** *all*, in the plural means *every*: **todos los días,** *every day*; **todos los domingos,** *every Sunday*. But note in the singular **todo el mundo,** *everybody*.

c. Spanish uses the singular, not the plural, when speaking of objects one of which belongs to each member of a group. *The boys raised their heads*; as each boy has but one head, the Spanish says, **Los muchachos levantaron la cabeza.** *The servants did not occupy seats*, **Los criados no ocupaban asiento.**

EXERCISE 12

A. a. *Read Exercise 10, B, 1, substituting the imperfect tense.*

b. *Translate:* 1. He was sleeping. 2. They used to read. 3. We were reading. 4. The bell was ringing. 5. Who was talking? 6. I was eating. 7. I was cold and hungry. 8. Every Monday he used to rise early. 9. In Spain we rose late. 10. It was cold. 11. How many were here? 12. The enemy (*plural*) were marching. 13. There were five apples on the plate. 14. He used to drink milk. 15. We took coffee every morning.

B. 1. Juanito cuando tenía hambre, quería comer; cuando tenía sed, quería beber. Cuando estaba cansado por haber corrido mucho, o tenía sueño, deseaba la cama para descansar: cuando tenía frío, deseaba el abrigo. Luego que satisfacía estas necesidades quedaba bien y contento.

2. Hace muchos años (¡como que yo tenía siete!) que al obscurecer de un día de invierno me dijo[1] mi padre: — Pedro, esta noche no te acuestas a la misma hora que las gallinas: ya eres grande y debes cenar con tus padres y con tus hermanos mayores. Esta noche es *Nochebuena*.

Un enorme tronco de encina chisporroteaba en medio del hogar; la negra y ancha campana de la chimenea nos cobijaba; en los rincones estaban mis dos abuelas, que aquella noche se quedaban

[1] **dijo,** preterit of **decir.**

© by Underwood and Underwood

EL CAMINO ANTIGUO DE LOS INCAS EN QUITO, ECUADOR

EL CAMINO ANTIGUO DE LOS INCAS

1. ¿De qué país es Quito la capital?
2. ¿En qué parte del mundo está la república del Ecuador?
3. ¿Quiénes construyeron el camino que se ve en el grabado?
4. ¿Son incas las personas que pasan ahora por el camino?
5. ¿Quiénes conquistaron a los incas?
6. Además de las personas, ¿qué ve Vd. en el camino?
7. ¿Sube a la ciudad el camino o baja?
8. ¿Hay muchas ventanas en las casas?
9. ¿Cuál es el edificio más alto de la ciudad?
10. Por los vestidos de los hombres, ¿qué idea puede Vd. hacerse del clima de Quito?

antiguo -a, *ancient, old*
construir, *to build*
grabado, m. *half-tone, picture*
idea, f. *idea*

en nuestra casa; en seguida se hallaban mis padres, luego nosotros, y entre nosotros los criados — porque en aquella fiesta todos representábamos la *Casa*, y a todos debía calentarnos un mismo fuego. Los criados estaban de pie y las criadas de rodillas. Su respetuosa humildad les vedaba ocupar asiento. Los gatos dormían en el centro. Algunos copos de nieve caían por el cañón de la chimenea. Y el viento silbaba a lo lejos. Mi padre y mi hermana mayor tocaban el arpa. Las criadas se encargaron de la parte vocal y cantaron coplas como la siguiente:

«Esta noche es Nochebuena
Y mañana Navidad.»

C. 1. ¿Qué deseaba Juanito cuando estaba cansado? 2. ¿Tenía Vd. hambre ayer? 3. ¿Cuándo es Nochebuena? 4. ¿Quiénes se quedaban en casa de Pedro la Nochebuena? 5. ¿Cómo se calentaban? 6. ¿Por qué no estaban sentados los criados? 7. ¿Qué hacían los gatos? 8. ¿Qué hacía el padre de Pedro? 9. ¿Qué instrumento toca Vd.? 10. ¿Había nieve y viento la Nochebuena? 11. ¿Qué cantaron las criadas? 12. ¿Dónde estaban Vds. hace un año?

D. 1. Johnny went to bed early because he was sleepy. 2. When he was reading the newspaper he found his name on the first page. 3. The snow was falling because it was very cold. 4. I know[1] that the sun was not shining because it was snowing. 5. On Christmas Eve they used to sing verses. 6. We were standing in the corner near the fire when they sang the verse. 7. The maidservants did not occupy seats that night. 8. Peter was seven years old when he dined with his older brothers. 9. Peter's cat used to sleep in front of the fire. 10. We used to sing when my sister played the piano. 11. I was in Mexico two years ago, when he bought the mine. 12. I was getting up when he called. 13. His older brother used to write Paul a letter every week. 14. We were washing our faces when our friends came in.

[1] *I know* = sé.

LESSON XIII

67. Participles. Spanish verbs have two participles, the present (or gerund) and the past.

	-ar VERBS	-er AND -ir VERBS
PRESENT	compr**ando**	vend**iendo**
PAST	compr**ado**	vend**ido**

68. Present Participle. The Spanish present participle is invariable, and is used to express all sorts of relations much more freely than the present participle in English: **Siendo niño, vi al rey,** *When I was a child* (lit. *being a child*), *I saw the king.* See section 274.

a. The pronouns are appended to the present participle as an additional syllable, in which case an accent mark must be written over the stressed vowel of the ending: **levantándose,** *getting up.*

69. Past Participle. The past participle may be used like an adjective, and agrees with its noun in gender and number.

las puertas cerradas, *the closed doors*
las ventanas abiertas, *the open windows*

a. Some past participles are irregular in form:

abrir; **abierto**	*to open; opened*
cubrir; **cubierto**	*to cover; covered*
descubrir; **descubierto**	*to discover; discovered*
escribir; **escrito**	*to write; written*
imprimir; **impreso**	*to print; printed*
romper; **roto**	*to break; broken*

b. The principal use of the past participle is in forming compound tenses with the auxiliary verb **haber.** The past participle remains unchanged in form.

70. Perfect Tense. The present tense of **haber** combined with the past participle of any verb gives the *perfect tense* of that verb.

-ar VERBS

SING. 1. **he comprado**, *I have bought*
2. **has comprado**, *you have bought*
3. **ha comprado**, *he has bought*

PLUR. 1. **hemos comprado**, *we have bought*
2. **habéis comprado**, *you have bought*
3. **han comprado**, *they have bought*

¿**Ha comprado Vd.?** *Have you bought?*

-er AND -ir VERBS

SING. 1. **he vendido**, *I have sold*
2. **has vendido**, *you have sold*
3. **ha vendido**, *he has sold*

PLUR. 1. **hemos vendido**, *we have sold*
2. **habéis vendido**, *you have sold*
3. **han vendido**, *they have sold*

¿**Ha vendido Vd.?** *Have you sold?*

71. Pluperfect Tense. The imperfect tense of **haber** combined with the past participle of any verb gives the *pluperfect* tense of that verb.

-ar VERBS

SING. 1. **había comprado**, *I had bought*
2. **habías comprado**, *you had bought*
3. **había comprado**, *he had bought*

PLUR. 1. **habíamos comprado**, *we had bought*
2. **habíais comprado**, *you had bought*
3. **habían comprado**, *they had bought*

¿**Había comprado Vd.?** *Had you bought?*

-er AND -ir VERBS

SING. 1. **había vendido**, *I had sold*
2. **habías vendido**, *you had sold*
3. **había vendido**, *he had sold*

PLUR. 1. **habíamos vendido**, *we had sold*
2. **habíais vendido**, *you had sold*
3. **habían vendido**, *they had sold*

¿**Había vendido Vd.?** *Had you sold?*

72. The Parts of a Compound Tense must not be separated by other words as in English.

Have you written?	**¿Ha escrito Vd.?**
I have not written.	**No he escrito.**
Has John always lived here?	**¿Ha vivido Juan siempre aquí?**

73. Use of Perfect Tense. The perfect and the preterit tenses both refer to action in past time. The perfect is used —

1. When the action is recent:

Ha llovido mucho esta mañana.	*It rained hard this morning.*

2. When the action, though performed in the past, still continues or affects the present:

España ha producido grandes hombres.	*Spain has produced great men.*
Inglaterra se ha hecho señora del mar.	*England has become mistress of the sea.*

If these acts were ascribed to a definite past time the preterit would be used.

España produjo grandes hombres en el siglo XVI.	*Spain produced great men in the sixteenth century.*
Inglaterra se hizo señora del mar por la victoria de Nelson.	*England became mistress of the sea through Nelson's victory.*

3. When the verb merely asserts the existence of a fact without referring the action to a definite time:

Lo he dicho muchas veces.	*I have often said so.*
Lo dije ayer.	*I said so yesterday.*

74. Adverbs and Prepositions with Verbs. 1. In English some verbs have their meaning so modified by adverbs as to form a class by themselves. Such compounds are expressed in Spanish by verbs having different roots and not by the same verb modified by different adverbs: as,

go into, **entrar**	*go up*, **subir**
go out, **salir**	*go down*, **bajar**

2. In both Spanish and English some verbs require a preposition before the object, but not necessarily the same verb in both languages. Examine the following:

to answer a question, **contestar a una pregunta**
to enter the house, **entrar en la casa**
to ask for an answer, **pedir una contestación**
to ask (i.e. *to inquire*), **preguntar**
to go out of the room, **salir de la habitación**

75. Relative Pronouns. The commonest relative pronouns are

que, *which*, *who*, *that*; referring to both persons and things
quien (quienes), *who*; referring only to persons

a. After prepositions, **que** is used only to refer to things, **quien** to persons.

El lápiz que tengo.	*The pencil which I have.*
La mujer que vi.	*The woman whom I saw.*
La casa en que vivo.	*The house in which I live.*
El hombre a quien dió el dinero.	*The man to whom he gave the money.*
Los señores de quienes hablábamos.	*The gentlemen of whom we were speaking.*

EXERCISE 13

A. a. *Form and translate the perfect tense of* **estar, mandar, ser, vivir, tener, escribir.**

b. *Form and translate the pluperfect tense of the same verbs.*

c. *Translate:* 1. What has he sold? 2. They have bought. 3. He had bought. 4. Where has Charles lived? 5. I have not been in Spain. 6. We have been here. 7. He had been a soldier. 8. They have covered the table. 9. I have had a present. 10. Writing a letter. 11. Having written a letter. 12. Having two dollars, I bought a book. 13. Being at home. 14. We had been there.

d. *After reading Exercise 13, B, 2, explain the use of the various tenses.*

B. 1. Quiero un viaje de un modo raro, por eso voy a recapitular mis viajes.

Yo he viajado ya en barco de vela y en vapor. También he viajado en ferrocarril, en coche, a caballo y en mula. He patinado y andado en trineo. He sido llevado a cuestas para pasar algunos ríos. He bajado a algunas minas colgado de una cuerda. He cabalgado siendo niño en carneros merinos y en perros de Terranova. También he nadado. He volado en sueños. He caído de una altura. He saltado más de cuatro arroyos.

Hasta aquí no he viajado en aeroplano, pero tengo esperanzas de viajar de esta manera. Tampoco he caminado sobre un camello como los árabes, ni sobre el lomo de un elefante como los indios.

2. Rodolfo tomó su sombrero, bajó la escalera y salió de la casa. Abajo al aire libre recobró su presencia de espíritu. — ¡ Caramba ! no he tratado la cuestión de más importancia.

Entró en la casa y subía la escalera en el momento en que bajaba Doña Ernesta. — Señora, dispense Vd. Quiero preguntar, ¿ Ustedes han tenido gastos considerables ; la educación y mantenimiento de ese joven ha producido desembolsos considerables ?

La señora no contestó a la pregunta, levantó una mano y ¡ zas ! la mejilla derecha de Rodolfo se puso encardenada[1] y el sombrero cayó rodando por la escalera de arriba abajo.

C. 1. ¿ Cuándo ha viajado Vd. en vapor ? 2. ¿ De qué manera ha viajado el señor ? 3. ¿ Cuántos viajes ha hecho[2] Vd. en ferrocarril ? 4. ¿ Cuándo ha pasado Vd. el río del Norte ? 5. ¿ A quién han escrito Vds. hoy ? 6. ¿ Cuántos gastos han tenido Vds. ayer ? 7. ¿ Por qué entró Rodolfo en la casa ? 8. ¿ A quién ha encontrado en la escalera ? 9. ¿ Qué ha preguntado a D.ª Ernesta ? 10. ¿ Qué contestación ha recibido ?

D. 1. Have you ever skated on the North River ? 2. This man has traveled in many ways. 3. The Arabs travel on camels. Have

[1] **se puso encardenada,** *turned red.*
[2] **hecho,** past participle of **hacer.**

you ever traveled in this manner? 4. When he was (*use pres. part.*) in India, he rode on an elephant's back. 5. When he was (*use pres. part.*) a child, he had ridden on dogs and sheep and jumped brooks. 6. When we had opened all the windows, he came into the room. 7. He asked who had come down stairs. 8. They answered that they had been in the room an hour. 9. Rodolfo had gone up stairs because he had not discussed the question of most importance. 10. We have not had much presence of mind. 11. The lady who had answered the question went out of the room. 12. The man who has crossed the river (by)[1] swimming is my brother. 13. The soldiers who have traveled by rail arrived yesterday. 14. The boys of whom I have spoken are the best in the class. 15. The ladies, to whom we had spoken, were cold and hungry.

[1] Omit.

LESSON XIV

76. Future Indicative.

SING. 1. comprar**é**, *I shall buy*
2. comprar**ás**, *you will buy*
3. comprar**á**, *he will buy*

PLUR. 1. comprar**emos**, *we shall buy*
2. comprar**éis**, *you will buy*
3. comprar**án**, *they will buy*

¿**Comprará Vd.**? *Shall you buy?*

SING. 1. vender**é**, *I shall sell*
2. vender**ás**, *you will sell*
3. vender**á**, *he will sell*

PLUR. 1. vender**emos**, *we shall sell*
2. vender**éis**, *you will sell*
3. vender**án**, *they will sell*

¿**Venderá Vd.**? *Shall you sell?*

SING. 1. vivir**é**, *I shall live*
2. vivir**ás**, *you will live*
3. vivir**á**, *he will live*

PLUR. 1. vivir**emos**, *we shall live*
2. vivir**éis**, *you will live*
3. vivir**án**, *they will live*

¿**Vivirá Vd.**? *Shall you live?*

a. The future tense, indicative mood, of a Spanish verb is formed from the infinitive by adding the present tense of **haber**. The accent

falls on the ending, and (except in the first person plural) is written. The **h**, being a silent letter, is not written, nor the **hab** of the second person plural: **comprar(h)é, comprar(hab)éis.**

b. Frequently the expressions *will you*, *I will*, etc. mean *are you willing*, *I wish*, etc., in which case they should be rendered by the proper forms of **querer**: *will you buy?* **¿quiere Vd. comprar?**

77. Conditional.

Sing.	1.	comprar**ía**, *I should buy*
	2.	comprar**ías**, *you would buy*
	3.	comprar**ía**, *he would buy*
Plur.	1.	comprar**íamos**, *we should buy*
	2.	comprar**íais**, *you would buy*
	3.	comprar**ían**, *they would buy*

¿Compraría Vd.? *Should you buy?*

Sing.	1.	vender**ía**, *I should sell*	Sing.	1. vivir**ía**, *I should live*
	2.	vender**ías**, *you would sell*		2. vivir**ías**, *you would live*
	3.	vender**ía**, *he would sell*		3. vivir**ía**, *he would live*
Plur.	1.	vender**íamos**, *we should sell*	Plur.	1. vivir**íamos**, *we should live*
	2.	vender**íais**, *you would sell*		2. vivir**íais**, *you would live*
	3.	vender**ían**, *they would sell*		3. vivir**ían**, *they would live*
¿Vendería Vd.? *Should you sell?*			**¿Viviría Vd.?** *Should you live?*	

a. The conditional is formed from the infinitive by adding the endings of the imperfect tense of **haber**: **comprar(hab)ía.**

b. The conditional takes the name from its frequent use in the conclusion of a condition: **Si tuviese dinero, compraría el perro,** *If I had money, I should buy the dog.* The conditional is only used in connection with some verb in a past tense; hence, it stands for the future in a quoted statement depending on a verb denoting past time: **Comprará el perro,** *He will buy the dog*; **Dijo que compraría el perro,** *He said that he would buy the dog.*

c. Should in the sense of *ought* is rendered by some form of **deber,** or other word expressing obligation: *I should go because my father is sick*, **Debo ir porque está malo mi padre.**

78. Idiomatic Expressions. The Spanish word for *time* in the sense of *hour*, or *o'clock*, is **la hora.**

¿ Qué hora es ?	*What time* (lit. *what hour*) *is it ?*
Es la una.	*It is one o'clock.* (Note the omission of **hora**.)
Son las dos.	*It is two o'clock.* (Note the plural of verb and article. The verb may be omitted, but never the article.)
Son las tres y cuarto.	*It is a quarter past three.*
Son las cuatro y diez minutos.	*It is ten minutes past four.* (The word **minutos** may be omitted.)
En mi reloj son las cinco y media.	*By my watch it is half past five.*
Son las seis menos cuarto.	*It is a quarter to six* (lit. *six less a quarter*. Between half past and the hour to come, state the next hour, less, **menos**, the minutes).
¿ A qué hora ?	*When ?* (**cuándo** meaning *when* is more general, referring to any time except time of day.)
A las doce del día.	*At twelve noon.*
A las doce de la noche.	*At twelve of the night.*
A la media noche.	*At midnight.*
De la madrugada. / **De la mañana.**	*A.M.* (From midnight till dawn.) / (From dawn till noon.)
De la tarde. / **De la noche.**	*P.M.* (From noon till sunset.) / (From sunset till midnight.)
Por la mañana.	*In the forenoon.* (When the time is indefinite use **por**, otherwise **de**.)

EXERCISE 14

A. a. *Conjugate and translate the future and the conditional of* **hablar, comer, escribir, marcharse.**

b. *Translate:* 1. He will speak. 2. He would speak. 3. Shall you write? 4. Will you write? 5. Would you write? 6. When will he arrive? 7. He will arrive at five o'clock. 8. When shall you go away? 9. I shall go away at half-past seven. 10. They shall go at once (**en seguida**). 11. Will you go with our family? 12. I do not wish to go to-morrow. 13. How much will you pay? 14. I am willing to pay ten dollars.

B. 1. Año nuevo. Hoy los hombres saludan y felicitan a sus amigos escribiendo en la tarjeta de visita — Feliz año nuevo. En un año nuevo pueden suceder muchas cosas nuevas. Entre mañana y ayer está la vida. Ayer — esperaba: mañana — recordaré. Este año será tan largo como el pasado. Después veremos la fecha en la moneda. Pronto vendrá[1] la Primavera. Los valles y las laderas de los montes abrirán al público sus perfumerías. Del Sur llegarán compañías de pájaros a cantar; se tenderán alfombras de hierba en los campos: doseles de verdura cubrirán los bosques. Todo será luz, aroma y armonía.

2.

Nueva York, 2 de abril de 1912

Muy señor mío y amigo:

En contestación a su tarjeta postal de ayer, tengo el gusto de participarle[2] que el cartero entregó la tarjeta a las once y media de la mañana. Me dijo[3] éste que si Vd. echaba sus cartas en el correo más temprano, llegarían con el tren correo de la noche y serían entregadas aquí a las ocho de la mañana.

Si Vd. manda valores, debe certificar la carta. En tal caso debe Vd. escribir su nombre y dirección en el sobre. El gasto del certificado importa diez centavos además del franqueo, que se paga en sellos pegados al sobre.

Saludo a Vd. y quedo como siempre su af.^{mo}[4] amigo.

Carlos Rodríguez

C. 1. ¿A qué hora sale el tren para Sevilla? 2. ¿A qué hora principia la clase? 3. ¿Qué hora es en su reloj? 4. ¿Cuándo llegará su padre de Venezuela? 5. ¿Cuándo quiere Vd. ir a casa? 6. ¿Cómo felicitará Vd. a sus amigos el día de Año Nuevo? 7. ¿Cuándo será Año Nuevo? 8. ¿Cuándo se cubrirán los árboles de verdura? 9. ¿A qué hora llegará el correo? 10. ¿Quién traerá las cartas? 11. Explique Vd.[5] en español la palabra "correo."

[1] **vendrá**, future of **venir**, *to come.*
[2] **le** = **usted**, *you.*
[3] **dijo**, preterit of **decir**, *he told.*
[4] **af.^{mo}**, abbreviation for **afectísimo**, *sincere.*
[5] **Explique Vd.**, *explain.*

TORRE DEL ORO Y CATEDRAL CON LA GIRALDA, SEVILLA

Esta torre fué construída por los árabes como parte del alcázar o fortaleza que protegía la ciudad. Sevilla tenía grande importancia como puerto de mar en el siglo XVI cuando traían aquí el oro y la plata de América

LA TORRE DEL ORO Y LA CATEDRAL

1. ¿ En qué parte de España está Sevilla ?
2. ¿ En qué río está situada ?
3. ¿ Cuál otra ciudad de importancia está situada en el mismo río ?
4. ¿ Qué ve Vd. en el grabado que le interesa más ?
5. ¿ Qué edificio se ve al fondo del grabado ?
6. La torre junto a la catedral se llama « la Giralda » ; ¿ para qué sirve ?
7. ¿ Qué es una catedral ?
8. ¿ Qué significa la palabra « alcázar » ?
9. ¿ Cómo puede Vd. saber por este grabado que Sevilla es puerto de mar ?
10. ¿ Qué clase de productos se exportan en los toneles que están en el muelle ?

construir, *to build*
exportar, *to export*
fondo, m. *background*
grabado, m. *half-tone, picture*
muelle, m. *wharf*
producto, m. *product*
situado -a, *situated*
tonel, m. *cask*

D. 1. The concert will begin at 8.30 P.M. 2. He will write Wednesday. He said that he would write Wednesday. 3. Mr. López went away yesterday. His daughter will go away to-morrow. 4. When will the train arrive from Madrid? My brother has written that he would arrive to-day. 5. It is ten o'clock by the cathedral clock; but by my watch I have seven minutes to ten. 6. I shall post my letters at nine P.M. 7. What should you send John? I should send money. 8. My friends will arrive in the morning. I shall go to the station at a quarter past eight. 9. The mail will be here at 10.30 A.M., and will be delivered at the post-office. 10. Where shall I buy stamps for these letters? 11. We shall send the money by registered letter on Wednesday. 12. How many stamps shall I stick on the envelope?

LESSON XV

79.

¿ Tiene Vd. el libro?	*Have you the book?*
Lo tengo.	*I have it.*
¿ Tiene Vd. la pluma?	*Have you the pen?*
La tengo.	*I have it.*
¿ Tiene Carlos los libros?	*Has Charles the books?*
Los tiene.	*He has them.*
¿ Tiene él las plumas?	*Has he the pens?*
Las tiene.	*He has them.*
¿ Vió Vd. ayer a su madre?	*Did you see your mother yesterday?*
La vi.	*I saw her.*
¿ Me vió Vd. ayer?	*Did you see me yesterday?*
No le vi, señor.	*I did not see you, sir.*
¿ Qué mandó Vd. a su padre?	*What did you send to your father?*
Le mandé una carta.	*I sent him a letter.*
¿ Qué mandó Vd. a su madre?	*What did you send to your mother?*
Le mandé una carta.	*I sent her a letter.*
¿ A ella también?	*To her also?*
Sí, señor, a ella y a él.	*Yes, sir, to her and to him.*
Le hablé a usted, no a él.	*I spoke to you, not to him.*

NOTE. The arrow indicates the word to which the pronoun refers.

80. The Personal Pronouns have the following forms.

	SUBJECT	DIRECT OBJECT	INDIRECT OBJECT	PREPOSITIONAL
		SINGULAR		
1.	**yo**, *I*	**me**, *me*	**me**, (*to*) *me*	**mí**, *me*
2.	**tú**, *thou*	**te**, *thee*	**te**, (*to*) *thee*	**ti**, *thee*
3.	**él**, *he* **ella**, *she* } *it*	**le** or **lo**, *him* **la**, *her* } *it*	**le**, (*to*) *him* **le**, (*to*) *her* } (*to*) *it*	**él**, *him* **ella**, *her* } *it*
		PLURAL		
1.	**nosotros(-as)**, *we*	**nos**, *us*	**nos**, (*to*) *us*	**nosotros(-as)**, *us*
2.	**vosotros(-as)**, *you*	**os**, *you*	**os**, (*to*) *you*	**vosotros(-as)**, *you*
3.	**ellos**, *they*	**los**, *them*	**les**, (*to*) *them*	**ellos**, *them*
	ellas, *they*	**las**, *them*	**les**, (*to*) *them*	**ellas**, *them*

a. **Usted** is represented by the pronouns of the third person according to gender and number.

usted, *you*	**le**, *you* (masc.) **la**, *you* (fem.)	**le**, (*to*) *you*	**usted**, *you*
ustedes, *you*	**los**, *you* (masc.) **las**, *you* (fem.)	**les**, (*to*) *you*	**ustedes**, *you*

b. The reflexive pronoun **se** has the prepositional form **sí**: **Dios me llama a sí**, *God calls me to himself.*

81. The Objective Forms of the personal pronouns are placed before the verb, except the infinitive mood, the present participle, and the positive imperative. The pronouns follow these verb forms, and are written as one word with them. If the addition of this extra syllable causes the spoken accent to fall on any syllable farther back than the second from the end of the combination, the accented syllable must be marked by a written accent.

Me habla.	*He speaks to me.*
Hábleme Vd.	*Speak to me.*
No me hable Vd.	*Don't speak to me.*
Quiere hablarme.	*He wishes to speak to me.*
Hablándome.	*Speaking to me.*

a. The objective pronouns have no accent of their own, but are pronounced as a part of the verb to which they belong. **Me lo da,**

He gives it to me, is pronounced as if written *melodá*. **No me ha dado**: *He has not given me*, pronounced *Nomehadádo*.

b. On account of their close relation to the verb, the objective forms of the personal pronouns are also called "conjunctive."

82. The Prepositional Forms are used after prepositions: **una carta para él**, *a letter for him*. They may be stressed in pronunciation, so are used to explain or emphasize the unaccented objective forms: **Nos escribió a mí y a mi hermano** (explanatory), *He wrote to us*, (that is) *me and my brother*; **Me lo da a mí, no a ti** (emphasis), *He gives it to* ***me, not to you.***

a. The forms **mí, ti,** and **sí** are not used after **con**. Instead, note the special forms **conmigo**, *with me*; **contigo**, *with thee*; **consigo**, *with himself*.

b. Being used apart from the verb, the prepositional forms are also called "disjunctive."

83. Adverbs in Spanish are formed from adjectives by the addition of **mente** to the feminine singular: **seguramente**, *safely*. Remember that the feminine of adjectives which do not end in **o** in the masculine, with a few exceptions (see section 135), is like the masculine: hence, **cortésmente**, *politely*; **alegremente**, *joyfully*.

a. If two or more adverbs follow each other, **mente** is added only to the last: **Oí el toque clara y distintamente**, *I heard the signal clearly and distinctly*.

b. From nouns, adverbial expressions are formed by the use of prepositions: **con alegría**, *joyfully*; **sobre todo**, *especially*, *above all*; **en seguida**, *at once*, *immediately*.

c. Adjectives are sometimes used as adverbs: **Vivían dichosos**, *They lived happily*.

EXERCISE 15

A. a. *Supply the pronouns and translate:* 1. *To me* mandó mi padre una carta. *It* recibí yo ayer. 2. Voy a contestar — *him*. 3. Tengo un buen libro. ¿ *It* quiere Vd.? 4. ¿ Quién quiere mis perros? *Them* quiero yo. 5. ¿ *Us* vió su padre ayer? ¿ *You* vió él también? 6. No *me* vió. Quiere ver — *you*. 7. ¿ *Us* espera Juan?

Sí, *us* espera. 8. *Him* esperamos. *To him* escribí, no *to her*. 9. *To her* escribimos la carta. *It* recibió ella ayer. 10. ¿Tiene Vd. una carta para *me*? 11. ¿Quiere Vd. venir con *me*? Sí, quiero ir con *thee*.

b. *Translate:* 1. *Referring to a house* **(una casa)**. I saw it. He sold it. He wishes to sell it. We live in it.

2. *Referring to some books* **(libros)**. We have them. I am not reading them. Do you wish to read them? I gave two dollars for them.

3. *Referring to a horse* **(un caballo)**. We have bought it. He has sold it. They did not buy it. How much did he pay for it?

4. *Referring to some flowers* **(unas flores)**. He does not have them. I wish them. I wish to see them. How many are there of them?

5. *Referring to human beings.* I met you. I met her. What did he give you? He gave her some flowers. I shall send you my book. We met them (*masc.*). What did he give them? I saw them (*fem.*). I gave them the letter. I did not sell him the horse. He will send her a present. I wish to sell you my house.

c. *Make adverbs from these adjectives and give meanings:* **lento, fácil, claro, feliz, elegante, perfecto.**

Supply two adverbs to modify **habló,** *he spoke;* **escribe,** *he writes.*

B. 1. Hace muchos años un campesino regresó de un viaje a casa donde tenía una mujer hermosa y una pequeña niña muy bonita. A ti — dijo a su mujer — te he traído un espejo. Mírale[1] y dime[2] qué ves dentro. Le dió[3] entonces una caja de madera donde, cuando la abrió ella, encontró el espejo. Allí vió la joven esposa una cara que la miraba y le sonreía alegremente. — ¿Qué ves? preguntó el marido. — Veo a una linda moza que me mira y lleva un vestido azul exactamente como el mío. — Tonta, es tu propia cara, le contestó el marido. Encantada la mujer con el regalo pasó algunos días mirándose. Consideró el espejo como una alhaja de sobrado

[1] *look at it.* [2] *tell me.* [3] *he gave.*

precio; la guardó en su caja y la ocultó entre sus tesoros. Como no hablaba nunca del espejo, el padre lo olvidó completamente. Pasaron años y marido y mujer vivían muy dichosos. Pero llegó un día en que la madre cayó enferma y aunque la hija la cuidó con tierno afecto se fué[1] empeorando cada vez más. Cuando conoció ella que pronto debía abandonar a su marido y a su hija, se afligía por ellos, sobre todo por la niña. La llamó pues y le dijo[2]: — Querida hija mía, ya ves que estoy muy enferma y pronto voy a morir y a dejaros solos a ti y a tu padre. Prométeme que mirarás en el espejo todos los días al despertar y al acostarte. En él me verás y conocerás que estoy siempre velando por ti. Entonces le enseñó el sitio donde estaba oculto el espejo y la niña prometió con lágrimas lo que su madre le pedía, y ésta expiró a poco. En adelante la niña tomaba cada mañana y cada tarde el espejo del lugar donde estaba oculto y miraba en él por largo rato e intensamente. Allí veía la cara de su perdida madre. A ella confiaba de noche sus disgustos del día y en ella al despertar buscaba aliento y cariño.

2.

Muy señor mío, SANTIAGO DE CHILE, 14 de julio

Adjunto le devuelvo el libro que me prestó Vd. hace ocho días. El portador de la presente le entregará también algunas cartas que nos escribió a mí y a mi hermano nuestro padre. Si le interesan, puedo enviarle otras. Al mismo tiempo si Vd. me manda otros libros, le quedaría muy agradecido. Dándole gracias anticipadas, quedo de Vd.,

Su amigo y ät.to S.S.

ANDRÉS ROMERO

C. Answer with pronouns for the italicized nouns: 1. ¿Qué ha traído el señor a su *mujer*? 2. ¿Abrió ella la *caja*? 3. ¿Qué estaba en la *caja*? 4. ¿Qué vió la joven esposa en el *espejo*? 5. ¿Vió ella su propia *cara*? 6. ¿Dónde guardó la mujer el *espejo*? 7. ¿Hablaba el padre del *espejo*? 8. En la hora de su muerte, ¿qué dijo la

[1] **se . . . más,** *kept getting constantly worse.* [2] *said.*

mujer a su *hija*? 9. ¿Qué prometió la *hija* a su *madre*? 10. ¿Vió la niña en el *espejo* la *cara* de su madre?

D. 1. The young wife took the wooden box and opened it at once. 2. In it she found a mirror. 3. She used to hide it securely among her treasures. 4. She used to take it and look at herself every day. 5. As the father forgot the mirror completely, the mother did not speak to him about it. 6. The mother said: "I am going to leave you and your father alone." 7. The mother showed the little girl the place where she had hidden it. 8. She gave her the mirror and said: "In it you will see me." 9. The girl promised her that she would look at it. 10. Will you lend me a pencil? I shall send you one this afternoon. 11. Did I lend you a book yesterday? Yes, you lent me Don Quixote. 12. When will you send me the flowers? I shall send you the flowers to-morrow morning. 13. Will[1] you go to the theater with me to-night? A friend has presented me with[2] two tickets to the performance. 14. Mr. González spoke to us at once because he recognized us as[3] two young Americans. 15. We answered him politely but firmly that we could not accept his offer to[4] accompany us.

[1] See § 76, *b*. [2] Omit. [3] **por.** [4] **de.**

LESSON XVI

84. Irregular Verbs. Many common verbs are irregular in their conjugation. These are conveniently memorized by considering their forms as derived from six principal parts. See section 243.

85. Social Forms.

Para servir a Vd. } **Servidor de Vd.**	*At your service.* (When speaking of one's self or instead of answering one's own name.)
¿Tengo el gusto de hablar con Don Juan López?	*Have I the pleasure of speaking with Mr. John López?*
Servidor de Vd.	*At your service.*
¿Con quién tengo el honor de hablar?	*With whom have I the honor of speaking?*
Con Juan López, para servir a Vd.	*With John López, at your service.*

UNA CALLE CON CASAS ANTIGUAS, SEVILLA

En el medio de la calle se ve el arroyo por donde corre la lluvia y el agua sucia echada de las casas. Las ventanas del primer piso y algunas del segundo están protegidas por rejas de hierro. Detrás de la reja estará la novia del hombre que parece estar hablando. En los balcones del segundo piso se ven macetas con flores. Los arcos del tercer piso se abren de un corredor llamado mirador, en donde las señoras de otros siglos tomaban el aire. El techado es de tejas

UNA CALLE CON CASAS ANTIGUAS

1. ¿Qué hace el hombre que se ve delante de la reja de la casa?
2. ¿Para qué sirve la reja?
3. ¿Por qué están protegidas las ventanas de este modo?
4. ¿Por qué está en el tercer piso el mirador?
5. ¿Estarían contentas las señoras norteamericanas con tomar el aire así? ¿por qué no?
6. ¿Para qué sirve el farol en la esquina de la calle?
7. ¿Por qué son tan grandes las puertas de las casas?
8. ¿Qué idea le sugieren a Vd. las macetas en los balcones?
9. ¿Para qué sirven los balcones?
10. ¿Qué significa el arroyo en el medio de la calle?

antiguo -a, *old*
arco, m. *arch*
arroyo, m. *gutter*
corredor, m. *corridor*
farol, m. *street lamp*
lluvia, f. *rain*
mirador, m. *mirador, a kind of balcony*
novia, f. *sweetheart, betrothed*
reja, f. *grating*
sucio -a, *dirty*
sugerir (ie), *to suggest*
techado, m. *roof*
teja, f. *tile*

These forms may seem stilted. But as the Spanish are formal and courteous in their intercourse with strangers, the foreigner who wishes to succeed with them should cultivate their manners.

Quiero presentarle a mi amigo, el Señor Menéndez.	*I wish to introduce you to my friend, Mr. Menéndez.*
Mucho gusto en conocerle. Or **Celebro la ocasión de conocerle.**	*Pleased to meet you.*

On taking leave of anybody (**despedirse**), it is good form to call your home his by saying **Tiene Vd. su casa, calle de León, número 75.** This is equivalent also to an invitation to call.

Siento molestarle, señor.	*I am sorry to trouble you, sir.*
No hay molestia.	*No trouble.*
Me alegro de saber que su hermano de Vd. está mejor de salud.	*I am glad to learn that your brother is better in health.*

EXERCISE 16

A. a. *Learn the principal parts of* **ser, estar, tener, venir, ir, decir, hacer, querer.** See section 250.

b. *Conjugate the present indicative and the preterit indicative of the above verbs; also the imperfect indicative of* **ser** *and* **ir.**

c. 1. *Use* **ser,** to be.

I am an American. — Are you[1] a Cuban?

He is a Spaniard.

It is nine o'clock.

We / They } are not Englishmen.

Use both imperfect and preterit

I / He } was a[2] soldier.

It was ten o'clock (*impf.*).

Were you a[2] lawyer?

We / They } were merchants.

2. *Use* **estar,** to be.

I am here.

Where is he?

How are you?

I / He } was in Mexico.

How long[3] were you there?

[1] Use polite form. [2] Omit. See section 26, 1. [3] **cuánto tiempo.**

Here[1] we are.
Are they at home?

We, They } were not at home.

3. *Use* **tener,** to have.

I, We, They } have.
Does he have?
Do you[2] have?

I, We, They } did not have.
What did { he, you[2] } have?

4. *Use* **venir,** to come.

I, You, We, They } come.
He comes.
I, He, You, We, They } came.

When does he come?
I am coming.
He is coming.
We, They, You } are not coming.
Where[3] did { he, you, they } come from?
When[4] did you come?

5. *Use* **ir (a),** to go (to); **irse,** to go away.

I am going now.[5]
Where[6] is he going?
We, They, You[2] } are going home.
To-morrow I go away.
Does he go away?
When do they go off?

I, He, We, You[2], They } went to Cuba.
Where[6] did { he, you[2], they } go?

I, He } was going.
We, You[2], They } were going.
He was going away.
I went away.
They went off.

[1] *here* = **ya.**
[2] Singular and plural.
[3] *where from,* ¿ **de dónde** ?
[4] Translate in two ways.
[5] **ya.** (Put before the verb.)
[6] **adónde.**

6. *Use* **decir,** to say, to tell.

I / We / They } say.	I / We / They } said.	I was saying.
		You were saying — ?[1]
He says.		
What is he saying?	What did { he / you / they } say then?	
What do you say?		

7. *Use* **hacer,** to make, to do.

I / We / They } make.	I / We / They } made.	What was he doing?
		What were you[2] doing?
What does he do?		
What are you[2] doing?	What did { he / you[2] } do?	

8. *Use* **querer,** to wish, to desire.

I / You / They } wish to go.	I / We / They } wished to come.
What does he wish?	
What do you wish?	What did { he / you } wish?

B. Una tarde cuando ya se anochecía Flor se encontró con el doctor Guzmán a la vuelta de una esquina, y éste se detuvo a saludarla.

— ¡ Hola ! exclamó él con alegría.

— Para servir a Vd., doctor, contestó ella.

— ¿ Adónde va por estos lados ?

— Vivo muy cerca ; vengo del trabajo y voy a casa

— ¿ Y qué hace Vd. ahora ?

— Coser, coser y llevar esta vida con paciencia.

— Pero ¡ qué bien la encuentro de salud !

— Después de Dios, gracias a Vd.

— Pues lo celebro mucho. He tenido gran placer en saludarla.

[1] **¿ Decía Vd. ?** is the proper way to ask one to repeat what has not been understood. **¿ Qué ?** *what*, is vulgar. [2] Singular and plural.

— Adiós, adiós, doctor.

Y se estrecharon las manos.

Un domingo por la tarde Rosalía entró en casa de Flor. Estaba ésta en el jardín, regando las macetas. Confusa Flor salió a recibirla.

— Yo soy Rosalía de Valera: vivo en la calle de la Paz, casa número 36, y allí estoy a sus órdenes.

— Señora, muchas gracias. Tengo mucho gusto en conocerla, y en esta casa habita una servidora de usted.

— Me han dicho que usted hace muy bien toda clase de bordados.

— Sí, señora, puedo bordar lo que usted quiera.

— Pues bien, yo vengo a eso justamente. Puede usted hacerme el servicio de bordarme para dentro de dos meses cuatro fundas de almohada muy bonitas y vistosas. Las quiero así para un regalo, ¿sabe usted?

— No tengo inconveniente.

—Entonces ¿puedo contar con ellas?

—Sí, señora.

C. 1. ¿Dónde se encontró Flor con el doctor? 2. ¿Qué hizo él? 3. ¿Con qué saludo contestó ella? 4. ¿De dónde vino ella? 5. ¿Qué clase de trabajo tuvo? 6. ¿Qué hicieron al despedirse? 7. ¿Cómo se presentó a Flor la señora de Valera? 8. ¿Cómo le contestó Flor? 9. ¿Qué quiso la señora? 10. ¿Para cuándo quiere las fundas de almohada? 11. ¿Cómo las quiere? 12. ¿Qué es una almohada?

D. 1. Have I the pleasure of addressing Mr. Valera? At your service. 2. I am pleased to make your acquaintance. 3. How is your health to-day? Much better, thank you. I am glad. 4. My grandfather comes at three o'clock this afternoon. I shall meet him at three o'clock this afternoon. 5. He says that he is going to Cuba next month. I shall go with him. 6. One Tuesday morning[1] I went to his house and found him in bed very sick. 7. They said that they would go to Spain with me. 8. I wished to see him but he did not come to New York. 9. Where did he come from? He

[1] por la mañana.

came from Mexico because he wished to learn English.[1] 10. Yesterday they came at a quarter to five; and we were there to meet them. 11. What time was it when they went?[2] It was 9 P.M. when they said that they were going, but they did not go before 9.30. 12. The tailor who made me this suit said that it would be ready last week. 13. I told him that I wished it for Sunday. 14. We did not have the kind of goods which he wished. 15. They stopped on the corner of the street to greet us.

[1] Insert definite article. [2] Use **ir**.

LESSON XVII

86. The Imperative Mood expressing command has these forms:

-ar VERBS		-er VERBS		-ir VERBS	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
2. compr**a**	compr**ad**	2. vend**e**	vend**ed**	2. escrib**e**	escrib**id**

87. The Use of the imperative mood is limited to positive commands of the familiar form; that is, to children or intimate acquaintances. Formal or polite requests, and negative commands of the familiar form, are supplied from the present subjunctive. A complete scheme follows:

	FAMILIAR		POLITE	
		-ar VERBS		
SING.	**compra**	**no compres**	**compre Vd.**	**no compre Vd.**
PLUR.	**comprad**	**no compréis**	**compren Vds.**	**no compren Vds.**
	buy	*don't buy*	*buy*	*don't buy*
		-er VERBS		
SING.	**vende**	**no vendas**	**venda Vd.**	**no venda Vd.**
PLUR.	**vended**	**no vendáis**	**vendan Vds.**	**no vendan Vds.**
	sell	*don't sell*	*sell*	*don't sell*
		-ir VERBS		
SING.	**escribe**	**no escribas**	**escriba Vd.**	**no escriba Vd.**
PLUR.	**escribid**	**no escribáis**	**escriban Vds.**	**no escriban Vds.**
	write	*don't write*	*write*	*don't write*

88. The Subjunctive Mood, present tense, has the following forms:

	-ar VERBS	-er AND -ir VERBS
SING.	1. compr**e**	1. vend**a**
	2. compr**es**	2. vend**as**
	3. compr**e**	3. vend**a**
PLUR.	1. compr**emos**	1. vend**amos**
	2. compr**éis**	2. vend**áis**
	3. compr**en**	3. vend**an**

A translation of the forms is not given because it might lead to misconceptions. See section 109.

89. Radical-Changing Verbs, being accented on the radical, suffer a change of vowel in the 2d person singular of the imperative, and throughout the singular and in the 3d person plural of the present subjunctive. See sections 244–247 for models.

90. The Present Subjunctive, when not used in a clause dependent on another verb, is used independently to express (1) a command or (2) a wish.

1. English commands in the second person are given by the imperative, usually without a subject expressed; as, *Go.* English commands in the first person plural, and in the third person singular and plural, are given by a locution beginning with *let*; as, *Let us go. Let him go.* Spanish uses the subjunctive mood for all (except familiar commands, see section 87), but usually introduces the third persons by **que.** Note the forms:

To speak, **hablar**

SING. 2. *Speak*, **Hable Vd.**
3. *Let John speak*, **Que Juan hable**
Let her speak, **Que hable ella**

PLUR. 1. *Let us speak*, **Hablemos**
2. *Speak*, **Hablen Vds.**
3. *Let them speak*, **Que hablen**

To sit down, **sentarse**

SING. 2. *Sit down*, **Siéntese Vd.**
3. *Let him be seated*, **Que se siente**
Let her sit down, **Que se siente ella**

PLUR. 1. *Let us sit down*, **Sentémonos**
2. *Sit down*, **Siéntense Vds.**
3. *Let them be seated*, **Que se sienten**

a. The present subjunctive is sometimes used for the imperative, even in affirmative commands. — **Sube al momento. No recibió contestación. — Que subas.** "*Come up at once.*" *He received no reply.* "*Come up.*"

b. The present indicative appears for the subjunctive in mild commands. **Vas allá y le suplicas y le ruegas.** *Go there and beg and entreat him.*

2. A wish is expressed in English by the subjunctive or by *may* followed by an infinitive. Spanish uses the subjunctive mood.

¡ Viva el rey !	*Long live the king !*
¡ Dios le ampare !	*God protect you !*
¡ Sea Vd. feliz !	*May you be happy !*

91. Pronouns, with the imperative or the subjunctive used as imperative, follow the verb and are appended to it, unless the expression is negative or introduced by **que** or some other word, in which cases the pronoun precedes.

Hágalo Vd.	*Do it.*	**Dime ahora.**	*Tell me now.*
No lo haga.	*Don't do it.*	**No le digas.**	*Don't tell him.*
Hágalo Jorge, or **Que Jorge lo haga.**		*Let George do it.*	

92. Reflexive Verbs have the following peculiarities:

1. The second plural imperative loses **d** before **os,** except **irse:**

sentad + os = sentaos, *be seated*
But **idos,** *go away*

2. The first plural drops **s** before **nos:**

vamos + nos = vámonos, *Let's go away*
sentemos + nos = sentémonos, *Let's sit down*

93. Idiomatic Expressions. English *please*, introducing a request may be rendered by various locutions as in the following:

Tenga Vd. la bondad de cerrar la puerta.	*Please* (lit. *Have the kindness to*) *close the door.*
Hágame Vd. el favor de repetir.	*Please* (lit. *Do me the favor to*) *repeat.*
Sírvase Vd. traerme un vaso de agua.	*Please bring me a glass of water.* (**Sírvase,** from **servirse,** is less courteous than the other expressions. Use with persons under obligation to serve you; frequent in business letters.)

Pase Vd.	*Come in.*
Pase Vd. adelante.	*Go first.*
Dispense Vd.	*Excuse me.*

EXERCISE 17

A. 1. *Express in the negative, familiar form:*

Speak, **habla (hablar)**	Give, **da (dar)**
Take, **toma (tomar)**	Say, **di (decir)**
Eat, **come (comer)**	Come, **ven (venir)**
Drink, **bebe (beber)**	Go, **ve (ir)**
Go up, **sube (subir)**	Go away, **vete (irse)**
Open, **abre (abrir)**	Do, **haz (hacer)**
Close, **cierra (cerrar)**	Put, **pon (poner)**

2. *Put all the above forms in the plural.*

3. *Express the same in the polite form, singular and plural, positive and negative.*

4. *Translate:*

To get into the carriage, **Subir al coche**	*To go away*, **Irse**
Get into the carriage, sir	Go away
Let him get in	Let him go away
Let Mary get in	Let Charles go away
Let us get in	Let us go away
Get in, gentlemen	Go away (*plur.*)
Let them get in	Let them go away

B. 1. Mozo, tráigame Vd. un vaso de agua y una taza de café. Sírvase Vd. echarme esta carta al correo. Dígame Vd. el nombre de este pescado. 2. Cochero, lléveme Vd. al teatro del Príncipe y no se pare Vd. hasta llegar. Espere un momento, he olvidado mi paraguas. Aguárdeme Vd. aquí. 3. Caballero, hágame Vd. el favor de indicar el camino de la casa de correos. Vaya Vd. derecho por adelante. 4. Sírvase hablar más despacio. No comprendo bien cuando Vd. habla tan de prisa. 5. Caballero, ¿por dónde se va al Hotel de Inglaterra? Siga Vd. hasta la esquina de la tercera calle y dé vuelta a la izquierda. 6. Tenga Vd. la bondad de repetir. Soy extranjero y no comprendo si Vd. no habla despacio. 7. Cochero, vaya Vd. más de prisa. No llegaremos a tiempo. Ya estamos. Bajemos. 8. Vamos a pie al parque y sentémonos debajo de los árboles. ¿No sería mejor ir en coche o en tranvía? 9. Ya estoy cansado de andar. Subamos al tranvía y regresemos a casa. 10. Conductor, hágame el favor de parar en la esquina frente a la catedral. 11. Pase Vd., señor. Tome Vd. este asiento. No se vaya Vd. tan pronto. Quédese Vd. un ratito. 12. Que el camarero me traiga el periódico de hoy. 13. Que el camarero me llame a las siete. 14. Que el mozo suba mi baúl a mi habitación.

C. The answers to the following should contain a verb in the subjunctive mood expressing command:[1] 1. ¿Quiere el señor leche en el café? 2. ¿Daré yo la carta al cartero? 3. Caballero, hágame Vd. el favor de indicar el camino del teatro del Príncipe. 4. ¿Quiere Vd. indicarme la casa de correos? 5. ¿Por dónde se va a la calle de Alcalá? 6. ¿Cómo iremos al parque? 7. ¿Quiere el señor el periódico de hoy? 8. ¿A qué hora quiere Vd. que le llame? 9. Señor, hay un caballero a la puerta, quien quiere entrar. 10. ¿Iremos al teatro en tranvía o en coche? 11. ¿En dónde quiere Vd. su baúl? 12. ¿Me comprende Vd?

[1] The answers to *C* may be taken directly from *B* with some variations; for example, one answer to 12 might be, **No muy bien; sírvase hablar más despacio.**

D. 1. What street-car do I take to go to the park? Follow this street to the next corner and go south.[1] 2. Please give me a time-table of the trains for Chicago. Do the trains stop for meals? 3. Please tell me where is the railway station. Go straight ahead as far as the third corner and turn to the right. You will see it then. 4. Let's go to the theater. Shall we go on foot? No, let's take a carriage. 5. Driver, take me to the plaza and stop in front of the hotel. 6. Here[2] comes a car. Let's get in and go home. 7. Let us stay in the park to see the animals. Let's buy some bread to give them. 8. Let John bring me some fried eggs and a cup of coffee. 9. I cannot understand you if you speak fast. Please speak more slowly. 10. Call me at 6.30, as I wish to take the first train home. 11. Please ask the letter-carrier if he has any letters for me. 12. If Mr. González comes, let him come in at once. I wish to speak to him. 13. Please tell me if I am speaking to Mr. Genaro Chic? At your service. 14. Wait for me a moment. I am going to mail an important letter. 15. Can you show me Mr. López's house? I will show you his house, if you will accompany me as far as the next corner.

[1] Supply **al.** [2] **ya.**

LESSON XVIII

94. Two Pronouns. When two objective pronouns occur with the same verb, the indirect object pronoun stands first.

Me lo dió.	*He gave it to me.*
Dámelo.	*Give it to me.*
Si Vd. tiene mis libros, démelos.	*If you have my books, give them to me.*

a. When the direct object is a pronoun of the first or second person, it is better to express the indirect object in the prepositional form preceded by **a.**

Te presentó a mí.	*He introduced you to me.*
Preséntеme Vd. a ella.	*Introduce me to her.*

b. When two pronouns of the third person occur together, the indirect object pronouns **le** and **les** assume the form **se** (derived from Old Spanish **ge** and not the reflexive **se**). Thus:

Escribí una carta a mi padre.	*I wrote a letter to my father.*
Le escribí una carta.	*I wrote him a letter.*
La escribí a mi padre.	*I wrote it to my father.*
Se la escribí.	*I wrote it to him.*

c. The sentence **Se la escribí** may have six different meanings. To distinguish the various meanings of **le, les,** and **se,** use the prepositional forms of the pronouns: thus,

se or **le** } *to him*, **a él** / *to her*, **a ella** / *to you*, **a usted**	**se** or **les** } *to them* (m.), **a ellos** / *to them* (f.), **a ellas** / *to you* (pl.), **a ustedes**

No se las escribí a ellos.	*I did not write them to them.*
Quiero decírselo a Vd.	*I wish to tell it to you.*
A él le mandé un paquete.	*I sent him a package.*
A ellas no les habló.	*He did not speak to them.*

In sentences like these an English speaker is tempted to omit the conjunctive form. Do not omit it, because the prepositional form merely explains the other and is not a substitute or alternative.

95. With **hay** the personal pronouns usually have the meaning of *some.*

See section 253 for conjugation of the impersonal verb **hay.**

¿Dónde hay sastrerías? — Las hay en la calle de Francos.	"*Where are there some tailors' shops?*" "*There are some in Francos street.*"
¿Hay huevos frescos? — Los hay de primera clase.	"*Are there any fresh eggs?*" "*First-class ones.*"

96. Muy, *very,* is a shortened form of **mucho;** and must be replaced by **mucho** when occurring alone. The intensified form is **muchísimo** (**muy mucho** is not allowable). English *much* before past participles is **muy.** (For examples see section 210.)

97. The Possessive Adjectives given in section 37 are shortened forms, used before nouns, of the following:

mío, *my*	**nuestro,** *our*
tuyo, *thy*	**vuestro,** *your* (plur. of **tuyo**)
suyo { *his* . . . **(de él)**; *her* . . . **(de ella)**; *your* . . . **(de usted)**	**suyo** { *their* (m.) . . . **(de ellos)**; *their* (f.) . . . **(de ellas)**; *your* . . . **(de ustedes)**

a. These forms are declined to agree with the thing possessed. They stand after the noun, being regularly employed in direct address.

Queridos hermanos míos y queridas hermanas mías.	*My dear brothers and sisters.* (Used by preachers.)
Amigo mío.	*Dear Friend.* (Complimentary openings of letters.)
Muy señores nuestros.	*Dear Sirs.* (Complimentary openings of letters.)

b. When the meaning is indefinite, these forms express the English idiom *of mine*, *of his*, etc.: as, **un amigo mío,** *a friend of mine*; **ciertos libros suyos,** *certain books of his.*

c. On account of the several meanings of **su** and **suyo,** the prepositional forms of the personal pronouns may be added after the nouns modified, in which case the possessive adjective may be replaced by the definite article: **No tengo su libro de ella,** or **el libro de ella,** *I do not have her book.*

98. Possessive Pronouns are formed from the possessive adjectives by prefixing the article.

SINGULAR

1. **el mío (la mía, los míos, las mías),** *mine*
2. **el tuyo (la tuya, los tuyos, las tuyas),** *yours*, *thine*
3. **el suyo (la suya, los suyos, las suyas),** *his*, *hers*, *its*, or *yours*

PLURAL

1. **el nuestro (la nuestra, los nuestros, las nuestras),** *ours*
2. **el vuestro (la vuestra, los vuestros, las vuestras),** *yours*
3. **el suyo (la suya, los suyos, las suyas),** *theirs* or *yours*

a. The possessive pronouns agree with the thing possessed: **Su casa es más grande que la mía o la de usted,** *His house is larger than mine or yours.*

b. The article may be omitted before a possessive pronoun in the predicate: **Este libro es mío,** *This book is mine.*

c. **Los míos, los suyos,** etc., may mean *My folks, his men,* etc.

d. **Lo mío,** etc., means *what is mine*: as, **Con lo suyo y lo mío es imposible vivir,** *On his property and mine it is impossible to live.*

99. Idiomatic Expressions.

To inquire one's opinion: **¿ Qué le parece ?**

To inquire one's liking: **¿ Cómo le gusta ?** or **¿ Le gusta ?**

The subjects of the verbs are the things under discussion; the person who thinks or likes is expressed by an indirect object pronoun. The individuality of the persons may be emphasized by a pronoun in the prepositional form.

¿ Qué le parece este paño ?	*What do you think of this cloth ?*
A mí no me parece bueno.	*I don't think it is good* (lit. *It doesn't seem good to me*).
¿ Cómo le gustan a Vd. las naranjas ? ¿ dulces o agrias ?	*How do you like oranges ? sweet or sour ?*
Me gustan dulces.	*I like them sweet.*
¿ Le gustan sus poesías ?	*Do you like his poems ?*
A mí me gustan muchísimo.	*I like them very much.*

To invite one to partake: **¿ Gusta Vd. ?**

¿ Gusta Vd. comer con nosotros ?	*Will you dine with us ?*
Con mucho gusto.	*With great pleasure.*

EXERCISE 18

A. Translate:

(Use the formal singular for *you.* Remember that **pedir** and **comprar** take the indirect object of the person from whom a thing is requested or bought.)

1. *Referring to a letter* (**una carta**). Give it to me. Give it to him. I gave it to you. He delivered it to them. I have not written it to her.

2. *Referring to some books* **(libros).** I asked him for them. He asked them of you. I have read them to them. Give them to us. Did he send them to you?

3. *Referring to some apples* **(manzanas).** I did not buy them of him. Buy them of me. I wish to buy them of you. Did he sell them to him? He sold them to us.

4. *Referring to a book* **(un libro).** I read it to her yesterday. He wishes to read it to you. She sent it to me, not to you. He will not send it to her. They will not deliver it to you.

B. 1. Voy a hacer un viaje a Barcelona. ¿Conoce Vd. un buen hotel donde hay ascensor?

— Lo hay en el Hotel de Ambos Mundos. Allí encontrará Vd. buena cama, buenas comidas y servicio excelente.

— ¿Cuáles son las horas de las comidas?

— Por la mañana al levantarse, café; a las diez y media hasta las doce, almuerzo; a las siete, la comida en mesa redonda.

— ¿Cuánto pago?

— De 8 a 12 pesetas diarias según la habitación, todo incluso menos el café y las propinas. Muchos viajeros no toman nada por la mañana. ¿Va Vd. a Barcelona por mar o en ferrocarril?

— Parto para Barcelona en el tren que sale a las diez de la mañana. A mí no me gusta viajar por mar. En los camarotes falta el aire; huelen mal y siempre me mareo. Ya he tomado en el despacho de la compañía un billete de primera clase de ida y vuelta. Mi equipaje está en la estación, listo para facturar. Yo mismo debo estar allí media hora antes de la salida del tren. A mi llegada a Barcelona, alquilaré un coche para llevarme a mí y a lo mío derecho al hotel.

— En la frontera se registran los baúles y las maletas en la aduana. Por eso se para el tren casi una hora. También hay fonda si tiene Vd. apetito para comer o beber algo.

— ¿Tiene Vd. conocidos en Barcelona?

— No conozco a nadie allí. El señor Pérez es de Barcelona.

—¿Quiere Vd. presentarme a él?

—Con mucho gusto.

2. —¿Hay buenas tiendas en Barcelona?

—Las hay muy buenas donde se vende de todo. Tienen siempre buenos surtidos de distintas novedades.

—¿Son módicos los precios?

—Sí, mucho. Se venden los artículos a precio fijo y no es preciso regatear.

(*El viajero entra en una tienda*)

—¿Qué desea el señor?

—Sírvase enseñarme un traje completo para hombre.

—¿Qué le parece éste? Es del mejor paño inglés, todo lana, y de un modelo muy moderno.

—¿Cuánto vale?

—Lo vendo a treinta duros.

—A mí me parece demasiado caro. ¿No hay más barato?

—Más barato sí, pero no tan bueno. Fíjese Vd. en la calidad superior. El precio no es muy elevado y si le gusta el traje, puedo rebajar diez por ciento pagándolo al contado. No puedo dárselo por menos.

—No me gusta el color. Me parece que ese color azul tira a verde. Enséñeme Vd. algo más obscuro. Los colores claros se ensucian fácilmente.

—Pero este color es muy de moda. Vendo muchísimo. Se lo he enseñado a Vd. primero porque lo escogen tantos señores. ¿No quiere probarse el traje? Si le sienta bien, el dependiente puede llevárselo a su casa en seguida.

C. 1. ¿Tiene Vd. su llave o la mía? 2. ¿De quién es este baúl? 3. ¿Cómo le gusta a su hermano la ciudad de Barcelona? 4. ¿Le gusta a Vd. hablar en español? 5. ¿Hay cartas para mí? 6. ¿Dónde hay libros españoles? 7. ¿Qué le parece este traje? 8. ¿Qué tal encuentra Vd. el hotel? 9. ¿Quién le ha dicho que voy a España? 10. ¿Dónde compró Vd. un sombrero tan parecido al mío? 11. ¿Les

gustan a Vds. las tiendas de Valencia? 12. ¿Le gusta a Vd. regatear? 13. ¿Le gusta más comprar a precio fijo? 14. ¿Es de Juan aquella maleta? 15. Explique Vd. en español el sentido de «un conocido»; «el equipaje»; «una sala de espera»; «una fonda»; «un surtido de géneros.»

D. 1. Can you tell me where to find a good hotel? There is one in Broad Street. 2. Do you buy your clothes in London? No; I buy mine in New York. 3. I am writing a letter to my folks in Barcelona; I shall send it to them at once. 4. My trunk weighs more than his. 5. Before the departure of the train, they will search your valises and mine. 6. This trunk is mine, but that bag is yours. That one yonder is Henry's. 7. There is no elevator in that hotel. I think the other is better. 8. I do not like to climb so many stairs. 9. Will you have an apple? Many, many thanks. Nothing seems so good to me as a ripe apple. 10. The orange was mine, but he had cut it, so I gave it to him. 11. They showed a[1] desire to know the story and Luciano told it to them. 12. The postman had a letter for you. We were on the point of asking it of him, when he handed it to us. 13. Are the prices high in London? Yes, very. They seem higher to me than ours in New York. 14. Which country do you like best? I like the country most in which I am living. 15. I think that I have your valise and that you have mine. 16. If you ask him, he will gladly give them to you. 17. Sir, you have made a mistake on paying me for[1] the oranges. How is that?[2] Haven't I paid you enough for them?[3] 18. I had the pleasure of seeing[4] her and speaking[4] to her, when I went to mend the clock for her.[5] 19. I am not going to Spain alone; some friends of mine are going to take the trip with me. 20. They do not like long[6] journeys on the railroad, and so we shall stop at many places.

[1] Omit. [2] Omit *is that.* [3] Direct object, omit *for.*
[4] Use infinitive. [5] Indirect object. [6] Supply definite article.

EL PASEO DE COLÓN, BARCELONA

Al extremo del paseo alineado con palmeras se encuentra el monumento elevado a Colón. Éste señala al mar, al que debe la ciudad su importancia en el comercio. Tales paseos son los sitios donde a los españoles les gusta pasearse por la tarde. Fué en Barcelona donde los reyes Fernando e Isabel recibieron con gran pompa a Cristóbal Colón cuando regresó de su primer viaje de descubrimiento en 1493. A él le otorgaron un escudo de armas con el célebre refrán,

A Castilla y a León
Nuevo mundo dió Colón

EL PASEO DE COLÓN

1. ¿En qué provincia de España está Barcelona?
2. ¿Qué importancia tiene la ciudad?
3. ¿Fué Cristóbal Colón de Barcelona?
4. ¿Estuvo allí alguna vez? ¿Con qué motivo?
5. ¿Por qué han elevado los barceloneses esta estatua a Colón?
6. ¿De qué países fueron reyes Fernando e Isabel?
7. ¿A qué se refiere el refrán?
8. ¿Por qué no hace mención de Aragón?
9. ¿Qué le parece la idea de colocar la estatua junto al muelle?
10. ¿De qué modo ha utilizado el escultor el sitio que ocupa la estatua junto al mar?
11. El edificio que se ve a la izquierda es la aduana; ¿para qué sirve?
12. ¿Por qué hay paseos como éste en toda ciudad española?

alineado -a, *bordered*
descubrimiento, m. *discovery*
elevar, *to erect*
escudo de armas, m. *coat of arms*
escultor, m. *sculptor*
mención, f. *mention*
monumento, m. *monument*
muelle, m. *wharf*
palmera, f. *palm tree*
pasearse, *to take exercise by walking or in a vehicle*
paseo, m. *boulevard, walk, promenade*
pompa, f. *pomp*
provincia, f. *province*
refrán, m. *motto, saying*
señalar, *to point*
utilizar, *to make use of*

LESSON XIX

100. The Infinitive Mood. A verb in the infinitive mood completes the meaning of the verb, noun, or adjective on which it depends.

No puede trabajar.	*He cannot work.*
Queremos venir.	*We wish to come.*
Pienso ir.	*I intend to go.*
Es preciso hablar español.	*It is necessary to speak Spanish.*

a. Before a dependent infinitive most verbs require some preposition. The correct preposition must be learned with each verb.

See Appendix II for lists.

Aprende a nadar.	*He is learning to swim.*
Trataré de ir.	*I shall try to go.*
Me entretengo con leer.	*I amuse myself by reading.*
Consienten en venir.	*They consent to come.*

b. A few verbs, notably **seguir,** govern the present participle.

Siga Vd. leyendo.	*Continue reading.*

c. A preposition before the dependent infinitive after some verbs causes those verbs to have a different meaning.

Deber, *ought, should.*	**Dejar,** *let, allow.*
Deber de, *must* (supposition).	**Dejar de,** *stop, neglect, fail.*
No debes leer la novela.	*You ought not to read the novel.*
Debe de ser tu primo.	*It must be your cousin.*
Me dejaron salir.	*They let me go out.*
Ramón dejó de hablar.	*Ramón stopped speaking.*
No dejó de darme los buenos días.	*He did not fail to wish me good morning.*

101. Verbs denoting motion have the preposition **a** before the dependent infinitive.

Viene a verme.	*He is coming to see me.*
Voy a escribir.	*I am going to write.*
Subió a hablar con el médico.	*He went up to speak with the doctor.*

a. The English idiom after verbs of motion frequently has a coordinate verb, as *go and see.* Such expressions in Spanish require that the second verb be put in the infinitive preceded by **a.**

Fué ella a buscar un hueso.	*She went and got a bone.*
Venga Vd. a verme.	*Come and see me.*
Vaya Vd. a llamar a su padre.	*Go and call your father.*

102. An infinitive dependent on a noun or an adjective is usually connected therewith by the preposition **de.**

Tenga Vd. la bondad de decirme.	*Have the kindness to tell me.*
Tenemos la costumbre de leer los periódicos.	*We have the habit of reading the newspapers.*
Soy capaz de guardar el secreto.	*I am able to keep the secret.*

a. A few nouns and adjectives have the preposition **a** before the infinitive.

Estaba atento a mirarme.	*He was looking at me attentively.*
Condena Vd. la propensión a llorar por motivos pueriles.	*You condemn the tendency to cry for trifling reasons.*

103. Verbs denoting a sense-perception, as seeing or hearing, show a dependent infinitive with a subject which is also the object of the principal verb. The two verbs are usually not separated.

¿ Oyó Vd. sonar la campanilla ?	*Did you hear the bell ring ?*
Vi correr a las niñas.	*I saw the girls run.*

104. The dependent infinitive, with some exceptions as in section 103 (see also 106), must not have a subject different from that of the principal verb. Such expressions as *He wishes me-to-come* require the subjunctive mood (see section 109). But clauses that have the same subject as that of the principal verb are put in the infinitive.

Cree estar enfermo.	*He thinks he is sick.*
Espero llegar mañana.	*I hope I shall arrive to-morrow.*
Creí haberle encontrado.	*I thought I had found him.*

a. **Decir** should be followed only by a noun clause: **Dice que está malo,** *He says that he is sick.*

b. **Dejar,** *to allow*, **permitir,** *to permit*, and a few other verbs may take the dependent infinitive even if there is a particular subject.

Vuestra Reverencia me va a dejar coger en la huerta una poca hoja para mis gusanos de seda.	*Your Reverence is going to let me gather in the garden a few leaves for my silk-worms.*
Permitía al sol acariciar sus brazos desnudos.	*She permitted the sun to caress her bare arms.*

c. **Hacer** or **mandar** with the dependent infinitive means *to cause*, or *to have* a thing done.

Hizo (or mandó) hacer un traje.	*He ordered a suit made.*
Hace facturar el baúl.	*He has the trunk checked.*

Hence arise several idiomatic combinations:

Hacer venir al médico.	*To send for the doctor.*
Hacer pasar al señor.	*To show the gentleman in.*
Hacer saber.	*To make known.*

If the second verb has both a subject and an object, the subjunctive mood should be preferred: **Haga Vd. que Rosa lo coloque en el sillón de ruedas,** *Have Rosa put you in the wheel-chair.*

105. The infinitive is used as a verbal noun,

1. Either as subject or object of a verb.

Oír la ópera es allí lo de menos.	*To hear the opera is the least thing there.*
Era frecuente encontrarla en la calle.	*It was a frequent thing to meet her in the street.*
Recuerdo mucho trabajar.	*I remember working a great deal.*

a. In this use of the infinitive the article frequently occurs.

El cazar es buen ejercicio.	*Hunting is good exercise.*
Trabajo me cuesta el creerlo.	*To believe it is difficult* (lit. *costs me labor*).
Disimule Vd. el no haber contestado.	*Pardon my not having answered.*

2. After prepositions. (English uses only the present participle.[1])

Antes de viajar.	*Before traveling.*
Partió sin decir adiós.	*He left without saying good-by.*
Quedé en el colegio hasta cumplir los dieciocho años.	*I remained at school until I was eighteen years old.*

[1] English grammarians commonly term this a verbal noun or gerund.

106. After some prepositions the infinitive mood appears in dependent clauses with idiomatic meaning. Such clauses may have the subject different from that of the principal clause.

1. **A** introduces a conditional clause.

Hubiera prendido el fuego al convento a no ser por los bomberos que llegaron en seguida.	*The fire would have spread to the convent if it had not been for the firemen who arrived immediately.*

a. **A ver** is sometimes used imperatively, an ellipsis for **vamos a ver,** *let us see.*

Se ha obstruido la fuente de la cocina. A ver si la arreglas.	*The water-pipe in the kitchen is clogged. Let us see if you can fix it.*
Se ha desmayado, dijo el general. A ver una camilla y que retiren a este oficial.	*"He has fainted," said the general. "**Bring** a stretcher and carry away this officer."*

b. Note such idiomatic adverbial expressions as

a medio asar, *half-baked*
a medio vestir, *half-dressed*
a todo correr, *at full speed*
a más tardar, *at the latest*
a saber, *to wit, namely*
a más no poder, *with might and main*

2. **Al** precedes a time clause. (See section 62, *b*.)

El viejo, al oír estas palabras, volvió la cabeza.	*The old man, when he heard* (or *on hearing*) *these words, turned his head.*

3. **Con** introduces either

a. A clause denoting means:

Un idioma se aprende con hablar.	*A language is learned by speaking.*

(The present participle is more common in this sense, § 274.)

b. A concessive clause.

En mi pueblo, con ser una ciudad de importancia, no hay abastecimiento de agua.	*In my town, though it is a city of importance, there is no public water supply.*

4. **De** may introduce a conditional clause.

Pues, de saberlo, dimitiría su cargo de contador.	*For, if he knew it, he would resign his position as manager.*
Esto no quiere decir que el capitán fuese mal soldado; de haberlo sido, no estaría a las órdenes de su tío.	*This does not mean that the captain was a bad soldier; if he had been he would not be under the orders of his uncle.*

a. **De** sometimes connects an infinitive with the noun in an adverbial expression of time beginning with **a**, usually introduced in English by *after*.

a los pocos años de estar en Madrid,	*after being* (or *he had been*) *a few years in Madrid*
a los diez segundos de atender,	*after he had* (or *having*) *paid attention for ten seconds*

5. **Para** precedes an infinitive clause which explains the purpose of the action expressed by the principal verb.

Compramos libros para leer.	*We buy books to read.*
Come para vivir y no vivas para comer.	*Eat to live, do not live to eat.*
Aprovecho esta ocasión para agradecerle.	*I take advantage of this opportunity to thank you.*

a. After verbs of motion **a** is used instead of **para**.

Subió al campanario a contemplar el horizonte.	*He went up to the belfry to examine the horizon.*
El muchacho se paró a ver la tropa.	*The boy stopped to watch the soldiers.*

6. **Por** introduces the reason or cause for the action of the principal verb.

El buque no se ha perdido por tempestades sino por ir yo en él.	*The ship was not lost on account of storms but because I went in it.*
No pudo hacerlo por hallarse enfermo.	*He could not do it because he was sick.*
No nos ha dicho nada.—Por no alarmar a ustedes.	*"You have not told us a thing about it." "For the sake of not alarming you."*

107. Verbal idioms in which occur a dependent infinitive are —

1. **Tener que,** *must, have to.*

Tengo que despedirme.	*I must take leave* (or *say good-by*).
Tuvo que salir.	*He had to go out.*
Tendremos que ir.	*We shall have to go.*

2. **Hay que,** *must*, in a general, hence impersonal, sense.

Hay que mejorar la condición del obrero.	*It is necessary to improve the condition of the workingman.*
Había que pasar entre dos fuegos.	*It was necessary to pass between two fires.*

3. **Haber de** denotes a slight degree of obligation, sometimes is little more than a future. The imperfect has the force of the conditional.

Caruso ha de cantar esta noche.	*Caruso is to sing to-night* (or *will sing to-night*).
Anoche había de venir mi tía.	*Last night my aunt was to come.*
Imaginó que nadie había de pedirle cuentas.	*He imagined that nobody would ask him for an accounting.*

4. **Acabar de,** *have just.* The infinitive is translated as though it were the principal verb.

El vapor acaba de llegar.	*The ship has just arrived.*
Acababan de levantarse.	*They had just risen.*

5. **Volver a,** *again.* The infinitive is rendered as though it were the principal verb with the tense of **volver.**

Vuelve a gritar.	*He shouts again.*
Volveré a principiar.	*I shall begin again.*
Muchas gracias, volvió a decir la vieja.	"*Many thanks*," *the old lady said again.*
No vuelva Vd. a llorar.	*Don't cry again.*

6. **Ser de,** used impersonally, appears to give a passive meaning to the dependent infinitive.

Es de suponer.	*It is to be supposed.*
Era muy de extrañar.	*It was very surprising.*

Note the following:

¡Era de ver la gente en la calle!	*You ought to have seen the people in the street!*

108. Relative Pronoun.

el que (masculine singular), *he who* } *the one who* or *which*
la que (feminine singular), *she who* }

los que (masculine plural) } *they who* { *the ones who* or *which*
las que (feminine plural) } { *those who* or *which*

lo que (neuter singular), *that which, what*

a. As the first element of this compound is the definite article, the masculine singular **el** combines with the prepositions **de** and **a** to form **del** and **al.**

b. English *what* is **qué** only when asking a question. An indirect question, as *I know what he asks*, must be introduced by **lo que. Yo sé lo que pregunta.**

EXERCISE 19

A. Translate: 1. Before arriving. Without waiting ten minutes. After eating. The honor of speaking. The pleasure of knowing you.

2. I have just arrived. He has just spoken. They had just dined. We had just come. Who has just risen?

3. On getting up. On sitting down. When he sat down. On saying good-by. When we returned.

4. Come and visit me. Go and get it. He went and asked him. Let us go and see the machines. He went out to greet him.

5. He laughs again. They shouted again. I will come again. Let us begin again. He has begun again.

6. I must go. We must study. They have to eat. He had to pay dear. I shall have to visit him.

7. It is necessary to pay. Was it necessary to shout?

8. Mary is to come to-morrow. When am I to go? Where was he to take you? Who will sleep on the ground? What would a young man do?

B. 1. Os preguntáis la noche del 31 de diciembre — ¿Qué he hecho de los 365 días y seis horas de este año? Y es que sólo recuerda vuestra memoria mucho desnudarse y vestirse, mucho comer y volver a tener apetito, mucho dormir; haber llorado algunos días,

y haber reído más que nunca pocos días después. ¡Y lo mismo siempre! ¡Y el año pasado como el anterior! ¡Y el año que viene como el que acaba de pasar!

2. El comercio es un campo de batalla, en un bando los vendedores en otro los compradores. Sólo hay tres casos en que el comprador y el vendedor se entienden sin discusión. 1.º Cuando no cuesta nada lo que se vende. 2.º Cuando no se piensa pagar lo que se compra. 3.º Cuando es otro el que paga. Fuera de estos tres casos que no son raros, tiene que haber lucha para fijar el precio de las cosas. Cada cosa vale según la estiman el que la posee y el que la necesita.

3. Aunque son muchos los ramos en que se divide el comercio, citaremos los cinco siguientes.

Comercio por mayor, que consiste en comprar grandes partidas de mercaderías en los puntos donde se fabrican o producen, para venderlas después a los mercaderes por menor.

Comercio por menor es el que se hace comprando géneros a los comerciantes por mayor, para venderlos en tiendas a los consumidores.

Comercio de comisión, que se reduce a comprar, remitir, recibir, vender, girar, o practicar cualquiera operación mercantil por cuenta ajena. El que se ocupa en esto se llama comisionista.

Comercio de Banca: llámase así a la especulación que se hace dando giro al capital por medio de cambios, descuentos de letras, pagarés, préstamos.

Comercio de Seguros, que consiste en responder del importe de las averías, perjuicio o pérdida total de los géneros y efectos del comercio que por mar o tierra se transportan de un punto a otro. Hay compañías de seguros que aseguran contra incendio y sobre la vida de personas, obligándose a indemnizar al que sufra una pérdida.

C. 1. ¿Qué acaba Vd. de leer? 2. ¿Qué recuerda Vd. del año pasado? 3. ¿Cómo se llama el que hace el comercio de comisión?

¿de banca? 4. Explique Vd. el comercio de comisión. 5. ¿Para qué sirve un banco? 6. ¿Cómo se llaman los que venden? ¿los que compran? 7. ¿Piensa Vd. pagar lo que compra? 8. ¿Cómo se llama el que compra pero no paga al contado? 9. ¿Cómo se llama lo que uno debe? 10. ¿Por qué compra un comerciante grandes partidas de géneros? 11. ¿En qué consiste el comercio por mayor? ¿el comercio por menor? 12. ¿Con qué motivo hacemos asegurar una casa o un almacén de géneros? 13. ¿Cuál de los ramos del comercio prefiere Vd.? 14. ¿Qué tiene Vd. que estudiar para ser comerciante por mayor?

D. 1. He tried to answer him. 2. We do ill to permit it. 3. He asks permission to come in. 4. The watchman consented to open the door. 5. They wished to see me. 6. He did not let me go. 7. We called twice to wake up the boy. 8. He must be a bad man. 9. I believe I can go. 10. He regrets he must say it. 11. I am having my watch mended. 12. We had another key made. 13. I like to sleep in the morning. 14. He made the horse run. 15. He brought me a paper to sign. 16. They went out without looking at me. 17. He spoke without raising his glance from the paper. 18. He thought he heard his father's voice. 19. I have heard my father relate the story. 20. Did you see the boys run? 21. The one who has just arrived is Mr. Guzmán. 22. I know what you are going to say. 23. They came and visited me the first Sunday of each month. 24. A Frenchman came to give us French lessons. 25. Those who buy goods to use are consumers. 26. Did you hear the bells ringing? 27. On leaving school we were to occupy different places. 28. When they passed, people turned around to look at them. 29. The article in the paper insulted the Americans for favoring the insurrection. 30. He saw her again on the same street. 31. To speak a foreign language is more difficult than to understand it. 32. Before traveling in a foreign country one should learn its language. 33. More than once I have wished to come and pay you a visit. 34. They propose not to let me study. 35. While she lived, I never neglected to visit her. 36. After being a few

months in Havana the poor boy fell sick with[1] a fever. 37. The teacher punished the boy for not knowing his lesson. 38. It is necessary to be there at ten o'clock in the morning. 39. Several other persons lived there, because it was a boarding-house. 40. To give advice is dangerous.

[1] de.

LESSON XX

109. The Subjunctive Mood is used in certain kinds of dependent clauses.

1. Just as a direct command is expressed in Spanish by the subjunctive mood, so is also an indirect command depending on an expression which implies a wish or command.

Escriba Vd. a su padre.	*Write to your father.*
Quiero que Vd. escriba a su padre.	*I wish you to write to your father.*
Que el camarero me traiga el café.	*Let the waiter bring me the coffee.*
Diga Vd. al camarero que me traiga el café.	*Tell the waiter to bring me the coffee.*

a. The English expression in these cases is usually an infinitive with a subject expressed. Such a construction must not be used in Spanish unless the subject of the infinitive is the same as that of the principal verb.

Quiero ir.	*I wish to go.*
Quiero que Vd. vaya.	*I wish you to go.*

b. Sometimes English has a present participle in the dependent clause. **Prohibo que tú fumes,** *I forbid your smoking.*

c. Some common verbs that require the subjunctive in dependent clauses for the above reason are

querer, *to wish*
desear, *to desire*
decir, *to tell*
escribir, *to write*
} (when these words express a command)

mandar, *to order*
permitir, *to permit*

suplicar
rogar
pedir
} *to request, beg*

2. Verbs expressing emotions and mental states require the subjunctive in the dependent clause.

Sentimos que esté malo su hermano.	*We are sorry that your brother is sick.*
Espero que el médico llegue a tiempo.	*I hope the doctor will arrive in time.*
Temo que no lo reciba.	*I am afraid he will not receive it.*

a. Some common verbs of this kind are

esperar, *to hope*	**sentir,** *to regret, feel sorry*
temer, *to fear*	**alegrarse de,** *to be glad*
tener miedo de, *to be afraid of*	**dudar,** *to doubt*

3. Whenever the verb in a dependent clause denotes indefinite future time, it requires the subjunctive mood. Such dependent clauses are introduced by conjunctions, as

antes (de) que, *before*	**aunque,** *although*	**hasta que,** *until*
cuando, *when*	**en cuanto,** *as soon as*	**mientras,** *while*

Esperará hasta que yo venga.	*He will wait till I come.*
Mientras seas joven, trabaja.	*While you are young, work.*

a. It should be observed that when the time is definite after these conjunctions, the indicative is employed.

Mientras era joven, trabajaba yo mucho.	*While I was young, I used to work hard.*

4. Whenever a dependent clause denotes the purpose, the result, or the condition of an action, the verb is put in the subjunctive. Common conjunctions which introduce such clauses are

para que (**a que** after verbs of motion), *in order that.*
sin que, *without.*
de modo que (often simply **que**), *so that.*
con tal que, *provided that.*

Envío a Carlos a España para que aprenda bien el idioma español.	*I am sending Charles to Spain in order that he may learn the Spanish language well.*
Deseo hablar con usted sin que se entere nadie.	*I desire to speak with you without anybody's being informed of it.*
Hoy saldrás de la cárcel, con tal que el arriero confirme tu declaración.	*You will leave the jail to-day, provided the mule-driver corroborates your declaration.*

EXERCISE 20

A. Use the present subjunctive of the verb indicated in the following:

1. **Quiero que Vd.** / I wish you to { come. / go. / call me.

2. **¿Qué quiere Vd. que yo** / What do you wish me to { write? / do? / say? / buy?

3. **Dígale Vd. que** / Tell him to { bring a glass. / send the bill. / come in.

4. **Sentimos que Vd.** / We are sorry that you { are sick. / are going. / do not know.

5. **Compro este libro para que Juan** / I am buying this book in order that John { may read it. / may study Spanish.

6. **Le veré** / I shall see him { when he arrives. / as soon as he comes. / before he leaves. / while he is here.

B. 1. Quiero que aun me oigas un instante. 2. Le escribiré que venga mañana. 3. Mi padre quiere que yo me quede en casa. 4. Diga Vd. al gitano que se vaya. 5. Me alegro de que Vd. me lo haya dicho. 6. Sienten que estemos malos. 7. Cuando el rey de Inglaterra vaya a Cannes, se detendrá en París para visitar al presidente de la república. 8. Nos dice que esperemos una hora. 9. El horno está muy mal; quiero que vengan albañiles para componerlo. 10. ¿Quiere Vd. que le diga una cosa? 11. Tu hermano me ha encargado que diga a tu madre que le suban una taza de café. 12. Dejémosle que repose. 13. Carlos necesitará acostarse, en cuanto llegue. 14. ¿Quién tocará el piano para que bailen?

15. Yo le suplico a Vd. que pague diez pesos a cuenta. 16. Ven a buscarme cuando sean las diez. 17. Aceptaré el trato con tal que no sea preciso vender mi alma. 18. Le ruego se sirva Vd. enviarme otro libro. 19. Le aconsejo a Vd. que estudie el español. 20. Prohibo que Vds. salgan antes de las cuatro. 21. Le digo a Vd. esto para que sepa la verdad. 22. La cena va a estar en seguida; para que esperes menos voy yo misma a poner la mesa.

C. (*The answers to these questions should contain a verb in the subjunctive mood.*) 1. ¿Qué quiere su hermano de Vd.? 2. ¿Qué manda Vd.? 3. ¿De qué se alegra Vd.? 4. ¿Qué ha dicho el capitán al camarero? 5. ¿Qué suplica el señor? 6. ¿Hasta cuándo van a quedar sus padres en Cuba? 7. ¿Por qué compra Vd. esos libros? 8. ¿Cuánto tiempo aguardará su hermano? 9. ¿De qué tienen Vds. miedo? 10. ¿Qué prohiben?

D. 1. He wishes to write the letters himself: he does not wish me to write them. 2. Tell the boy to come up stairs. 3. We will go when you wish. 4. I am glad that[1] he is going to Mexico. 5. He has asked me to write you. 6. We hope you will receive them in good condition. 7. Let Don Luis go away. 8. I do not wish my things to resemble yours. 9. I am sorry I shall be absent, and I am sorry that you will not be there either. 10. We wish you to tell your friends to come. 11. They are sorry that you have no money. 12. When do you want me to return these books? 13. Where does the gentleman wish me to take him? 14. I am afraid that[1] the train will leave without us. 15. Wait here till I return. 16. I wish to speak to them as soon as they arrive. 17. Write them to pay something on account. 18. Tell him to take off his hat. 19. I am glad that[1] you have called me. 20. I beg you to be brief. 21. I shall not permit you to be absent so long.[2] 22. We fear he will tell it to her. 23. Have the kindness to inform us as soon as you know. 24. I hope this will not prevent your seeing me.

[1] Use **de** before **que**. See section 231, *a*. [2] **tanto tiempo.**

LESSON XXI

110. The Imperfect Subjunctive has two sets of endings. The stem may be found from the third person singular of the preterit indicative: **compró,** stem **compr-; vendió,** stem **vend-; tuvo,** stem **tuv-.**

FIRST FORM

-ar VERBS	-er AND -ir VERBS
SING. 1. compr**ase**	SING. 1. vend**iese**
2. compr**ases**	2. vend**ieses**
3. compr**ase**	3. vend**iese**
PLUR. 1. compr**ásemos**	PLUR. 1. vend**iésemos**
2. compr**aseis**	2. vend**ieseis**
3. compr**asen**	3. vend**iesen**

SECOND FORM

-ar VERBS	-er AND -ir VERBS
SING. 1. compr**ara**	SING. 1. vend**iera**
2. compr**aras**	2. vend**ieras**
3. compr**ara**	3. vend**iera**
PLUR. 1. compr**áramos**	PLUR. 1. vend**iéramos**
2. compr**arais**	2. vend**ierais**
3. compr**aran**	3. vend**ieran**

111. Sequence of Tenses. Whenever a dependent clause occurs after a principal verb in a past tense the dependent verb must be put in the imperfect subjunctive. The present perfect and the conditional may, however, if the meaning allows it, be followed by a present tense. The following table gives the usual sequence:

MAIN CLAUSE	DEPENDENT CLAUSE
Present Indicative	Present Subjunctive
Future Indicative	Present Subjunctive
Conditional	Present Subjunctive
Perfect Indicative	Present Subjunctive
Imperfect Indicative	Imperfect Subjunctive
Preterit Indicative	Imperfect Subjunctive

Mando que Juan lo haga.	*I order John to do it.*
Mandaré que Juan lo haga.	*I shall order John to do it.*
Mandaría que Juan lo haga, pero no sabe hacerlo.	*I should order John to do it, but he does not know how.*
Mandaría que Juan lo hiciera si fuera posible.	*I should order John to do it if it were possible.*
He mandado que Juan lo haga mañana.	*I have ordered John to do it tomorrow.*
He mandado que Juan lo hiciese (or **hiciera**) **ayer.**	*I ordered John to do it yesterday.*
Mandaba que Juan lo hiciese (or **hiciera**).	*I was ordering John to do it.*
Mandé que Juan lo hiciese (or **hiciera**).	*I ordered John to do it.*

112. Conditional Clauses, contrary to fact, have the verb in the imperfect subjunctive; the conditional is used in the conclusion.

Si tuviese (or **tuviera**) **papel, escribiría la carta.**	*If I had paper, I should write the letter.*
Si fuera (or **fuese**) **yo en su lugar, no iría.**	*If I were in his place I should not go.*
Amaría mucho a su hijo si le tuviese.	*He would love his son very much if he had one.*

a. The imperfect subjunctive of the **-ra** form is frequently used instead of the conditional, but usually implies something unattainable or unreal.

De no obligarlo la necesidad, se hubiera ido sin comprar.	*If he had not been compelled by necessity, he would have gone away without buying.*
Diera yo por callarlo los días que me quedan de vida.	*To avoid speaking of it I would give the days that are left to me to live.*
Hubiera querido ser un salvaje.	*He would have liked to be a savage.*

b. **Quisiera** used independently means *would like* with present signification.

Quisiera una habitación amueblada.	*I should like a furnished room.*
Quisiera que me preste Vd. un peso.	*I wish you would lend me a dollar.*

c. Ordinary conditions after **si** have the present or imperfect indicative. **Si** followed by the conditional has the meaning of *whether.*

Le pregunté si partiría mañana.	*I asked him whether he would leave to-morrow.*

d. The imperfect subjunctive contrary to fact often appears in clauses introduced by **como si, cual si, lo mismo que si,** etc.

Me acuerdo como si fuese ayer.	*I remember as if it were yesterday.*
El cielo se incendió con un relámpago más vivo, cual si la chispa eléctrica hubiese estallado encima de nuestras cabezas.	*The sky was lighted by a brighter flash, as if the electric spark had burst over our heads.*
Lo mismo que si fuésemos amigos de toda la vida.	*Just as if we had been life-long friends.*

EXERCISE 21

A. In the following sentences change the verb of the principal clause to the imperfect or preterit tense, and the verb of the dependent clause to the imperfect subjunctive: 1. Quiere Juan que yo le dé un peso, *John wishes me to give him a dollar.* 2. Siento que Vd. esté malo, *I am sorry you are ill.* 3. Le escribo para que sepa las noticias, *I am writing him so that he may know the news.* 4. Suplico que se sirva Vd. enviar una máquina de escribir, *I beg you please to send a typewriter.* 5. Nos dicen que mandemos muchos periódicos, *They tell us to send a lot of newspapers.* 6. Tengo miedo de que no llegue él a tiempo, *I am afraid he will not arrive on time.*

B. 1. Le rogué que estuviese dispuesto a las cinco. 2. Su tía regaló a Juanito algunos dulces, diciéndole que los llevase a casa para comérselos en varias veces. 3. Le escribí que no vendiese la casa antes de que yo la viera. 4. Hablaba a gritos como si estuviera siempre en ferrocarril. 5. Se alejaron sin que yo pudiese oír más. 6. Grité para que me oyeran. 7. El padre escribió a su hija, pidiéndola que viniera en seguida. 8. La cantante esperaba a que se callara el público para continuar ella. 9. No creí que viniera Vd. tan pronto. 10. Una noche salieron del lugar sin que persona los

viese. 11. Si tuviera el dinero, compraría la casa. 12. Consulté con ella mi deseo de que me ayudase a encontrar colocación. 13. Su padre hubiera dado su vida por él. 14. Me dijo que tendría dinero cuando cobrase la herencia. 15. ¡Cuántas personas te envidiarían la fortuna si la supieran! 16. Le mandó que le aguardase tres días, y que si al cabo de ellos no hubiese vuelto, tuviese por cierto que Dios había sido servido de que en aquella peligrosa aventura se acabase su vida. 17. Un lugareño fué un día a casa de su vecino a rogarle que le prestase su asno. El vecino, quien no estaba dispuesto a prestárselo, contestó que sentía mucho que éste no se lo hubiera pedido antes, pues lo había prestado a otro. Mientras se estaba excusando de este modo, el asno comenzó a rebuznar. — ¡Oye! dijo el aldeano. Ése es el asno que Vd. afirma haber prestado. Hay que confesar que Vd. es muy servicial. — Me extraña mucho, repuso el vecino, que Vd. crea más a mi asno que a mí.

C. 1. ¿Con qué motivo fué un lugareño a casa de su vecino? 2. ¿Qué rogó el lugareño a su vecino? 3. ¿Quería el vecino prestarle la bestia? 4. ¿Cómo respondió? 5. ¿Qué sentía el vecino? 6. ¿Cómo desmintió el asno a su dueño? 7. ¿Qué dijo entonces el que quería el asno? 8. ¿Por qué se extrañaba el vecino? 9. ¿Cree Vd. que sea posible tal historia? 10. ¿Qué haría Vd. en semejante caso?

D. 1. My father wished me to stay at home. 2. He told the waiter to bring up the coffee. 3. He advised me to study bookkeeping. 4. The ladies permitted the gentleman to accompany them. 5. If I were alone, it would not matter. 6. I wrote you last month without as yet[1] having received an[2] answer. 7. We were glad that you came. 8. They used to go away before I arrived, and did not come back till I had returned to school. 9. Don Gumersindo was very kind and obliging provided that it did not cost him a cent. 10. She set the table herself in order that Charles might eat at once.

[1] **hasta ahora.** [2] omit.

11. He spoke to me politely, asking me to sit down. 12. He acted as if he understood. 13. The countess sent me a message that I should go and see her. 14. My brother said that as soon as he had money he would send me some.[1]

[1] lo.

LESSON XXII

113. Letter-Writing.

1. The date, **la fecha.**

Nueva York, 10 de abril de 1911
Madrid, 15 de junio de 1912

dated, **fechada**

the 10th inst., **el 10 del** { **actual** / **corriente (corr.te)** }

the 12th ult., **el 12 del p. p.do (próximo pasado)**

the 5th of next month, **el 5** { **del p.o v.o (próximo venidero)** / **del que viene** / **del que entra** }

2. The address, **la dirección.**

Al
Sr. D.[1] Guillermo Prieto,
Princesa, 77,
Madrid

[1] **Sr. D.** stands for **Señor Don.** The title **señor** is used with a man's family name **(apellido)**; **don** with his baptismal name. **Señor** is sometimes omitted, **Don Arturo González**; but if the Christian name is omitted, **señor** alone should be used, **Señor González.** The feminine forms are **señora (Sra.), señorita (Srta.), doña (D.ª).** A married lady retains her maiden name but adds her husband's surname. If **Señorita Teresa Sánchez** marries **Don Arturo González,** she becomes **Señora Teresa Sánchez de González.** Children may retain their mother's family name if they desire by adding it to their father's; as, **Felipe González y Sánchez.** The **y** may be omitted; as **Manuel García Rodríguez.** Widows insert **viuda. Señora Lucía Robledo, vda. de Fernández.** It is sometimes puzzling for a foreigner to know a Spaniard's family name, as it often happens that he may have two baptismal names and omit the maternal surname. Thus, in **José Toribio Medina,** the *apellido* is **Medina.**

to address, dirigir
from M. González, envío de M. González
care of, en casa de
registered, certificado
P.O. box 32, apartado núm. 32
the envelope, el sobre
general delivery, en lista
printed matter, impresos
please forward, a reexpedir

3. Complimentary opening.

Dear Friend { Querido amigo: [1] / Muy señor mío y amigo:
My esteemed friend, Estimado amigo mío:
Dear Doctor, Estimado doctor:

To ladies,

Dear Madam { Muy estimada señora: / Muy distinguida señorita: / Señora:

For business letters,

Dear Sir { Muy señor mío: / Muy señor nuestro: (from a firm)
Gentlemen, Muy señores míos (or nuestros):

To express respect to superiors,

Sir, Muy señor mío y de toda mi consideración:

4. Complimentary close.

1. *Hoping to hear from you*, En espera de sus gratas noticias,
2. *Awaiting your early reply*, Esperando su pronta contestación,
3. *With nothing else to-day*, Sin más por hoy,
   I remain / *I am* } *Yours very truly* — quedo / soy } de Vd. at.to y S.S.[2]

More formal,

4. Saludo a Vd. cordialmente y quedo como siempre suyo af.mo [3] y at.to amigo.
5. Tengo el honor de ofrecerle mis respetos y quedo su más at.to y S.S.Q.B.S.M.[4]

NOTE. Abbreviations are frequently used in Spanish. A period should be placed after the abbreviation; if part is written above the line, the period is written after the letters that remain in the line; as, af.mo.

[1] Note that Spanish uses the colon after the salutation.
[2] at.to y S.S. = atento y seguro servidor. [3] af.mo = afectísimo.
[4] Q.B.S.M. = que besa sus manos. (To a lady) Q.B.S.P. = que besa sus pies.

5. Opening phrases.

1. *I have the pleasure*
2. *We have the honor* } *of informing you that*
3. *I take the liberty*
4. *The purpose of this letter is*
5. *I regret* (*I am sorry*) } *to inform you that*

1. **Tengo el gusto de**
2. **Tenemos el honor de** } **participarle**
3. **Me permito** } **avisarle** } **que**
4. **Sirve la presente para** } **manifestarle**
5. **Siento**

6. Acknowledging receipt.

1. *In answer to*
2. *Answering*
3. *To acknowledge the receipt of*
4. *We have before us* } *your letter* } *of the*
5. *I have just received* } *your favor*
6. *I hasten to reply to*
7. *I received*

1. **En contestación a**
2. **Contestando a**
3. **Acusar recibo de**
4. **Tenemos a la vista** } **su** { **carta** / **grata** / **atenta (at.ta)** / **estimada** / **apreciable (ap.ble)** } **del**
5. **Acabo de recibir**
6. **Me apresuro a contestar a**
7. **Recibí**

7. To request.

1. *Please* (*be kind enough to*) (or *kindly*)
2. *I shall be pleased if you*
3. *We shall be obliged if you*
4. *We beg you to*

1. **Sírvase Vd.** (with infinitive of dependent verb)
2. **Estimaré que Vd.** (with subjunctive of dependent verb)
3. **Agradeceremos que Vd.** (with subjunctive of dependent verb)
4. **Le rogamos** / **Le suplicamos** / **Le pedimos** } **que Vd.** (with subjunctive of dependent verb)

EXERCISE 22

A. 1.

Nueva York, 7 de julio de 1911

Sr. D. Victoriano Suárez,
Preciados, 48, Madrid.

Muy señor mío:

Me satisface acusar a Vd. recibo del catálogo, que se sirvió enviarme. Le agradezco esta atención y le pido me envíe las obras anunciadas en él y que menciono al pie de la presente, en pago de las cuales adjunto Pesetas 55 en giro sobre el Banco Hispano-Americano, que importan, incluso gastos de la remesa. Doy a Vd. gracias por este servicio y me ofrezco su atento servidor q.b.s.m.

Arturo Acosta Gálvez

Madrid, 24 de julio de 1911

Sr. D. Arturo Acosta Gálvez,
Nueva York.

Muy señor mío:

Tengo el gusto de acusar a usted recibo de su estimada del 14 del c.te de la cual separé un cheque a mi orden, por valor de Pesetas 55^{00}, que le abono en cuenta. En cumplimiento de su atento pedido le remito por correo de hoy los efectos que van detallados al final, por los cuales cargo a usted en cuenta la suma de Pesetas 56^{05}, que importan.

De usted, como siempre, atento servidor,

Victoriano Suárez

Ejemplares	FACTURA	Precios			
3	Rubén Darío = Obras escogidas	3	50	10	50
1	González Blanco = Hista de la Novela	12		12	00
	al frente			22	50

Ejemplares		Precios			
	del frente			22	50
1	San Martín = Sepan cuantos	3		3	00
1	V. de Guevara = El Diablo Cojuelo	12		12	00
1	Clarín = La Regenta 2 tomos	3	50	7	00
1	Picón = Dulce y Sabrosa	4		4	00
1	Almanaque	1	50	1	50
	Franqueo			6	05
	Total	Ptas.		56	05

3.

Hotel Peninsular,
Sevilla, 14 de agosto de 1910

Sr. D. Roberto Samper,
Calle Arenal, 45, Madrid.

Muy señor mío y amigo:

Se van a vender en almoneda los muebles y efectos del difunto D. Martín de Timoneda el día 3 del p.° v.°. Como yo sé que poseía una biblioteca compuesta de muy buenas obras y de las mejores ediciones, quisiera adquirir la mayor parte de ella y aún toda si fuera posible. Desgraciadamente no puedo concurrir a la venta por tener mala una pierna, que no me deja dar un paso, y por esta causa me tomo la libertad de suplicarle me sustituya en esta operación confiado en su amistad. Vd. conoce este género y ningún otro podría serme tan útil. Conque, tómese Vd. la molestia de pasar por allá, y compre todo lo que se venda a un precio cómodo. Le remito dos mil duros para este objeto, suplicándole al mismo tiempo disimule la franqueza de su af.^{mo} y at.^{to} S. S.

Enrique Reyes

P.D. Por la primera edición del Quijote puede Vd. pujar hasta quinientos duros.

B. Translate into Spanish:

1. My dear friend,

I intend to go to Havana on the steamer which leaves New York on the 11th inst. As I have never been in that city I do not know where to find the hotels. Can you recommend a good hotel or boarding-house at a moderate price? When you reply, please tell me how to reach the house.

Thanking you for this favor I am, as ever,

Your friend,

WILLIAM BROWN

2. Dear Sir:

I have before me your letter of the 29th ult., and hasten to reply. The proprietor of the house where I am living has a vacant room which he will reserve for you. I shall be on the wharf as soon as I learn the arrival of the steamer. Wait for me. I shall have great pleasure in accompanying you to your house.

As ever, yours,

VICTOR GARCÍA

3. BOSTON, MASS., September 12, 1912

MESSRS. B. MURO & Co.,
Florida, 34, Buenos Aires.

Gentlemen:

We take the liberty of calling your attention to a catalogue of our goods which we are sending under separate cover[1] by this same mail. We believe that these articles are suitable for your market. The prices are moderate and the terms of payment very liberal, six months from the date of shipment. We allow three per cent discount for payment by draft remitted by return steamer. Our factory has instructions to pack in special boxes all merchandise intended for South American trade in order that it may arrive

[1] Under separate cover = **bajo pliego.**

in perfect condition. If you will favor us with a trial order we are confident that you will be satisfied with the quality of the goods and will desire further[1] shipments.

Awaiting your early reply, we are

Yours very truly,

HENRY WHITE & SONS

C. Letter outlines. 1. Write the answer of Mr. Roberto Samper to the letter *A*, 3.

2. Write to the Hotel de Roma, Sevilla, Spain, asking to have a room reserved for yourself and party. Explain when you expect to arrive and the number of persons. Request that mail be kept for your arrival.

3. Send a request for a catalogue of the books published by G. Prieto and Co. of Madrid. Inquire how they wish sent the payment for any works which you may order.

4. Write an invitation to some friends of yours to spend a week with you in the country. Give an outline of what you intend to do for amusement.

[1] nuevos.

PART II

SYSTEMATIC ACCIDENCE AND SYNTAX

CHAPTER I

ORDER OF WORDS

114. Sentences. While the arrangement of words is much freer in Spanish, and the meaning is not so dependent on a fixed order as in English, there are a few notions which the learner should keep in mind. The Spanish sentence aims at a certain balance by putting the longer members of the sentence or clause last. Considering the clause as composed of three members, subject, verb, and complements, the longest of the three may be placed at the end.

Juan vende muchos periódicos.	*John sells many newspapers.*
El pequeño Juan vende muchos periódicos, or **Vende el pequeño Juan muchos periódicos.**	*Little John sells many newspapers.*
Vende muchos periódicos el chico de la gorra roja.	*The boy with the red cap sells many newspapers.*

a. In questions, the object, unless materially longer than the subject, precedes.

¿Vende muchos periódicos el pequeño Juan?	*Does little John sell many newspapers?*

115. Inversion of Verb occurs,

1. Regularly in questions: **¿Qué vende Juan?** *What does John sell?*

2. Frequently for the sake of emphasis:

¡Ha caído una palma!	*A palm tree has fallen!* (said in the stress of excitement at the fact occurring during a storm.)

3. Generally in relative clauses:

Vino la mujer a quien habían despertado las voces.	*The woman whom the cries had awakened came.*
El cura entonó la Salve, que repitió la tripulación.	*The priest intoned the "Salve," which the crew repeated.*

116. A Predicate Adjective is best placed immediately after the verb.

¿Es interesante el libro?	*Is the book interesting?*
¿Aquí es bueno el chocolate?	*Is the chocolate good here?*

117. Adverbs, especially those of place and time, may be put for emphasis at the beginning of the sentence.

Aquí se habla español.	*Spanish is spoken here.*
Bien sé yo.	*I know very well.*
Mañana viene mi padre.	*My father comes to-morrow.*

a. But the usual place for adverbs is immediately after the verb.

Estudio siempre mi lección.	*I always study my lesson.*
Despierte Vd. con cuidado a Rosa.	*Wake Rosa carefully.*

118. The Adverb *no* always precedes the verb, but may be separated from it by a pronoun used as an object.

Yo no lo conozco.	*I do not know him.*

a. Used with adverbs or elliptical expressions, **no** follows the other words.

¡Hoy no!	*Not to-day.*
¡Todavía no!	*Not yet.*
¡Eso no!	*Not that.*

119. A Subject Pronoun may be placed after the verb, but precedes other words.

Soy yo.	*It is I.*
No quiere ella la manzana.	*She does not want the apple.*

MAR CANTÁBRICO
OCÉANO ATLÁNTICO
MAR MEDITERRÁNEO
FRANCIA
ESPAÑA
MADRID
PORTUGAL
MARRUECOS
ÁFRICA
MAR
C.Ortegal
El Ferrol
La Coruña
Santiago
C.Finisterre
Pontevedra
Vigo
Vianna
Braga
Porto
Aveiro
Coimbra
Leiria
Santarem
LISBOA
C.Espichel
Evora
Beja
Huelva
C.S.Vicente
Faro
Villaviciosa
Cijón
Oviedo
Lugo
Siero
Santander
San Sebastián
Bilbao
Bayona
Tolosa
Mompeller
Nimes
Marsella
Golfo del León
Tarbes
Pamplona
Vitoria
Perpiñán
Andorra
Port-Bou
C.Creux
Gerona
Sabadell
Barcelona
Tarragona
Reus
Lérida
Huesca
Burgos
Logroño
Valladolid
Soria
Zaragoza
Tortosa
Guadalajara
Teruel
Palencia
León
Orense
Zamora
Salamanca
Guarda
Braganza
Avila
Segovia
Toledo
Cuenca
Ciudad Real
Albacete
Alcira
Valencia
Castellón de la Plana
Alcoy
Orihuela
Alicante
Murcia
Lorca
La Unión
C.de Palos
Cartagena
Almería
C.de Gata
Málaga
Gibraltar (In.)
Ceuta (E.)
Tánger
Melilla (E.)
Orán
Argel
Cádiz
C.Trafalgar
Estrecho de Gibraltar
Jerez de la Frontera
Sevilla
Córdoba
Jaén
Granada
Ecija
Badajoz
Portalegre
Castello Branco
Valdepeñas
Linares
Badajoz
Caceres
Toledo
Aranjuez
Escorial
Navacerrada
Somosierra
Guadarrama
Duero
Tajo
Ebro
Guadiana
Guadalquivir
Segura
Sierra Morena
Sierra Nevada
Montes Universales
Cantábrico
Pirineos
Islas Baleares
Menorca
Mallorca
Palma
I.Cabrera
I.Ibiza
I.Formentera
C.de la Nao
Provincias Vascongadas
Navarra
Aragón
Cataluña
Castilla la Vieja
Castilla la Nueva
Extremadura
Andalucía
Murcia
Galicia
Asturias
Montes
Leon
Vascongadas
ESCALA DE KILÓMETROS
0 100 200 300
ESCALA DE MILLAS INGLESAS
0 100 200

120. Compound Forms of Verbs should not be separated into their component parts by the intrusion of other words.

¿Ha visto Vd.?	*Have you seen?*
He dicho siempre.	*I have always said.*

a. Likewise an infinitive closely depending on another verb is commonly not separated from the former except by pronouns.

Vi correr al muchacho.	*I saw the boy run.*
¿Oye Vd. sonar la campanilla?	*Do you hear the bell ringing?*
Lo admiré al verlo patinar.	*I admired him on seeing him skate.*

121. Participles and Infinitives having subjects are usually placed before their subjects, contrary to English usage.

Estando la señora en el jardín, le hablé.	*The lady being in the garden, I spoke to her.*
Conseguida la dispensa eclesiástica, se fijó la boda para las ocho de la mañana.	*The dispensation of the church (having been) obtained, the wedding was set for eight in the morning.*
Al cumplir la Princesa los quince años era la admiración de la corte.	*When the Princess was fifteen years old, she was the wonder of the court.*

122. The Preposition *a*, used to indicate the direct object, makes possible a very free arrangement of words; see section 134.

A Clara la llamó a sí Doña Blanca.	*Doña Blanca called Clara to her.*
Poco después visitaron a la enferma los dos médicos mejores de la ciudad.	*Shortly afterward the two best doctors in the town visited the sick woman.*

EXERCISE 23

1. Has this boy relatives? 2. His wife and his daughter were walking ahead. 3. Spring begins to-morrow. 4. Is winter cold in this country? 5. Is the show to-day? 6. They had not walked two hundred paces when there reached their ears a great noise of water. 7. The Hollanders have not forgotten the history of their war with

Spain. 8. When the lady said this,[1] she turned away. 9. Five dollars are lacking. 10. These are the men whom my father did not know. 11. He was sitting in the shadow which the old tree made on the ground. 12. I have often seen them. 13. Traveling by night, his garments torn, his feet scratched, he finally reached home. 14. I lived on the salary which an insurance company paid me. 15. His work finished, he left the office immediately. 16. He saw his father coming. 17. Not now, my son. 18. A month had passed since that day.

[1] Translate in three ways: 1, **al** with infinitive; 2, the present participle; 3, the past participle.

CHAPTER II

ARTICLES

123. The Definite Article has the following forms:

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Sing.	**el**	**la (el)**	**lo**
Plur.	**los**	**las**	wanting

a. The feminine form **el** is derived from the old feminine **ela** It is used only before nouns beginning with an accented *a* sound, excepting names of letters:

el ave, *the bird*
el hacha, *the ax*
el agua fría, *the cold water*
el Asia, *Asia*

Compare

la alta casa, *the high house*
la América, *America*
la a, *the a*
la hacienda, *the estate*

b. The masculine singular **el** (or feminine **el**) combines with **de** or **a** to form **del** and **al** respectively. But the combination does not occur when the article forms part of a title:

El autor de *El Trovador*. *The author of "El Trovador."*
Mandó su poema a *El Liberal*. *He sent his poem to "The Liberal."*

124. Uses of Definite Article. Primarily, the Spanish definite article, in common with the English, denotes a particular individual or a specific object; but it also has the following uses not found in English.

1. Before nouns denoting general or abstract ideas:

El pan es el sustento diario de los hombres. *Bread is the daily food of men.*
La vida es breve. *Life is short.*
Los hombres aman la libertad. *Men love liberty.*

a. The absence of the article conveys a partitive idea, often expressed in English by *some* or *any*, or in the negative by *no*:

¿ Tiene Vd. pan ?	*Have you any bread ?*
No tenemos libertad.	*We have no liberty.*

2. With geographical names,

a. Especially if taken in a general sense and not after a preposition:

Ha corrido la Francia.	*He has traveled over France.*
But, **Está en Francia.**	*He is in France.*

b. Always with some names:

la América del Norte, *North America*
los Estados Unidos, *the United States*
el Canadá, *Canada*
el Perú, *Peru*
la Coruña, *Corunna*
el Brasil, *Brazil*
el Japón, *Japan*
la Habana, *Havana*
el Mediterráneo, *the Mediterranean*

c. Never with others:

Venezuela **Chile** **Méjico,** *Mexico*

3. With proper nouns modified by an adjective, and frequently with Christian names of women:

el pobre Pablo, *poor Paul* **la Paquita,** *Fannie*

a. Hence before titles and epithets when not addressing the person:

El general Guzmán.	*General Guzmán.*
La señora López.	*Mrs. López.*
Juana la loca.	*Jane the Crazy.*
But, **Buenos días, señor Pérez.**	*Good morning, Mr. Pérez.*

b. Exceptions to *a* are the titles **don, doña, sor, fray.**

4. With adjectives used as the name of a language, except after **hablar** and **en**:

Aprendo el español.	*I am learning Spanish.*
¿ Habla Vd. español ?	*Do you speak Spanish ?*
Escribo en francés.	*I write in French.*

a. But if an adverb follows the verb, the article is retained:

No hablo bien el castellano.	*I do not speak Castilian well.*

5. With adjectives of nationality, profession, sex, etc., in apposition with a pronoun expressed or understood:

Nosotros los ingleses.	*We English.*
Ustedes las mujeres.	*You women.*
Los profesores comprendemos.	*We teachers understand.*

6. In certain expressions of time, —

a. Those modified by an adjective or a phrase:

el año pasado, *last year* **el martes que viene,** *next Tuesday*

b. Before names of the days of the week except in dates (English usually has the preposition *on* in similar cases), and before names of the seasons:

La primavera.	*Spring.*
Viene los lunes.	*He comes on Mondays.*
Miércoles, el dos del corriente.	*Wednesday, the second instant.*

7. To express rate where English has the indefinite article, though Spanish sometimes omits the article:

Un peso la vara, or **un peso vara.**	*A dollar a yard.*
Treinta centavos la docena.	*Thirty cents a dozen.*

8. In speaking of the person or clothing, in place of the possessive adjective:

Córteme Vd. el pelo.	*Cut my hair.*
Tiene puestos los zapatos.	*He has his shoes on.*

9. To modify an infinitive or a clause:

El mentir es un vicio.	*Lying is a vice.*
Me vuelve loco el que no me lleve nunca la contraria.	*It makes me crazy, the (fact) that you never contradict me.*

10. In many adverbial phrases not possible to classify; as,

en la escuela, *at school* **en la iglesia,** *at church*
en el colegio, *in high school* **a la ciudad,** *to town*

125. The Neuter Article is used with adjectives, making an expression equivalent to an abstract noun. It occurs frequently with past participles and in many adverbial expressions.

No son lo mismo.	*They are not the same.*
Ama lo bueno.	*He loves whatever is good.*
Están por lo positivo.	*They are for the practical.*
Quedamos en lo dicho.	*We stuck by what had been said.*
Grité y me contestaron a lo lejos.	*I shouted and they answered me far off.*

a. A peculiar idiomatic use of the neuter article occurs when the modified adjective refers to a word in a following clause, sometimes equivalent to an indirect English exclamatory phrase introduced by *how*. The Spanish adjective agrees with the noun.

¿ Sabe Vd. lo buena que es mi hermana ?	*Do you know how good my sister is ?*
A pesar de lo muy agradecidos que estamos.	*In spite of how very grateful we are.*

b. **Lo** in the foregoing idiom may be modified by **todo**: **Quería decirle todo lo hermosa que me parecía,** *I wanted to tell her how very handsome she seemed to me.*

126. Omission of Definite Article occurs,

1. Before a noun in apposition with another: **el señor F., director del colegio,** *Mr. F., the principal of the school.*

2. Before numbers that are part of the title of sovereigns:

Alfonso Trece es el nieto de Isabel Segunda.	*Alfonso the Thirteenth is the grandson of Isabella the Second.*

3. Sometimes the omission or use of the definite article gives a different meaning to the phrase:

hacer la cama, *to make the bed*	**dar vuelta a,** *to turn*
hacer cama, *to be sick abed*	**dar una vuelta,** *to take a walk*
	dar la vuelta, *to go around*

4. In many adverbial expressions:

en Filipinas, *in the Philippines*	**en tercera persona,** *in the third person*
por primera vez, *for the first time*	

LA AMÉRICA LATINA

(Los países de habla española en fondo blanco)

127. The Indefinite Article, identical with the numeral *one*, has the following forms:

	Masculine	Feminine
Sing.	**uno, un**	**una**

a. The masculine singular is shortened to **un** before a noun or an attributive adjective. Used alone or as a pronoun, the full form appears.

¿ Tiene Vd. un buen perro ?	*Have you a good dog ?*
Sí, tengo uno.	*Yes, I have one.*
Tengo uno muy bueno.	*I have a very good one.*

b. The feminine, in imitation of the feminine definite article **el,** usually is **un** before nouns beginning with an accented *a* sound.

un ave hermosa, *a beautiful bird* **un águila pequeña,** *a small eagle*

128. Use and Omission of Indefinite Article. The indefinite article is used about as in English, but is omitted in the following cases:

1. Before an unmodified noun in the predicate denoting business, profession, party, religion, etc.:

Es sastre.	*He is a tailor.*
Se ha hecho abogado.	*He has become a lawyer.*
Es liberal.	*He is a liberal.*
Soy americano.	*I am an American.*

a. The indefinite article may be used to attribute a given quality to one's character. **Es cobarde,** *He is a coward* (under these circumstances). **Es un cobarde,** *He is a regular coward* (by nature).

2. Before nouns in apposition:

Tampico, puerto del golfo de Méjico.	*Tampico, a harbor on the Gulf of Mexico.*

3. Before nouns preceded by **de** in adverbial expressions corresponding to English *as a*:

Va de cónsul a Méjico.	*He goes to Mexico as a consul.*
Yo soy un hombre atroz, a quien nadie ha podido aguantar ni de muchacho, ni de joven, ni de viejo.	*I am a disagreeable man, whom nobody has been able to endure as a boy, as a young man, nor as an old man.*

a. Similarly **de** denotes apposition between an adjective and a noun or between two nouns.

¡ El pobre de Pepe !	*Poor Joe !*
El marica de Don Cándido.	*Don Cándido the old woman.*
¡ Qué lástima de muchacha !	*What a pity about the girl !*

4. In many verbal idioms which must be learned by observation:

Tiene buen corazón.	*He has a kind heart.*
Poner precio.	*To set a price.*

5. Before certain adjectives: **mil,** *one thousand*, **ciento,** *one hundred*, and other numbers and fractions denoting quantity, as **media docena,** *half a dozen.*

tal, *such a*	**¿ qué tal muchacho ?** *what sort of boy ?*
otro, *other, another*	
cierto, *a certain*	

6. In exclamations after **¡ qué !**

¡ Qué ruido !	*What a noise !*
¡ Qué chico atroz !	*What an awful boy !*

7. In negative expressions or those implying a negative:

No dice palabra.	*He does not say a word.*
Me dejó sin respuesta.	*He left me without a reply.*
¿ Hay hombre tan atrevido ?	*Is there a man so bold ?*

EXERCISE 24

1. The largest continent is Asia. 2. Havana, the capital of Cuba, is a beautiful city. 3. Men seek gold in all parts of the world. 4. There is gold in South America and in Mexico. 5. They do not speak pure Castilian in Chile and Peru. 6. Mr. Ibarra, a Cuban, teaches Spanish and French. 7. He is a Mexican and a soldier. 8. We Americans love independence. 9. My hands and face are cold. 10. To read and write is indispensable. 11. Tailors make suits for men. 12. Captain López arrived last Wednesday from Brazil. 13. Whatever is good is expensive, but people want the good cheap. 14. We know the worst: what we said has

happened. 15. Another day comes to-morrow. I have a thousand things to do.[1] 16. How much did you pay for such a thing? A dollar a pound. 17. Spanish is easier than French. 18. Good morning, Miss Mary. Who came yesterday? General Pérez and Mrs. Navarro. 19. Eating[2] too much is bad for one's health. 20. He receives one thousand dollars a year, not a hundred dollars a month. 21. Philip the Second was the son of Charles the First, king of Spain, who was Charles the Fifth, the German emperor. 22. Do you know how pretty she is? 23. We have geography on Fridays. 24. You Spaniards read English easily. 25. This steamer leaves Corunna for South America next week. 26. Little Paco says that the water is cold. 27. Is iron more useful than silver? 28. The retinue consisted of Lieutenant Carvalho, the leader of the Brazilian colony, Messrs. Rodríguez and Guzmán, and the writer. 29. Now we girls are for the practical. 30. What an idea! 31. He is John Gómez, a son of General Gómez. 32. There is not a carriage in the street. 33. He dressed himself as a woman. 34. He is going to Spain without knowing a word of Castilian. 35. What a man! As a lawyer he had no success. Now he is a politician. 36. He was a rich man and is now poor; he was a father and is alone on the earth; he was a husband and is a widower. 37. I subscribed to *The Liberal*. 38. The first thing that he did was to look at the books. 39. You do not know how cold it is.[3]

[1] que hacer. [2] Use infinitive. [3] See section 58, *a*.

CHAPTER III

NOUNS

129. Gender. Every Spanish noun is either masculine or feminine.

1. Masculine are nouns —

a. Denoting male beings:

el rey, *the king* — **el artista,** *the artist*
el cura, *the priest* — **el amigo,** *the friend*

b. Ending in **o**:

el viento, *the wind* — **el ojo,** *the eye*

Except **la mano,** *the hand*, and a few others rarely used.

c. Names of most oceans, rivers, mountains; and countries, not ending in unaccented **a**:

el Atlántico, *the Atlantic* — **los Andes,** *the Andes*
el Amazonas, *the Amazon* — **el Plata,** *the river La Plata*, or *River Plate*
el Sena, *the Seine*
el Ecuador, *Ecuador* — **el Panamá,** *Panama*
But **la España,** *Spain*, **la Italia,** *Italy*

d. Indeclinable words, infinitives, etc., used as nouns:

el hablar, *speaking* — **el sí,** *the yes*

2. Feminine are nouns —

a. Denoting female beings:

la reina, *the queen* — **la actriz,** *the actress*
la joven, *the young lady* — **la tigre,** *the tigress*

b. Those ending in **a**:

la pluma, *the pen* — **la naranja,** *the orange*

But exceptions are very numerous. Most important are **el día,** *the day*; **el mapa,** *the map*; nouns of Greek origin usually ending in **ma,** as **el idioma,** *the language*; **el sistema,** *the system*; **el telegrama,** *the telegram.*

Many nouns ending in **a** may be recognized as masculine by their signification:

el centinela, *the sentinel* **el papa,** *the pope*

c. Names of the letters of the alphabet:

la b, *the b* **una ch,** *a ch*

d. Nouns with the terminations **dad, tad, tud, ie, ión, umbre,** denoting abstract or general ideas:

la libertad, *liberty* **la necesidad,** *necessity*
la virtud, *virtue* **la serie,** *the series*
la nación, *the nation* **la costumbre,** *the habit*

130. Number. The plural of Spanish nouns is formed by adding **s** to words ending in an unaccented vowel, **es** to words ending in a consonant or an accented vowel, including the monosyllabic names of the letters of the alphabet.

el hombre, *the man* **los hombres,** *the men*
la mujer, *the woman* **las mujeres,** *the women*
el rubí, *the ruby* **los rubíes,** *the rubies*
la o, *the o* **las oes,** *the o's*

a. Note that the proper spelling to retain the sound of the singular must be obtained by changing final **z** to **c**, and final **c** to **qu**, before **es.**

la luz, *the light* **las luces,** *the lights*
el frac, *the dress-coat* **los fraques,** *the dress-coats*
Also, **el ónix,** *the onyx* **los ónices,** *the onyxes*

b. The following words shift their accent in the plural:

el carácter, *the character* **los caracteres,** *the characters*
el régimen, *the régime* **los regímenes,** *the régimes*

1. Exceptions to the above rules are

a. Words ending in **y:**

el rey, *the king* **los reyes,** *the kings*
el buey, *the ox* **los bueyes,** *the oxen*

b. Words ending in **é:**

el café, *the coffee* **los cafés,** *the coffees*
el pie, *the foot* **los pies,** *the feet*

c. Exceptions to other accented vowel terminations are

el papá, *papa*	**los papás,** *papas*
el sofá, *the sofa*	**los sofás,** *the sofas*
la mamá, *mamma*	**las mamás,** *mammas*

2. The following make no change in the plural.

a. Words ending in unaccented **es** or **is**:

el lunes, *Monday*	**los lunes,** *Mondays*
la crisis, *the crisis*	**las crisis,** *the crises*

b. Family names, especially those terminating in **es** or **ez**, and foreign names not having terminations similar to Spanish:

Pérez, los Pérez
Franklin, los Franklin

c. Adopted Latin words:

el déficit, *the deficit*	**los déficit,** *the deficits*
el ultimátum, *the ultimatum*	**los ultimátum,** *the ultimatums*

3. Irregular:

el lord, *the lord*	**los lores,** *the lords*

131. Compound Nouns. In English a noun may perform the function of an adjective and modify another noun. The combination is written sometimes as one word, as *hedgehog*; sometimes with a hyphen, as *bear's-foot*; often as two words, as *bond paper*. While a few such combinations exist in Spanish, as **ferrocarril,** *railroad*, the great majority of English compound nouns must be turned into Spanish by the use of prepositions in various ways, as,

1. The modifying noun follows the other and is connected therewith by **de**: thus,

el reloj de oro, *the gold watch*
la pluma de acero, *the steel pen*

2. If the modifying noun denotes use or purpose, **para** is preferred as the connecting preposition; as,

la taza para café, *the coffee cup*
la máquina para escribir, *the typewriter*

See further under compound adjectives, section 138.

132. Augmentatives, Diminutives, and other suffixes. Spanish compensates in part for its lack of compound nouns by possessing a large number of suffixes, some of which are classed as augmentatives and diminutives. Though these indicate size, they also denote other ideas such as contempt, affection, irony, disagreeableness, mockery, which in English are often expressed by terms from different stems; as, **casa,** *house*; **casucha,** *shanty*. Sometimes a word originally a diminutive acquires a specialized meaning; as, **cuchara,** *spoon*; **cucharita,** *teaspoon*. Many of the suffixes may also be applied to adjectives.

(A complete discussion of the suffixes will not be given, because the learner should not attempt to apply them himself and should rely on the dictionary for any forms other than the simplest.)

1. Augmentatives are

a. **-ón, -ona:**

silla — **sillón,** *big chair, easy chair*
Gaspar — **Gasparón,** *big Gaspar*
nariz — **narigón,** *big nose*
mujer — **mujerona,** *big strapping woman*

b. **-azo, -aza: pícaro** — **picarazo,** *great rogue.*

c. **-ote, -ota;** also depreciative:

palabra — **palabrota,** *offensive and vulgar word*
feo — **feote,** *extremely ugly*

d. **-ajo(a), -acho(a), -uco(a), -ucho(a);** express poor quality or contempt:

fraile — **frailucho,** *contemptible friar*
cuarto — **cuartucho,** *wretched room*
espanto — **espantajo,** *scarecrow*
vino — **vinacho,** *poor wine, dregs*
vivo — **vivaracho,** *frolicsome*

2. Diminutives are

a. **-ito(a), -cito(a), -ecito(a),** dialectical **-ico(a)** etc., **-illo(a), -cillo(a), -ecillo(a);** express also affection, niceness, pleasing qualities, pity.

flor — **florecita,** *little flower*
madre — **madrecita,** *little mother, dear mother*
papá — **papaíto,** *papa dear*
cigarro — **cigarrillo,** *cigarette*
señora — **señorita,** *miss*
mujer — **mujercita,** *frail little woman*

b. **-uelo(a), -zuelo(a), -ezuelo(a)**; express also mockery and ridicule.

Venecia, *Venice* — **Venezuela**
pequeño — pequeñuelo, *dear little fellow*
rey — reyezuelo, *petty king*
mujer — mujerzuela, *sorry little woman*

c. **-ete(a), -cete(a), -ecete(a)**; frequently also depreciative.

caballero — caballerete, *dude, dandy*
historia — historieta, *short story*

d. **-ejo(a)**; implies contempt: **caballo — caballejo**, *nag.*

e. The augmentatives **-ón** and **-ote** sometimes form diminutives:

rata, *rat* — **ratón**, *mouse*
isla, *island* — **islote**, *islet*

3. Various combinations of these suffixes are common:

río — riacho — riachuelo
hombre — hombrón — hombronazo
chico — chiquito — chiquitito, chiquitillo

4. A few Spanish suffixes, not augmentatives nor diminutives, should be known:

a. **-ada** (capacity), Eng. *-ful*: **cuchara**, *spoon* — **cucharada**, *spoonful.*

b. **-ada, -azo**, a blow with or a wound from.

puñal, *dagger* — **puñalada**, *dagger thrust, stab wound*
bala, *bullet* — **balazo**, *bullet wound, shot*

c. **-al, -ar, -eda**, a collection, grove, or orchard.

arena, *sand* — **arenal**, *sandy spot*
café, *coffee* — **cafetal**, *coffee plantation*
manzano, *apple tree* — **manzanar**, *apple orchard*
álamo, *poplar* — **alameda**, *avenue of poplars*

d. **-dor, -dora**, the person or thing that performs the act indicated by the verbal stem; often used adjectively.

hablar, *to talk* — **hablador**, *talkative*
matar, *to kill* — **matador**, *killer*
trillar, *to thresh* — **(máquina) trilladora**, *threshing-machine*

e. **-ero(a),** the person who makes, manages, or sells things.

zapato, *shoe* — **zapatero,** *shoemaker* or *shoe-dealer*
molino, *mill* — **molinero,** *miller* — **molinera,** *miller's wife*

f. **-ía** added to **-ero : -ería,** place of business.

zapatería, *shoe shop* or *collection of shoes*
librero, *book-dealer* — **librería,** *book store*

5. The past participle feminine makes nouns denoting the completed action of the verbs.

llegar, *to arrive* — **llegada,** *arrival*
salir, *to depart* — **salida,** *departure*
ir, *to go* / **volver,** *to return* } **un billete de ida y vuelta,** *a return ticket*

133. Idiomatic Plural. The masculine plural of nouns and pronouns includes the corresponding feminine :

los padres, *the parents*
los hijos, *the children*
los señores González, *Mr. and Mrs. González*
los hermanos, *brothers and sisters*
los parientes, *the relatives*
los reyes católicos, *the Catholic Monarchs* (i.e. Ferdinand and Isabella)

a. The titles of offices, being susceptible of misunderstanding, are an exception :

el alcalde y la alcaldesa, *the mayor and the mayoress*
el presidente y su señora, *the president and his wife*

134. Objective Case. The preposition **a** serves to indicate the objective (or accusative) case of nouns when the direct object is —

1. A specific person, intelligent animal, or personified thing :

Vea Vd. a Cecilia. *Look at Cecilia.*
No encontré a mi amigo. *I did not find my friend.*
Don Quijote cabalgaba a Rocinante. *Don Quixote rode Rocinante.*
Las riquezas no siempre tienen por compañera a la alegría. *Riches do not always have joy for a companion.*

2. A geographical name without definite article :

He visto a Sevilla. *I have seen Seville.*
But, **Pizarro conquistó el Perú.** *Pizarro conquered Peru.*

3. Out of its normal position, or liable not to be recognized:

Al yate alcanzó el vapor.	*The steamer overtook the yacht.*
Ninguna de las cosas que a la flor hacen bonita.	*None of the things which make the flower pretty.*
El nombre rige al verbo.	*The noun governs the verb.*

4. A pronoun, except **que** and the unaccented object pronouns:

El señor a quien llamé.	*The gentleman whom I called.*
El hombre que vi.	*The man whom I saw.*
No conozco a nadie.	*I know nobody.*

5. Though the preposition **a** be required by these rules, it is often not used before a word beginning with an *a* sound, or when there is also an indirect object in the sentence, or a noun governed by the preposition **a**:

Mira aquel hombre.	*Look at that man.*
Dió el esclavo a su hijo.	*He gave the slave to his son.*
Mandó el muchacho a casa.	*He sent the boy home.*

NOTE. In general, **a** should be retained before nouns that require it, which is often possible by substituting the passive construction for the active; as, **Se le dió el esclavo a su hijo,** *The slave was given to his son.*

6. Since a proper noun in the objective case always requires the **a,** two proper nouns governed by **a** should be avoided by using another expression: thus, instead of **Prefirió a Pedro a Juan,** say **Prefirió el joven Pedro a Juan.**

7. With certain verbs, **a** appears before their personal objects when the verb has a special meaning:

querer, *to wish;* **querer a,** *to love*

tener, *to have*, usually without **a** before a personal object, requires it in the idiom **tener a uno en cualquier parte**

perder, *to lose;* **perder a,** *to ruin*, though sometimes also *to lose by death*

Quiero un criado.	*I wish a servant.*
Isabel te quiere como a un hermano.	*Isabel loves you as a brother.*
Tengo un buen tío.	*I have a good uncle.*
Tengo a mi tío en Chile.	*My uncle is in Chile.*
Perdió (a) su hermano en la guerra.	*He lost his brother in the war.*
Con su manía del juego, pierde a su familia.	*By his passion for gambling he is ruining his family.*

EXERCISE 25

A. Determine the gender by the rules, and write the proper article with: ciudad, sistema, muchedumbre, circulación, independencia, esperanza, carlista, poema, Venus, monarca, calidad, unión.

B. Write plurals with articles: el agua, la tesis, el lunes, el inglés, el señor Martínez, el pie, el rubí, el juez, el águila, la serie, el rey.

C. Determine the meaning of the whole word by examining the stem and the suffix: el hermanito, el animalejo, el hombrecillo, la manecita, Anita, el doctorzuelo, el papelucho, el bobarrón, el chiquillo, Carlitos, el hombrón, los zapatones, la zapatilla, una plumada de tinta, una cuchillada, la venida, el dador, la entrada, el naranjal, el palmar, el hachazo, un silletazo, una arboleda, el ranchero, el relojero, una relojería, una guantería.

D. Translate: 1. He has three grandparents, his father's parents and his mother's mother. 2. My brother has three children, two boys and a girl. 3. There is a party to-night at Mr. and Mrs. González's. 4. We saw a handsome eagle in the park. 5. Put (an)[1] accent on the i's of the endings of the imperfect indicative. 6. Columbus discovered America, but Cortes conquered Mexico. 7. Where did you find John? 8. I saw nobody there whom I knew. 9. Whom did you see in the theater? 10. The night follows the day. 11. The silver spoon is on the kitchen table. 12. They have a new sewing machine. 13. The Romans used to write on wax tablets with iron pencils. 14. He called the dog friend. 15. Lucas had taught the dog to dance. 16. The water carried me away like a feather. 17. I do not believe uncle Lucas a[1] man to[2] consent to[3] such foolishness. 18. They gave the sick woman medicine in small doses. 19. The letter z is not written[4] before the vowels e and i. 20. In the Roman system of numeration the capital C equals one hundred, and the capital M one thousand. 21. Here you have Doña Dolores.

[1] Omit. [2] de. [3] en. [4] Use reflexive verb.

CHAPTER IV

ADJECTIVES

135. Gender. If the masculine singular of an adjective ends in **o**, the feminine is formed by changing **o** to **a**. Adjectives ending otherwise remain the same in both genders.

un caballo negro, *a black horse*	**una yegua negra,** *a black mare*
el árbol verde, *the green tree*	**la hoja verde,** *the green leaf*
un hombre feliz, *a happy man*	**una mujer infeliz,** *an unhappy woman*
el belga, *the Belgian*	
el cielo azul, *the blue sky*	**la estrella azul,** *the blue star*
el partido socialista, *the socialist party*	**la frontera marroquí,** *the Moroccan frontier*

Exceptions are

1. Adjectives of nationality, which add **a** to a final consonant:

inglés, inglesa, *English*	**andaluz, andaluza,** *Andalusian*
alemán, alemana, *German*	**provenzal, provenzala,** *Provençal*

2. Adjectives with the terminations **án, ón, or** (except comparatives), **ete, ote, ín:**

regordete, regordeta, *plump*	**hablador, habladora,** *talkative*
feote, feota, *ugly*	
holgazán, holgazana, *lazy*	But **una hermana mayor,** *an older sister*
chiquitín, chiquitina, *tiny*	
burlón, burlona, *roguish*	**la parte superior,** *the upper part*

3. A few adjectives of one termination which add **a** when used as feminine nouns, especially those ending in **al.**

la colegiala, *the schoolgirl*	**la superiora,** *the mother superior*

136. Number. The plurals of adjectives follow the rules for the plurals of nouns; see section 130.

137. Apocopation. See section 46.

1. **Grande** in the full form is used before nouns beginning with a vowel sound.

una grande abundancia de flores, *a great abundance of flowers*
un grande hombre, *a great man*

a. Sometimes also for emphasis; as, **Es cosa cierta que nunca grande cosa se hubo sin trabajo,** *It is certain that no great thing ever came to pass without work.*

2. **Santo** becomes **san** in names of saints, except before those beginning with **To** or **Do**; as, **San Pedro,** *Saint Peter*; **San Pablo,** *Saint Paul*; **Santo Toribio**; **Santo Domingo**; **Santo Tomás.**

a. The name of the island, however, is **San Tomas,** with shift of accent due to derivation from English.

b. The adjective **santo,** and its feminine form in names, have the full form; as, **el santo día,** *the blessed day*; **Santa María.**

3. **Ciento** becomes **cien** before nouns: **cien mujeres,** *one hundred women.* But the full form occurs in counting above a hundred; as, **ciento dos pesos,** *one hundred and two dollars.*

138. Compound Adjectives, like compound nouns, are not very numerous in Spanish. English compound adjectives must usually be translated into Spanish by prepositional phrases.

una niña de ojos azules, *a blue-eyed girl*
los ricos duros de corazón, *the hard-hearted rich*

1. When the expression contains two nouns and an adjective, the adjective may agree with either noun:

un sombrero de anchas alas
un sombrero ancho de alas } *a broad-brimmed hat*

2. The repetition of **de** may be avoided by using other prepositions according to sense:

un bastón con puño de oro, *a gold-headed cane*
maquinaria para trabajar la madera, *wood-working machinery*
compañía de seguros contra incendios, *fire insurance company*
clavos para herraduras de cabeza pequeña, *small-headed horse-shoe nails*

3. The English suffix *-less* is translated by the preposition **sin**:

la telegrafía sin hilos, *wireless telegraphy*
sierra sin fin, *endless saw* or *band-saw*

4. With proper names and the words *brand* and *color*, the preposition may be omitted:

ruedas Pelton, *Pelton wheels*
fósforos marca Victoria, *Victoria brand matches*
guantes color verde aceituna, *olive-green gloves*
el musgo color perla, *the pearl-colored moss*

139. Position of Adjectives. 1. The will of the writer largely determines whether an adjective shall stand before or after the noun. However, the emphatic position is after the noun; hence, important adjectives that distinguish individuals from others of the same class follow the noun, while those which are characteristic or may apply to all objects of a class precede the noun.

buenos amigos, *good friends*
amigos íntimos, *intimate friends*
las bellas flores, *the beautiful flowers*
claveles blancos, *white pinks*
la blanca nieve, *the white snow*
una casa costosa, *an expensive house*

2. When two adjectives come together either before or after the noun, it is customary to write **y**, *and*, between them; unless one of the adjectives is so closely connected with the meaning as to make practically a compound noun.

ojos grandes y animados, *large animated eyes*
dos largos y tristes meses, *two long sad months*
el Banco Nacional Americano, *the American National Bank*
aguas minerales extranjeras, *foreign mineral waters*

3. Groups of modifiers should be arranged so as to restrict the word intended, and with a care for the sound.

Aceiteras de acero sin junta.
Seamless steel oil-cans.

Árboles corpulentos de rugosos troncos formidables abrían en vertiginosas alturas los mil hercúleos brazos de sus ramajes frondosos.
Huge trees with rough formidable trunks opened on dizzy heights the thousand Herculean arms of their leafy branches.

4. The following adjectives are always placed before the noun. (See also section 142, 6.)

ambos, *both*
cada, *each*
cuanto, *how much*
demás, *other*
mucho, *much*, plural *many*
The cardinal numerals
otro, *other*
poco, *little*, plural *few*
¿ qué ? *what ?*
¿ cuál ? *which ?*
tanto, *so much*
todo, *every, all*

5. Some adjectives have a difference in meaning according as they stand before or after the noun. These differences are usually a distinction between the figurative and the literal meaning, but the adjectives in their literal sense may sometimes be found in good writers placed before the noun.

mi cara madre, *my dear mother*	**un libro caro,** *an expensive book*
cierto hombre, *a certain man*	**una noticia cierta,** *a true piece of news*
un gran señor, *a great lord*	**una casa grande,** *a large house*
	una gran sala baja, *a large lower room*
mal café, *bad coffee*	**un hombre malo,** *a wicked man*
el mismo día, *the same day*	**el rey mismo,** *the king himself*
un nuevo libro, *a new* (i.e. different) *book*	**un libro nuevo,** *a new book* (newly printed)
¡ pobre muchacho ! *poor boy !*	**un muchacho pobre,** *a poor boy*
varios papeles, *several papers*	**papeles varios,** *miscellaneous papers*

a. Many expressions require a fixed position of the adjective: **buen dinero** (ironical), *little money*; **una buena pieza,** *a nice trick*; **el Padre Santo,** *the Pope*; **la Santa Biblia,** *the Holy Bible.* (See the large dictionaries.)

b. A distinction exists between **el mismo** and **un mismo.** The latter implies no comparison, *one and the same*; while the former supposes comparison.

Todo ello está escrito de una misma letra.	*It is all written in the same hand.*
Esta gorra no es la misma.	*This cap is not the same one.*

EXERCISE 26

A. Translate: 1. Tanks of California redwood. 2. Engraved wedding cards. 3. Solid steel cart-wheels. 4. Portable Victor refrigerating machines. 5. Cotton-seed-oil presses. 6. Eureka brand table cutlery. 7. A gasoline illuminating system. 8. Seamless stockings. 9. A blue typewriter ribbon. 10. Aluminum advertising signs.

B. 1. John will earn a great honor and a good handful of silver. 2. He wore a necktie of pearl-colored silk. 3. While the money lasted, the innkeeper treated me with great attention. 4. The captain had a thick, black, silky mustache. 5. This large house belongs to the heir of a great family. 6. The poor sick girl! I took her some new magazines to read. 7. A dense impure vapor rose from the surface of the sea. 8. His younger sister was a charming girl. 9. We entered the lower part of the house. 10. He bought two handsome black horses. 11. The German girls have pretty blue eyes. 12. The Carlist party has its name from Don Carlos, brother of Ferdinand the Seventh. 13. Wireless telegraphy is one of the great inventions of the nineteenth century. 14. Saint Thomas never visited the island of Saint Thomas. 15. With the stones he has built a safe, handsome yard for his cattle. 16. They have several kinds of new books. 17. The streets of the city are broad and clean. 18. There are a hundred boys in the class. 19. This room has five broad high windows. 20. In the market we saw a heap of orange-colored squashes. 21. The president of the United States lives in the White House. 22. The same day the president himself opened the door. 23. He paid the hundred pesetas to both men. 24. They sell domestic and foreign goods of all kinds. 25. All this happened on one and the same day. 26. The same day we played ball in the afternoon.

EL ACUEDUCTO ROMANO DE SEGOVIA

Segovia fué una ciudad de los celtíberos, primeros habitantes de la península ibérica. Se construyó el acueducto para surtir agua a la ciudad en la época romana, la cual duró unos setecientos años

EL ACUEDUCTO ROMANO

1. ¿Cómo sabe Vd. que Segovia es una ciudad antigua?

2. ¿Para qué sirve un acueducto?

3. ¿Qué le parece a Vd. el tamaño de las piedras de que está construído el acueducto?

4. Al verlo, ¿qué idea se hace Vd. de la civilización romana en España?

5. ¿Cuánto tiempo duró la dominación romana en España?

6. Si los primeros habitantes de la península ibérica fueron los celtíberos, ¿por qué hay tan pocas palabras de origen celtíbero en el idioma español?

7. Los arcos del acueducto, ¿le parecen a Vd. ojos?

8. ¿Qué sentido tiene la frase «más ojos que la puente segoviana»?

9. ¿Qué se ve por los arcos?

10. ¿Qué indican los hilos en los palos?

acueducto, m. *aqueduct*
antiguo -a, *ancient, old*
arco, m. *arch*
celtíbero -a, *Celtiberian*
civilización, f. *civilization*
construir, *to build*
durar, *to last*
época, f. *epoch, period*
habitante, m. or f. *inhabitant*
hilo, m. *wire*
palo, m. *pole*
península ibérica, *Iberian Peninsula*
piedra, f. *stone*
romano -a, *Roman*
surtir, *to supply*
tamaño, m. *size*

CHAPTER V

ADJECTIVES, CONTINUED

140. Agreement of Adjective and Noun. 1. An adjective modifying two or more nouns may be masculine plural when the nouns are of different gender; and must be so if the nouns denote persons.

El médico y la señora estaban sentados en el despacho.	*The doctor and the lady were seated in the office.*

2. The plural adjective may agree in gender with the nearest noun.

Sangre, dinero e inteligencia europeas.	*European blood, money, and intelligence.*
Juntos el terror y la admiración germinaron en el alma de Lucila.	*Together terror and wonder arose in Lucille's soul.*
El misterio y sigilo diplomáticos.	*Diplomatic mystery and secrecy.*

3. If the nouns appear to the writer as closely associated in meaning, the adjective modifying them may agree in both gender and number with the nearest.

El valor y constancia española.	*Spanish valor and constancy.*
Otras devociones y ejercicios.	*Other devotions and exercises.*
Mi padre ha leído muchos romances e historias.	*My father has read many ballads and stories.*

a. An adjective or an article may be repeated when it is desired to mark a distinction in meaning between two nouns. See section 141.

Tengo mucho frío y mucha hambre.	*I am very cold and hungry.*

4. Two or more singular adjectives may be used with a plural noun, agreeing with it in gender, when different objects are meant.

los tomos primero y segundo, *the first and second volumes*
las Cámaras italiana y portuguesa, *the Italian and Portuguese parliaments*

141. Repetition of Adjective and Article. Adjectival modifiers, including the articles, are repeated with each noun when distinct persons, things, or ideas are presented.

Mi madre y mi tía.	*My mother and aunt.*
Hasta las diez y media o las once.	*Until half past ten or eleven o'clock.*
Gracias a Vd. por las nuevas cartas y los nuevos consejos.	*I thank you for the recent letters and advice.*
Esta consideración y esta meditación me atemorizan.	*This consideration and this reflection make me afraid.*
El amor de Dios y el concepto de Dios todo lo abarcan.	*God's love and the concept of God embrace everything.*

a. If, however, the two nouns appear to the writer to represent closely related ideas or to have a collective sense, the modifier appears only once.

Se comprenden bajo la denominación de equipajes los baúles, maletas, sombrereras, y sacos de noche.	*Under the term baggage are included trunks, valises, hat-boxes, and traveling-bags.*
El Príncipe de Viana tuvo la majestad y esperanzas de un nacimiento real.	*The Prince of Viana had the majesty and hopes of a royal birth.*
Obra una transmisión y mezcla de sangre.	*It effects a transmission and mingling of blood.*

142. The Comparative. See sections 47, 48, 49.

1. The correlative adverbs *the . . . the* used with comparatives are rendered in Spanish by **cuanto . . . tanto.**

Cuanto más leo este autor, tanto más lo admiro.	*The more I read this author the more I admire him.*

a. **Tanto** may be omitted; and **mientras** may be used instead of **cuanto.**

Cuanto más lejos, mejor.	*The farther the better.*
Mientras mayor me represento el amor de Dios, menos celoso estoy y más le amo.	*The greater I imagine God's love (to be), the less jealous I am and the more I love him.*

2. Though **tan** is used with adjectives, the full form **tanto** must be used with comparatives: **tanto peor,** *so much the worse.*

3. The comparative may be intensified by **cada vez** to denote a gradual increase in degree.

La señora estaba cada vez peor de salud.	*The lady became constantly worse in health.*
Brillan cada vez más las luces eléctricas.	*The electric lights shine brighter and brighter.*

4. Indefinite expressions after comparatives are usually in the negative.

mejor que en ningún otro país, *better than in any other country*
más rico que nunca, *richer than ever*

5. A redundant **no** sometimes appears after a comparative.

El guardia parecía ocuparse más de la campiña que no del río.	*The watchman seemed to pay more attention to the plain than to the river.*

6. The irregular comparatives **mejor, peor, menor,** and **mayor** may stand before the noun, but are placed after it when the comparison is not limited, or when the noun is preceded by **alguno, ninguno,** or **otro. Mayor** and **menor** may stand before the noun only in a completed comparison.

mi mejor amigo, *my best friend*	**ninguna casa mejor,** *no better house*
su hijo menor, *his youngest son*	**una señora mayor,** *an elderly lady*
Vendrán días mejores.	*Better days will come.*
El peor hombre del mundo.	*The worst man in the world.*
La mayor casa del barrio.	*The largest house in the quarter.*

143. Than after a comparative. See section 49.

1. When the comparison is with a noun in the principal clause, Spanish uses for *than* **del que, de la que, de los que, de las que,** according to the gender and number of the noun represented.

Tenía yo menos dinero del que me pidió.	*I had less money than he demanded of me.*
Hubo más gente de la que invitó.	*There were more people than he invited.*
¿Son muchos los enemigos? Más de los que esperábamos.	*Are the enemy numerous? More than we expected.*

2. With a neuter **de** is used, with a statement **de lo que.**

Hizo más frío de lo común. *It was colder than usual.*
Es más hábil de lo que parece. *He is more skillful than he seems.*

144. Más modifies many adverbs of place which have no comparative degree in English, and otherwise forms various idiomatic expressions.

más adelante, *later on, farther on*
más arriba, *higher up.* **más abajo,** *lower down*
más al norte, *farther north*
más bien, *rather*
más acá de, *on this side.* **más allá de,** *beyond, on the other side*
no más . . . que, *only:* **No había más que dos sillas,** *There were only two chairs*
a poco más, *nearly:* **A poco más se muere,** *He nearly died*

145. The Superlative. 1. A possessive adjective may replace the article in forming the superlative.

su poema más interesante, *his most interesting poem*
mi mejor amigo, *my best friend*

2. The superlative adjective may stand either before or after the noun; but in the latter case the article is placed before the noun.

Isabel, sostenida por la mayor y más sana parte del reino, *Isabel, supported by the largest and soundest part of the kingdom*
las rocas más elevadas, *the highest rocks*

3. With several adjectives in the comparative or superlative, **más** or **menos** is used only once.

las regiones más ricas y fértiles, *the richest and most fertile regions*
los menos sabios y leídos, *the least learned and well-read*

4. The superlative adjective in the predicate omits the article when the comparison concerns only the subject of the verb without reference to other nouns or pronouns.

Cuando más alegre estaba, vi que la señora fijó en mí la mirada. *When I was merriest I saw the lady stare at me.*
No te cases nunca, Cecilia; el hombre que mejor parece de novio es el esposo peor. *Never marry, Cecilia; the man who seems best as a lover is the worst husband.*

5. A superlative adjective modifying a noun in apposition with another has the article after the noun.

Gonzalo de Córdoba, general el más ilustre del siglo XV, *Gonzalo de Córdoba, the most illustrious general of the fifteenth century*

6. The article is not used with the superlative of an adverb unless accompanied by the adjective **posible,** or an expression denoting possibility; in which case the neuter article is required.

Los cometas aparecen cuando menos se los espera.	*Comets appear when they are least expected.*
Se trataba lo menos posible con los vecinos.	*He conversed as little as possible with the neighbors.*
Huyó lo más de prisa que podía.	*He ran away as fast as he could.*
Don Fadrique bailó lo mejor que supo.	*Don Fadrique danced the best he knew how.*

a. When it is necessary to emphasize or make precise the superlative degree of an adverb, Spanish uses a relative or adverbial clause.

Es Juan el que corre más de prisa. *John runs the fastest.*

7. *Most*, as a noun, is **la mayor parte de** or **los (las) más de.**

la mayor parte de su dinero, *most of his money*
los más de los suyos, *most of his men*

a. **Los (las) más** may also be used as an adjective; as, **las más noches,** *most nights.*

146. Absolute Superlative. 1. When there is no real comparison but the adjective denotes a supreme degree, Spanish applies the ending **ísimo** to the adjective; as, **hábil,** *skillful* — **habilísimo,** *very skillful.*

a. A final **o** or other vowel is dropped before adding the termination, and the rules for spelling (see section 7) must be regarded.

mucho — muchísimo, *very much* rico — riquísimo, *very rich*
feliz — felicísimo, *very happy* largo — larguísimo, *very long*

b. The termination **ío** retains **í,** but **io** is dropped; though some adjectives in **ío** or **io** do not allow the addition of **ísimo.**

frío — friísimo, *very cold* amplio — amplísimo, *very ample*

c. The original Latin word influences the formation from adjectives having a stem vowel **ie** or **ue**, or the terminations **ble, fico, volo**, or whose Latin superlative ended in *rimus* or *limus*. There are also a few unclassified forms from the Latin superlative.

cierto — certísimo, *very sure*
fuerte — fortísimo, *very strong*
noble — nobilísimo, *very noble*
magnífico — magnificentísimo, *very magnificent*
benévolo — benevolentísimo, *very benevolent*
célebre — celebérrimo, *very famous*
fácil — facílimo (also **facilísimo**), *very easy*
sabio — sapientísimo, *very wise*
fiel — fidelísimo, *very faithful*

2. The following adjectives have, besides the regular absolute superlative, others derived from the Latin forms:

bueno — bonísimo, óptimo, *very good*
malo — malísimo, pésimo, *very bad*
grande — grandísimo, máximo, *very great*
pequeño — pequeñísimo, mínimo, *very small*

3. An equivalent for the absolute superlative may be formed by intensifying adverbs modifying the adjective.

muy bueno, *very good*
sumamente fiel, *extremely faithful*
cantidades sobre manera pequeñas, *exceedingly small quantities*

a. The particle **re (rete)** may be prefixed to the adjective with the same force:

rebueno, *very good;* **retebien hecho,** *very well done*

147. Adjectives as Nouns. The Spanish adjective may be freely used as a noun to specify individuals. English uses the adjective as a noun only in a limited way, usually supplying words like *man, woman, the one, the ones.*

¿Vió Vd. al ciego? *Did you see the blind man?*
¿Quién es la vieja? *Who is the old woman?*
El pequeño es más bonito que los grandes. *The little one is prettier than the big ones.*

1. Certain superlative expressions in English supply the words *sort*, *kind*, *one of*; these words are rendered in Spanish by the superlative of the adjective used as a noun governed by the preposition **de**.

carmesí del más vistoso, *crimson of the showiest kind*
una noche de las más frías de diciembre, *one of the coldest December nights*
una tarde de las primeras frías de octubre, *one of the first cold afternoons in October*

a. In a similar way a superlative adjective preceded by **de** may stand with partitive sense in the predicate.

Los días que pasé en aquella casa fueron de los más tristes de mi vida.	*The days that I spent in that house were the saddest in my life.*
El paño es de primera clase.	*The cloth is first-class.*

2. After a neuter pronoun, as **mucho, nada, qué,** the adjective preceded by **de** may be treated as noun and may agree or not in gender and number with the word to which it refers.

¿ Qué hay de nuevo ?	*What is there new ?* (idiomatic English) *What is the news ?*
Nada de particular.	*Nothing special.*
Aquellos ojos tenían mucho de hermoso or **de hermosos.**	*Those eyes were very beautiful.*

148. Adjectives as Adverbs. Adjectives are frequently used as adverbs; as, **hablar bajo,** *to speak low*; **Carlos habló primero,** *Charles spoke first*; **Viven felices,** *They live happily.*

a. **Solo** when used as an adverb takes a written accent: **sólo dos,** *only two.*

b. **Medio,** *half*, is frequently found as an adverb:

Los viejos parecían medio muertos.	*The old people seemed half dead.*
Estaba ella medio escondida.	*She was half hidden.*

EXERCISE 27

1. The interest and emotion of the public were extraordinary. 2. They live in the largest and richest city in the world. 3. We have Spanish lessons on Mondays, Wednesdays, and Fridays. 4. What is the opposite of "better"? "Worse." 5. A faithful dog is the most faithful of friends. 6. Most Spanish words of Gothic origin are

military terms, or personal names like Federico. 7. Greece and Rome were the two most celebrated nations of antiquity, one for the arts and genius, the other for its strength and greatness. 8. The silver mines of Potosí have produced for more than two centuries an incalculable wealth. 9. I prefer the old book to the new one. 10. The old men were watching the young men. 11. The house has nothing beautiful (about it).[1] 12. I had only one friend in the city. 13. Our bookstore was established in one of the most central streets. 14. The streets became constantly uglier as we left[2] the center of the town. 15. The price of the rags is greater the newer they are. 16. Why are we poor? Because we spend more than we earn, or because we earn less than we spend. 17. The servant returned earlier than we expected. 18. Acquaintance with[3] Spanish will be most useful for you. 19. I have sold all my best books. 20. Lincoln had not been a state governor nor a federal senator, the highest offices of the republic after that[4] of president. 21. Most of the houses were closed on account of the heat. 22. He studies more than anybody. 23. He possessed many religious paintings and engravings. 24. They traveled silently. 25. Further on, the amphitheater of mountains, some higher than others, all black and formidable, surrounded the plain. 26. San Felíu is a town of 10,000 souls and one of the richest and most important in the province. 27. Through the little narrow windows she saw the deep, blue bosom of the night. 28. Most Sundays I was invited to dine at my uncle's, a very rich old bachelor. 29. St. Paul's is the largest church in London. 30. The little girl was half dead from cold. 31. He entered the office in[5] worse humor than ever. 32. From the roof he saw more than fifty bell-towers. 33. The Spanish and English fleets met in the harbor of Vigo. 34. His words were half French, half German. 35. There is something superior in that young man. 36. The pinks and white roses were a lovely present. 37. We are friends; we were together at school.

[1] Omit. [2] alejarse de. [3] del. [4] el. [5] de.

CHAPTER VI

NUMERALS

149. Cardinals. See section 39.

1. Though **un** is omitted before **mil**, it is used in numbers above 1000:

31,000, **treinta y un mil**
101,000, **ciento un mil**

2. The plural of **uno** is **unos(as)**, which is used as an indefinite pronoun, see section 179, 3. Before plural nouns **unos(as)** has the meaning of *one*. **Se venden muchas tijeras: no quedan sino unas,** *We sell many scissors: only one pair is left.*

a. Before a cardinal number **unos(as)** conveys an idea of indefiniteness: **unos cincuenta,** *some fifty.*

3. **Cuatro** is used as an indefinite number. **El alguacil refirió en cuatro palabras todo lo que sabemos,** *The policeman related in a few words all that we know.*

150. Ordinals. See section 40.

1st	primero, -a (primo, -a)	15th	décimo quinto, -a
2d	segundo, -a	16th	décimo sexto, -a
3d	tercero, -a (tercio, -a)	17th	décimo séptimo, -a
4th	cuarto, -a	18th	décimo octavo, -a
5th	quinto, -a	19th	décimo nono, -a
6th	sexto, -a, *or* sesto, -a	20th	vigésimo, -a
7th	séptimo, -a, *or* sétimo, -a	21st	vigésimo primo, -a
8th	octavo, -a	22d	vigésimo segundo, -a
9th	noveno, -a (nono, -a)	23d	vigésimo tercio, -a
10th	décimo, -a	30th	trigésimo, -a
11th	undécimo, -a	40th	cuadragésimo, -a
12th	duodécimo, -a	50th	quincuagésimo, -a
13th	décimo tercio, -a	60th	sexagésimo, -a
14th	décimo cuarto, -a	70th	septuagésimo, -a

80th	octogésimo, -a	600th	sexcentésimo, -a
90th	nonagésimo, -a	700th	septingentésimo, -a
100th	centésimo, -a	800th	octingentésimo, -a
101st	centésimo primo, -a	900th	noningentésimo, -a
111th	centésimo undécimo, -a	1,000th	milésimo, -a
200th	ducentésimo, -a	2,000th	dosmilésimo, -a
300th	trecentésimo, -a	10,000th	diezmilésimo, -a
400th	cuadringentésimo, -a	1,000,000th	millonésimo, -a
500th	quingentésimo, -a		

a. The short forms **primo, tercio, nono,** are preferred in compound expressions. These may be written in one word, but both parts should agree in gender and number with the noun.

b. Only educated Spaniards are familiar with the ordinals above 20th. They are used in the prayer-book and in some special expressions, as **el quincuagésimo aniversario,** *the fiftieth anniversary.*

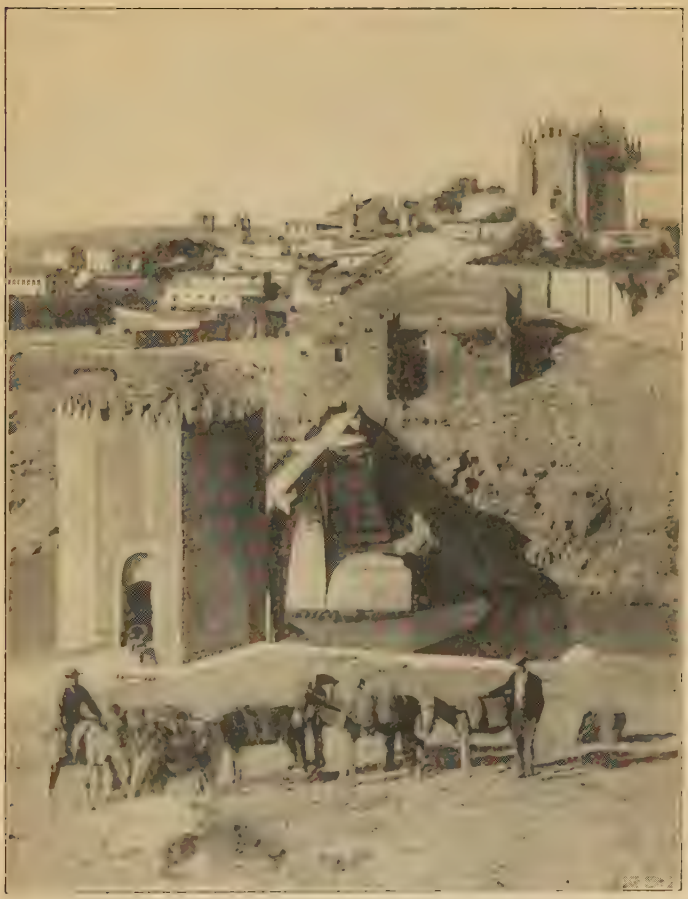
151. Fractions to and including one eleventh are formed by using a cardinal numeral for a numerator and an ordinal for a denominator.

un medio,	$\frac{1}{2}$	tres cuartos,	$\frac{3}{4}$	un octavo (ochavo),	$\frac{1}{8}$
un tercio,	$\frac{1}{3}$	un quinto	$\frac{1}{5}$	un noveno,	$\frac{1}{9}$
dos tercios,	$\frac{2}{3}$	un sexto,	$\frac{1}{6}$	un décimo,	$\frac{1}{10}$
un cuarto,	$\frac{1}{4}$	un séptimo,	$\frac{1}{7}$	un undécimo,	$\frac{1}{11}$

From and including one eleventh, the denominator of a fraction is formed by adding the termination **-avo** to the cardinal numeral.

un onzavo,	$\frac{1}{11}$	un diecinueveavo,	$\frac{1}{19}$
un dozavo,	$\frac{1}{12}$	un veintavo	$\frac{1}{20}$
un trezavo,	$\frac{1}{13}$	un veintiunavo,	$\frac{1}{21}$
un catorzavo,	$\frac{1}{14}$	un treintavo,	$\frac{1}{30}$
un quinzavo,	$\frac{1}{15}$	un centésimo *or* centavo,	$\frac{1}{100}$
un dieciseisavo,	$\frac{1}{16}$	un milésimo,	$\frac{1}{1000}$
un diecisieteavo,	$\frac{1}{17}$	un diezmilésimo	$\frac{1}{10000}$
un dieciochavo,	$\frac{1}{18}$	un millonésimo,	$\frac{1}{1000000}$

a. A frequent method in general conversational use of forming fractions is by introducing the word **parte**; as, **las dos terceras partes,** *two thirds*; **la vigésima parte,** *one twentieth.*



© by Underwood and Underwood

VISTA GENERAL DE TOLEDO

Toledo fue elegida como capital al dominar los godos en España

TOLEDO

1. ¿Cómo está situada la ciudad de Toledo?

2. ¿Por qué son tan altos los arcos del puente?

3. ¿Qué le parece la razón por la cual los godos eligieron a Toledo por su corte?

4. ¿Cree Vd. que en tiempos de los godos había un puénte para pasar el río?

5. ¿A qué raza pertenecían los godos?

6. ¿Tiene el idioma español palabras de origen godo?

7. Diga Vd. algunas.

8. ¿Cómo es que la mayor parte de ellas son voces referentes a la guerra o nombres personales?

9. Muchos grandes de España se jactan de sangre goda, ¿por qué?

10. Durante la revolución sudamericana los patriotas llamaban «godos» a sus enemigos, ¿por qué?

dominar, *to rule*
eligir, *to choose*
godo, m. *Goth, a German tribe*
grande, m. *noble, grandee*
jactarse, *to boast*
patriota, m. *patriot*
puente, m. or f. *bridge*
raza, f. *race*
referente, *referring*
revolución, f. *revolution*
sudamericano -a, *South American*
Tajo, m. *Tagus*

b. Derived from their use with a noun, the fractional numerals, some in the feminine form, others in the masculine, have special meanings.

una tercia, *twelve inches,* i.e. *one third of a yard* **(vara)**
un tercio, *a bale*
una cuarta, *nine inches, one quarter of a yard,* frequently used in business
medio, cuarto, ochavo, are names of coins.

See dictionary for meaning of this class of words.

c. The adjective **medio,** *half,* is used as a noun in calculations, otherwise the noun is **la mitad.** Note the difference between the two languages in the matter of the article and the position of **medio** in respect to the noun.

media hora, *half an hour*
una media dosis, *half a dose*
una hora y media, *an hour and a half*
tres pesos y medio, *three and a half dollars*
la mitad de la casa, *half of the house*

152. Collective Numerals.

un par, *a pair*	**una veintena,** *twenty, a score*
una decena, *ten*	**una sesentena,** *sixty*
una docena, *a dozen*	**una centena** or **un centenar,** *one hundred*
una quincena, *fifteen*	**un millar,** *one thousand*

a. The cardinals **ciento** and **mil** may also be used as collectives: **miles de aves,** *thousands of birds.*

b. In commercial language, to express rate, **ciento** and **millar** are the preferred forms.

a $4 ciento, *at $4 a hundred*
ladrillos a $15 millar, *bricks at $15 a thousand*

c. Collective numerals in **-ena** sometimes have an indefinite value: as, **una decena,** *about ten.*

d. Collectives require **de** before a following noun.

una veintena de caballeros, *a score of gentlemen*
una docena de huevos, *a dozen eggs*

153. Multiple Numerals.

simple, *single*
doble or **duplicado** or **dúplice**, *double, twofold*
triple or **triplicado** or **tríplice**, *triple, threefold*
cuádruplo or **cuadruplicado**, *quadruple, fourfold*
quíntuplo or **quintuplicado**, *quintuple, fivefold*
séxtuplo, *sixfold*
séptuplo, *sevenfold*
décuplo, *tenfold*
céntuplo or **centuplicado**, *a hundredfold*
múltiple, *manifold, multiple*

154. Arithmetical Signs.

+ más	× por	= es igual a
− menos	÷ dividido por	

Dos tercios más un medio son uno y un sexto.	*Two thirds plus one half are one and a sixth.*
¿Cuántas veces cabe el 6 en 54?	*How many times is 6 contained in 54?*
Dos por tres son seis.	*Two times three are six.*
¿Está bien la suma?	*Is the total correct?*
La suma (o el total) de 20 y 30 es igual a 50.	*The sum of 20 and 30 is equal to 50.*

155. Dimensions. In expressing dimension Spanish uses the verb **tener** with the following nouns and adjectives:

alto, *high*	**la altura** or **elevación**, *height*
largo, *long*	**la longitud** or **extensión**, *length*
ancho, *wide*	**la anchura** or **latitud**, *width*
profundo / **hondo** } *deep*	**la profundidad**, *depth*
grueso / **espeso** } *thick*	**el espesor**, *thickness*

The adjectives may be used in place of the nouns except as subject of the verb. Note the following methods of expression:

¿Qué anchura tiene el río? / ¿Cuántos pies tiene el río de { anchura? / ancho? } *How wide is the river?*

El río tiene { una anchura de media milla. / media milla { de ancho. / de anchura. } } *The river is half a mile wide.*

a. Expressions of dimension used as either attributive or predicate adjectives are preceded by **de**.

Una torre { **de 300 metros de** { **altura.** / **alto.** } / **alta de 300 metros.** }	*A tower 300 meters high.*
Guantes largos de catorce botones.	*Fourteen-button gloves.*
El tamaño de la caja es de tres pies de largo y de dos pies, tres pulgadas de ancho.	*The size of the box is three feet long by two feet three inches wide.*
Es hondo de ocho pulgadas.	*It is eight inches deep.*

156. Distance is expressed as follows:

¿Cuánto hay de Madrid a Sevilla?	*How far is it from Madrid to Seville?*
Dista de unos 560 kilómetros.	*It is about 560 kilometers distant.*
No hay cinco minutos de aquí a la iglesia.	*It is not five minutes' walk from here to the church.*

a. Adverbially, distance may be expressed by the preposition **a**.

a dos pasos de aquí, *two steps from here*
a una legua, *a league away*

157. Price requires the preposition **a**.

¿A cómo vende Vd. la tela?	*How do you sell the cloth?*
A dos pesos vara.	*At two dollars a yard.*
¡A perra chica[1] la buena naranja!	*A good orange for a cent.*

a. Estimates take the preposition **en**.

En dos arrobas de uvas apreció el gasto.	*He appraised the damage at two arrobas (50 lbs.) of grapes.*

b. Articles made or sold at a uniform weight or value have the double preposition **de a** before the rate.

sellos de a cinco centavos, *five-cent stamps*
una moneda de a 5 pesetas, *a coin worth five pesetas*
un cartucho de dinamita de a $2\frac{1}{2}$ kilos, *a dynamite cartridge weighing $2\frac{1}{2}$ kilos*

[1] A copper coin of 5 céntimos, worth about a cent of our money, is called a **perra chica** or **perrita**, also **perro chico**; the piece of 10 céntimos, being larger, is called a **perro gordo** or **perro grande**. The names are derived from the fact that the coins have on the obverse a representation of a lion holding a shield.

158. Measure is preceded by the definite article in Spanish, which however may be omitted, and **por** may be introduced.

El paño vale un peso	**la vara.** **vara.** **por vara.**	*The cloth is worth a dollar a yard.*

159. Rates involving an element of time are most commonly expressed by an adjective.

Ocho pesetas diarias.	*Eight pesetas a day.*
Un sueldo de $60 mensuales.	*A salary of $60 a month.*
Se calcula el consumo en ochenta mil toneladas anuales.	*The consumption is estimated at eighty thousand tons a year.*

a. Note also the following.

Cada seis meses.	*Every six months.*
Una vez por semana.	*Once a week.*
$40.000 anualmente.	*$40,000 yearly.*
Dos veces al día.	*Twice a day.*
Un día sí y otro no.	*Every other day.*
A perra chica uno.	*A cent apiece.*
Café por una peseta.	*A peseta's worth of coffee.*
A razón de ocho reales la docena.	*At the rate of eight reals a dozen.*
Una velocidad de 60 kilómetros por hora.	*A speed of 60 kilometers an hour.*
¿ Qué tanto por ciento ?	*What rate per cent ?*
Un descuento de 2 por 100.	*A discount of 2 %.*
Al tipo de 4,50 por 100.	*At the rate of $4\frac{1}{2}$ per cent.*
El tipo del interés es de 5 por ciento.	*The rate of interest is 5 per cent.*

160. Approximation. Numerical expressions are modified to express approximation as follows:

Cosa de dos horas.	*About two hours.*
Como de una vara.	*About a yard.*
Vale poco más o menos diez duros.	*It is worth about ten dollars.*
Tiene unos cincuenta años.	*He is some fifty years old.*
Tiene cincuenta y tantos años.	*He is fifty-odd years old.*
Tres mil y pico de pesetas.	*Three thousand and odd pesetas.*

a. With the hour of the day, **a eso de** is common: **a eso de las siete,** *about seven o'clock.*

EXERCISE 28

1. This bill amounts to sixteen thousand five hundred and twenty-nine pesetas. 2. He earns seven dollars a week, and pays fifty cents a day for his board. 3. We will allow a discount of three per cent for payment in cash. 4. The *fanega* is a Spanish measure which contains about a bushel and a half. 5. The population of this city amounts to about one million two hundred and one thousand. 6. One half is a fraction which has for denominator the number two and which consequently supposes (the) unity divided into two equal parts. 7. The Mediterranean Sea is thirty-five hundred kilometers long from east to west, and has a minimum width of a hundred and forty kilometers between Tunis and Sicily. 8. According to the metric system of weights a kilo is equal to two and one fifth pounds. 9. This room is fifteen feet long by twelve feet wide. 10. We have begun at the eighth line of the fifty-second page. 11. I want a dollar's worth of two-cent stamps. 12. The principal nave of the church measured 64 meters in length and 12 meters in width between the pillars. 13. The height of the arches above the floor was 24 meters. 14. During the first three years he used two thirds of his salary for the purchase of books. 15. He is about forty years old. 16. He is about five years older than I. 17. The Eiffel tower in Paris is more than three hundred meters high. 18. How much is this cloth worth a yard? 19. We paid three dollars a day at that hotel. 20. One fourth plus one third equals seven twelfths. 21. We arrived at the city at about eleven o'clock. 22. Columbus discovered America the twelfth of October, fourteen hundred and ninety-two. 23. The second of May is the Spanish national holiday. 24. At this price the shares return an interest of five and a quarter per cent. 25. The one-peseta piece is worth four reals, but there is no coin worth[1] a real. 26. He lives half a mile away. 27. The street car passes this corner every ten minutes. 28. There was in the park a circular pond about a hundred

[1] Omit: see section 157, *b*.

meters in diameter. 29. This hotel was a mile away from the station. 30. The pond was scarcely deeper than half a yard in its deepest part. 31. How does he sell the eggs? Thirty-five cents a dozen the fresh ones. 32. From the railway station coaches leave daily in summer for that village. 33. The production of manufactured cork amounts to two and a half million kilograms a year. 34. I have read this book a dozen times. 35. In 1892 we Americans celebrated the four-hundredth anniversary of the discovery of the New World. 36. The basis of the Spanish currency is the peseta which is nominally equal to nineteen and three tenths cents of our money, but there is always a discount in our favor. 37. There are about ten meters of this cloth; how much will you sell it for? At a dollar and a quarter a meter. 38. When shall we arrive in Granada? About nine o'clock if the train is not behind time. 39. The custom house appraises these cigars at two dollars and a half per hundred. 40. An express train leaves for that city every other hour. 41. The richest emerald mines of Colombia are situated about seventy-five miles north of Bogotá at an elevation of six thousand five hundred feet above sea level. 42. The Bolivian mines yield one sixth of the world's yearly production of tin. The metal sells at times as high as one thousand dollars a ton.

UN PERRO GORDO

CHAPTER VII

POSSESSIVES AND DEMONSTRATIVES

161. Possessives. See sections 37, 97, 98.

1. The indefinite use of the possessive adjective occurs also when the adjective stands in the predicate: **Son amigos nuestros,** *They are friends of ours*; and between a demonstrative and the noun: **este mi amigo,** *this friend of mine*; **ese su perro,** *that dog of yours.*

a. Note the expression **esta su casa,** *this your house*, in English, *my house*, a polite reference to one's own residence; see section 85.

2. With parts of the body and clothing, the definite article is frequently substituted for the possessive adjective. The personal pronoun of the indirect object form is used with the verb to indicate the person if necessary. **El peluquero le cortó el pelo,** *The barber cut his hair.* (See section 56, *b.*)

3. The possessive adjectives appear in several expressions like the following:

En torno suyo.	*Around him.*
En su busca.	*In search of him.*
A nuestro encuentro.	*To meet us.*
A su paso.	*As she passed.*
Miré a mi alrededor.	*I looked around me.*

162. Demonstratives. See section 34.

1. Referring to time, **este** denotes present time; **ese,** a recent period; and **aquel,** a remote time.

esta noche, *to-night*
esa tarde, *that afternoon*
aquel siglo, *that century*

2. **Ese** often implies contempt: **ese Gómez,** *that fellow Gómez.*

a. The phrase **de Dios** gives a satirical turn: **esas calles de Dios,** *the blessed streets.*

3. **Éste** means *the latter* (that thing last mentioned, the nearest); **aquél** means *the former.*

Tal distancia había entre el viejo y el mozo que nunca permitió aquél delante de gente ser llamado tío por éste.	*Such distance there was between the old man and the lad that the former never permitted himself before people to be called uncle by the latter.*

a. These pronouns are often used to make the subject of the verb evident.

Lorenzo esperó a la ventana la vuelta de Clara. Ésta llegó poco después.	*Lorenzo waited at the window Clara's return. She arrived a little while afterwards.*
El autor nos entera de que Guillermo y Carmen se aman, de que aquél elude hablar de matrimonio.	*The author informs us that William and Carmen are in love, that the former avoids speaking of marriage.*

4. The feminine forms **ésta** and **ésa,** referring to **ciudad** or **plaza** understood, frequently mean *this town* (*of mine*) and *that town* (*of yours*). The phrases **en (de, a) ésta** and **en (de, a) ésa** may sometimes be rendered simply *here* and *there.*

Los precios en ésta han sufrido una alza.	*Prices here have risen.*
Espero llegar mañana a ésa.	*I expect to reach your town tomorrow.*

5. As the neuter forms stand for an idea, all three, **esto, eso,** and **aquello,** may at times be rendered *that.*

¿ Qué es esto ?	*What is that ?* (which I have here).
¿ Qué es eso ?	*What is that ?* (near you).
Hace muchos años que sucedió aquello.	*That happened many years ago.*

a. The neuter forms refer only to unnamed things: **¿ Para qué sirve eso ?** *What is that good for ?* An object having been named, its gender is known: **¿ Cuál es su pluma ? Ésa.** *Which is your pen ? That one.*

b. Note the idiomatic expressions

por eso, *therefore;* **no por eso,** *not on that account*
en esto, *hereupon, at this moment*
esto de vivir en Madrid, *this matter of living in Madrid*
eso de morirse, *that idea of dying*
¿ Qué significaba aquello de llevarme a París ? *What did that statement about taking me to Paris mean ?*

c. Before a prepositional phrase or a relative clause the neuter article may replace the demonstrative:

lo de Castro, *the affair of Castro*
lo de ayer, *that (which happened) yesterday*
Bien sé lo que quiere, *I know very well what he wants.*

d. The expletive *that* of English is not required as a grammatical subject. **¡ Es bueno !** *That is fine !* **¡ Es interesante !** *That is interesting !*

6. The definite article replaces the demonstrative before a prepositional phrase or a relative clause, unless the relative is itself the object of a preposition. English has *that*, *the one*, *he*, *she*, etc.

El de la camisa limpia.	*The one with the clean shirt.*
La de Montejo.	*She of Montejo* (that is, Montejo's wife).
Ese cura es el que ofreció su vida por la de sus compañeros.	*That priest is the one who offered his life for that of his companions.*
Doña Eduarda es la que ha dicho esto.	*Doña Eduarda is the one* or *It is Doña Eduarda who has said this.*
Es Pepita aquélla a quien ama.	*Pepita is the one whom he loves.*

a. Note that the English possessive case when used without a noun requires for its translation this demonstrative use of the definite article: **mi perro y el de Juan,** *my dog and John's.*

b. In such expressions as *one of the* (—) *which*, Spanish prefers to arrange the words *one* (—) *of those which.*

Un telegrama de los que recibió.	*One of the telegrams which he received.*
Un curioso de los que habían acudido.	*One of the idlers who had come up.*

c. This construction in the predicate preceded by **de** means *sort* or *kind of.*

Aquellos ojos eran de los que no pueden olvidarse.	*Those eyes were the kind that cannot be forgotten.*
Éste no es de los que se marchan sin pagar.	*This man is not the sort that goes off without paying.*

d. In an attributive prepositional phrase the demonstrative is commoner.

Flores raras de ésas que sólo surgen de ruinas.	*Rare flowers of the sort that only spring from ruins.*
Un chiste algo amoroso de éstos que suelen permitirse los andaluces.	*A rather loose jest of the kind that Andalusians are accustomed to indulge in.*

EXERCISE 29

1. There is no more; that is all. 2. Who is that fellow? The one with the green hat near the door. 3. Are these your books? No, they are Henry's. 4. I have read the works of Cervantes and those of Calderon. I prefer the former to the latter. 5. My land is worth more than my neighbor's. 6. When you arrive in your town, remember that you have left friends of yours here. 7. The prices in this (market) have fallen. How are they in yours? 8. He who lives in the country is called a countryman; but those who live in the city are citizens. 9. He lent me more money than I asked. 10. Doña Ana was going to pass when her husband called her. "Listen," said the latter. 11. Those books are mine; and I have yours. Let us exchange. 12. Why did you let that tramp come into the yard? 13. These friends of mine have come from the country to see the celebrations. 14. That day I was happy. 15. Those horses are the ones we saw yesterday. 16. Henry remembered his parents, his friend Carlos, the bedroom where the pictures were: he wished he could see all that. 17. This matter of changing the name of streets is a mania in all those blessed towns. 18. Your sister and Peter's are in the same class. 19. That affair on Santiago Street was scandalous. 20. Those two gentlemen are

brothers; the one to whom I introduced you was my partner. 21. That business of yours had very good success; but your cousin's had very little. 22. I shall write to my folks and[1] ask[2] them for money. 23. Sir, I am not the girl's betrothed; I am a relative of hers. 24. That is what I command you. 25. We received letters from our brother and sister: hers are more interesting than his. 26. Your duties are those of a daughter. 27. He placed himself in a seat opposite mine. 28. At the house of the ladies of Fernández they have spoken very badly of me. 29. Since those days my studies have advanced very much. 30. I asked him if the button was his. 31. Don Francisco was the first of his people who did not serve the king. 32. Anita is the one who has fallen sick. 33. Bring some apples of the kind that uncle likes best.[3] 34. One of the gentlemen who were present at the party related a long story about his business. 35. This fruit is one of that kind which is not known[4] in Europe, and therefore most people in Spain do not know its name. 36. What is the news in your town? Nothing is going on here; it is always the same.[5] 37 Father and son parted; the former to return to his business, the latter to go to his school. 38. He invested his wife's money[6] in the shares of the Eastern Railway, and his own in those of the Northern. 39. One of the friends who came to the wedding brought his children and his sister's. 40. Dealing with rascals of that stamp, who lie at every opportunity, one does not know what to expect.[7]

[1] Omit.
[2] Use present participle.
[3] **más.**
[4] Use reflexive verb.
[5] **lo de siempre.**
[6] **caudal,** *m.*
[7] **atenderse a.**

CHAPTER VIII

RELATIVES

163. Relative Pronouns.

que { *which* / *that* / *who* / *whom* } referring to { 1, things / 2, persons, when not governed by a preposition }

quien, quienes, *who, whom*, referring to persons only

el que, la que, los que, las que / **el cual, la cual, los cuales, las cuales** { *who* / *which* / *that* } referring to both persons and things

lo que, lo cual, *which*, referring to clauses or ideas

cuyo, cuya / **cuyos, cuyas** { *whose* / *of whom* / *of which* } possessive relative adjective

cuanto, cuanta / **cuantos, cuantas** { *as much . . . as* / *as many . . . as* / *all the . . . that* } indefinite relative adjective and pronoun

164. General Rules. 1. Relative pronouns must not be omitted in Spanish though omitted in English: **el libro que tengo,** *the book I have.*

2. Prepositions governing relative pronouns must stand before them, not at the end of the clause as in English: **la casa en que vivo,** *the house that I live in.*

3. The student must beware a combination of the two foregoing peculiarities of English: **el asunto de que Vd. me hablaba,** *the affair you were telling me about.*

4. Relative pronouns must stand as close as possible to their antecedents:

Se quedó en casa de don Casto el oficial que era un teniente.	*The officer, who was a lieutenant, remained at Don Casto's.*

5. The verb after a relative pronoun takes the person and number of the antecedent, while the past participle, except when used with **haber,** has the gender and number of the antecedent in accord with the rules for the agreement of adjectives. (See section 140.)

Iré yo que soy más joven.	*I will go who am younger.*
El estrecho y la isla que fueron descubiertas por Bering.	*The strait and the island which were discovered by Bering.*

a. Some writers prefer the third person of the verb when the relative occurs after a predicate noun or pronoun.

Yo soy el gitano que dió sus señas al capitán general.	*I am the gypsy that gave his description to the captain general.*

b. If the relative has indefinite force (see section 166, 3) the verb will be in the third person: **Quien va soy yo,** *I am the one who is going.*

6. In a relative clause the verb frequently stands before the subject.

Aquel hombre disparó el tiro a que han contestado las tropas.	*That man fired the shot to which the soldiers have replied.*
María Victoria es una muchacha muy linda a quien ama Juan, el conde de Peñafiel.	*Maria Victoria is a very pretty girl, whom John, the count of Peñafiel, loves.*

165. Que is invariable. After prepositions it refers only to things.

La casa que compré.	*The house which I bought.*
Los hombres que vimos.	*The men whom we saw.*
Tiró la pluma con que escribía.	*He threw away the pen with which he was writing.*

a. **Donde,** *where,* may replace **que** governed by a preposition: **la ciudad donde vive,** *the city in which he lives.*

b. **Que** instead of **cuando** is customary in relative expressions defining time: **el día que llegué a Madrid,** *the day when I reached Madrid.*

166. Quien, quienes, in modern Spanish refers only to persons or personified things and abstractions.

Encontramos a Doña Blanca, quien salía de misa.	*We met Doña Blanca, who was coming from mass.*
No era la humildad cristiana quien había elegido aquellos tapices de rojo terciopelo.	*It was not Christian humility that had selected those tapestries of red velvet.*

1. After prepositions, **quien** replaces **que** when referring to persons.

Ese hijo de un posadero que viene a vuestra cabeza y a quien llaman Murat.	*That son of an innkeeper who comes at your head and whom they call Murat.*
Entonces entraron en el comedor los caballeros con quienes tuve la conversación.	*Then there entered the dining-room the gentlemen with whom I had the conversation.*

2. A relative clause concerning persons, not restrictive of its antecedent, is usually introduced by **quien.**

Escribo al Señor Romero, quien está en Chile.	*I am writing to Mr. Romero, who is in Chile.*
Entregó las monedas al abogado, quien las pesó una por una.	*He handed the coins to the lawyer, who weighed them one by one.*

a. **El cual** (or **el que**) may also be used in nonrestrictive clauses.

Pasó el gitano, el cual se paró a ver la tropa.	*The gypsy came along and stopped to see the soldiers.*

3. In indefinite expressions no antecedent is required for **quien.**

No tengo a quien dirigirme.	*I have nobody to apply to.*
¿Hay quien sabe?	*Is there anybody who knows?*
Quien mucho abarca poco aprieta.	*He who takes much in hand grasps feebly* (or *accomplishes little*).

a. In expressions corresponding to English *he who, they who the one who*, etc., **quien** may be said to include its own antecedent.

Rodrigo fué quien acompañó a la niña.	*Roderick was the one who accompanied the girl.*

4. When the antecedent is necessarily separated from the relative, **quien** may show the correct antecedent.

Bolívar es el héroe vencedor en Boyacá y en Carabobo quien fundó a Colombia.	*Bolívar is the hero, victor at Boyacá and Carabobo, who founded Colombia.*

NOTE. For uses 3 and 4 of **quien** the pronoun **el que** may be substituted.

Mi reino y mis tesoros daré al que salve a mi hija.	*I will give my kingdom and my treasures to him who saves my daughter.*

5. As correlatives, **quién . . . quién** are used idiomatically as indefinite pronouns, *one . . . another*; in the plural, *some . . . others.*

Quién había contado los amores de Napoleón, quién la noche del dos de mayo en Madrid.
One had related the love affairs of Napoleon, another the night of the second of May in Madrid.

Los pescadores dormían en varias actitudes, quiénes de bruces, quiénes respaldados.
The fishermen were sleeping in various positions, some face downwards, some on their backs.

a. Note that as correlatives **quién . . . quién** bear the written accent.

167. **El cual, el que,** are employed as follows:

1. When the relative and the antecedent are separated by other words, the gender and number of the relative serves to show to which word it refers.

Examinó las colgaduras de la alcoba, las cuales eran de seda.
He examined the hangings of the bedroom, which were of silk.

He visto a la hija del Señor Robledo, la cual está ahora en la ciudad.
I have seen Mr. Robledo's daughter, who is now in the city.

Don Roque, un viejo parecido a Bismarck, con el cual nombre se le conocía.
Don Roque, an old man resembling Bismarck, by which name he was known.

2. After prepositions, especially those of more than one syllable and compound prepositions; but after **a, con, de, en,** the simple relatives **que** and **quien** are more frequent.

Tales son las cosas sobre las cuales quiero su opinión.
Such are the things about which I wish your opinion.

Corrió la madre a la calle, en medio de la cual se encontró con su hija.
The mother ran into the street, in the middle of which she met her daughter.

Metieron al herido en la casa delante de la cual había caído.
They put the wounded man in the house in front of which he had fallen.

Escogiéronse de los nuestros once campeones, entre los cuales el más célebre era Diego García de Paredes.
From our men were chosen eleven champions, among whom the most famous was Diego García de Paredes.

3. The neuter forms **lo cual, lo que,** refer to clauses or ideas. These should not be confused with **lo que** in the sense of *that which* or *what.*

Se le apareció el cerdo de San Antón, por lo cual determinó meterse a guardador de puercos.	*There appeared to him St. Anthony's swine, on which account he decided to become a swineherd.*
Tal es nuestro famoso Capitán Veneno; por lo que suplico a Vd. tenga paciencia para aguantarlo algunas semanas.	*Such is our famous Captain Poison; wherefore I beg you to have patience to put up with him a few weeks.*
Sus simpatías estuvieron por los partidarios de la emancipación americana, lo que le hizo sospechoso a las autoridades españolas.	*His sympathies were for the partisans of American freedom, which made him a suspicious character to the Spanish authorities.*

But

¿Es verdad lo que oigo?	*Is that which (what) I hear true?*
Repita Vd. lo que dijo.	*Repeat what he said.*
Me conformaba con lo que era ley de la naturaleza, según el médico.	*I complied with that which was a law of nature according to the doctor.*

a. The phrase **a lo que** means *according to*, or *as.*

a lo que me contó, *according to what he told me*
a lo que me parece, *as it seems to me*

b. **lo que es,** *as for, as to.*

Lo que es el tío Lucas no se marcha.	*As for uncle Lucas, he does not go.*

168. Cual without the article is correlative with **tal.**

Tal era su conducta cual era de esperarse.	*His conduct was such as was to be expected.*
Tal o cual colocación.	*Some position or other.*
Tal para cual.	*Tit for tat.*

1. **Cuál . . . cuál,** as correlatives, mean *one . . . another*; **cuáles . . . cuáles,** *some . . . others.* See section 166, 5.

En cuanto a armas, cuál llevaba sable, cuál espadín de etiqueta.	*As for arms, one wore a saber, another a court rapier.*
Tengo muchos libros, cuáles de historia, cuáles de poesía.	*I have many books, some of history, others of poetry.*

EL PEÑÓN DE GIBRALTAR

Gibraltar (o gebel-Tarik) perpetúa el nombre de Tarik, general árabe, quien desembarcó aquí en 711, habiendo venido de Marruecos. Venció a don Rodrigo, rey de los visigodos, en las orillas del río Guadalete y sometió la mayor parte de España. Los árabes fundaron el califato de occidente, cuya capital fue Córdoba durante los siglos VIII a XI

EL PEÑÓN DE GIBRALTAR

1. ¿Cómo está separada Europa de Africa?

2. ¿Por qué los romanos llamaron Columnas de Hércules a las montañas que forman el estrecho de Gibraltar?

3. ¿Dónde está la ciudad de Gibraltar?

4. ¿En qué parte del peñón está situada?

5. ¿Qué se ve en el puerto?

6. ¿Quién fué Tarik?

7. ¿Dónde venció al último rey godo?

8. ¿Por qué fué Córdoba la ciudad más importante de España durante tres siglos?

9. La mayor parte de las palabras de origen árabe en el idioma español, por ejemplo alfombra, se refieren a cosas de la vida civilizada, ¿por qué?

10. ¿Cómo es que la plaza fuerte de Gibraltar pertenece ahora a Inglaterra?

califa, m. *caliph*
califato, m. *caliphate*
columna, f. *column*
durante, *during*
ejemplo, m. *example*
estrecho, m. *strait*
gebel, *Arabic word for mountain*
Marruecos, *Morocco*
occidente, m. *West*
orilla, f. *bank*
peñón, m. *rock*
perpetuar, *to perpetuate*
plaza fuerte, f. *fortress*
someter, *to subjugate*
visigodo, m. *Visigoth*

2. **Cual** also appears as a relative adverb in the sense of *as* or *like.*

Un paje sonrosado y coloradete cual una muchacha.	*A page blushing and red as a girl.*

a. **Cual si** before clauses, *as if*; see section 112, *d.*

169. Cuyo, like other Spanish possessive adjectives, agrees in gender and number with the thing possessed.

Los porteros, cuyo uniforme admiraba Anselmo.	*The gatekeepers, whose uniform Anselmo admired.*
El caballero cuyas cartas ha traído Vd.	*The gentleman whose letters you have brought.*
Un billete de lotería con cuya venta podría obtener unas cuantas piezas de cobre.	*A lottery ticket by the sale of which he might get a few coppers.*

a. When referring to the body or clothing, **a quien** as indirect object replaces **cuyo.**

Por ella buscó un lance con el conde a quien ha roto la cabeza.	*For her sake he picked a quarrel with the count, whose head he has broken.*

170. Cuanto takes the gender and number of the noun to which it refers. It is equivalent to **todos los que, todo lo que,** etc.

Estoy muy malo según la opinión de cuantos doctores me han visto.	*I am very ill according to the opinion of all the doctors who have seen me.*
Le hice cuantas preguntas quise.	*I asked him all the questions that* (or *as many questions as*) *I wished.*

EXERCISE 30

1. He gave the coins which he took from his pocket to the children. 2. The gentleman who was sitting at my right rose and shook hands with my daughter, who had come in a moment before. 3. To-day I saw my friend's daughter who has been sick. 4. The sexton locked the door near which we were standing. 5. I gave John the gold coins, who put them in his pocket. 6. We found ourselves in a handsome parlor, on whose walls was a rich

collection of paintings. 7. "Don't you see me?" said Victor, for it was he who spoke. 8. He had three dogs with which he spent a great deal of time. 9. On the table he found letters for different persons, and one whose address said, "To my dear Joseph." 10. The people were very merry: one was singing, another dancing. 11. That land I was telling you about is for sale. 12. The ladies you spoke to are Mexicans. 13. The father cried when he saw the ugly building in which his son was a prisoner. 14. A gentleman who said he would return soon has just left this card. 15. They gave prizes to all those who won them. 16. We hunted in the dictionary for all the words which we did not know. 17. The girl's mother was sick in the hospital, on which account she lived alone with her uncle. 18. Not many days ago I received a letter in which a certain friend of mine asked me for money. 19. He appeared like one who has lost his last dollar. 20. The piano which she is playing belongs to a man whose daughter has died. 21. It was Mary who selected the cloth. 22. The boy did not know his lesson, which displeased the teacher very much. 23. He promised him all the money that he had. 24. I know whom you are talking about, Guzman's wife. 25. All that I have is yours. 26. He asked the maidservant, "Was it you who rang?" 27. She answered, "It was not I who rang." 28. To you I owe all that I am. 29. The servant under (a) whose care he was gave him a glass of water. 30. To-day should arrive here the first regiment of infantry, which spent the night in Gerona. 31. He had written several works, in which he treated political questions. 32. His son was Philip the Second, on whose realms the sun never set. 33. One more, another less, all dream of the probability of great wealth. 34. It is all that I have to tell you. 35. He who distributes the letters to the houses is called the postman. 36. We were very busy on the day when he came. 37. The prisoner saw the daughter of the Moorish governor, of whose beauty he had heard.[1]

[1] tenía noticias.

CHAPTER IX

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS

171. ¿ **quién** ? *who ?* ¿ **qué** ? *what ?*
¿ **a quién** ? *whom ?* ¿ **cuál** ? *which ? what ?*
¿ **de quién** ? *whose ?* ¿ **cuánto** ? *how much ?*

a. The interrogatives require the written accent to distinguish them from the relatives.

172. **Quién (quiénes)** refers only to persons.

¿ **Quién es Vd.** ? *Who are you ?*
¿ **Sabe quién soy** ? *Do you know who I am ?*
¡ **Ahí están** ! — ¿ **Quiénes** ? *There they are ! — Who ?*

1. Its objective case is **a quién.**

¿ **A quién hablaba** ? *To whom was he talking ?*
¿ **A quiénes vió Vd.** ? *Whom did you see ?*

2. Its possessive case is **de quién.**

¿ **De quién es aquella casa** ? *Whose house is that ?*

a. The phrase **de quién** is seldom used except in the predicate after **ser.**

¿ **De quién es la casa que habita Vd.** . *Whose house do you live in ?*

b. The form **cúyo** was formerly used as an interrogative, but is now obsolescent. ¿ **Cúyo es el perro** ? *Whose dog is it ?* Better ¿ **De quién es el perro** ?

c. Many English expressions containing *whose* will be rendered by the indirect object.

¿ **A quién compró Vd. el caballo** ? *Whose horse did you buy ?* more strictly *From whom did you buy the horse ?*

173. **Qué** is invariable and may be used either as an adjective or as a pronoun.

¿ Qué dice ?	*What does he say ?*
¿ Qué libro tiene Vd. ?	*What book have you ?*

174. **Cuál (cuáles)** indicates choice.

¿ Cuál es la fecha ?	*What is the date ?*
¿ Cuáles son los meses del año ?	*What are the months of the year ?*
¿ Cuál de los libros prefiere Vd. ?	*Which of the books do you prefer ?*
¿ Cuál de ustedes le ha visto ?	*Which of you have seen him ?*

a. **Qué** in contrast with **cuál** calls for a definition.

¿ Qué es la geografía ?	*What is geography ?*
¿ Cuál es la mejor geografía ?	*Which is the best geography ?*

b. Though **cuál** may be used as an adjective, it is preferable to use it only as a pronoun: not **¿ Cuáles amigos vienen ?** but **¿ Cuáles de los amigos vienen ?** *Which friends are coming ?*

175. **Cuánto (cuánta, -os, -as).**

¿ Cuánto vale ?	*How much is it worth ?*
¿ Cuánto cuesta ?	*How much does it cost ?*
¿ Cuántos libros tiene la biblioteca ?	*How many books has the library ?*
¿ Cuántas señoras hay ?	*How many ladies are there ?*

176. Interrogative idioms worthy of note are —

1. **¿ Qué tal ?** *What kind of ?*

¿ Qué tal cuarto le dieron a Vd. ?	*What sort of room did they give you ?*
¿ Qué tales son las flores ?	*What kind of flowers are they ?*

a. Perhaps more common in the same sense is **¿ qué clase de ?**

¿ Qué clase de hombre es el marqués ?	*What kind of a man is the marquis ?*
¿ Qué clase de gente hay aquí ?	*What sort of people are there here ?*

NOTE. **¿ Qué tal ?** is also used as a familiar greeting: *Hello*, or more courteously, **¿ Qué tal sigue Vd. ?** *How are you getting on ?*

2. **¿ Qué cosa ?** in place of simple **qué.**

¿ Qué cosa quiere ?	*What does he want ?*

3. **¿A qué?** *for what purpose? why?*

¿A qué estas notas lúgubres?	*Why these mournful notes?*
¿A qué viene esta orden?	*For what purpose is this order?*

4. **¿Qué tanto?** in place of **cuánto.**

¿Qué tanto dista el pueblo?	*How far is the town?*

177. Exclamations. 1. **¡Qué!** is used in exclamations,

(i) Before nouns with the meaning of *what* or *what a*, without the indefinite article:

¡Qué suerte!	*What luck!*
¡Qué hombre!	*What a man!*

a. When an adjective modifies the noun, **tan** or **más** may intensify the adjective.

¡Qué niña tan guapa!	*What a pretty girl!*
¡Qué pies tan fríos!	*What cold feet!*
¡Qué tinta más mala!	*What poor ink!*

(ii) Before adjectives or adverbs with the meaning of *how*:

¡Qué bueno es Vd.!	*How good you are!*
¡Qué mal habla!	*How badly he speaks!*

2. **¡Qué de . . . !** before nouns means *how many.*

¡Qué de pobres hay!	*How many poor there are!*

3. **¡Cuánto!** is shortened to **cuán** before adjectives and adverbs, but not before comparatives, verbs or nouns.

¡Cuánto sabe!	*How much he knows!*
¡Cuántas cosas le diría!	*How many things I would tell you!*
¡Cuán dichosa es ella!	*How fortunate she is!*
¡Cuánto más dichosa es su hermana!	*How much happier is her sister!*
¡Cuán lejos le parecía todo!	*How far away everything seemed to him!*

a. **Lo que** is sometimes used for **cuánto.**

¡Si él supiera lo que le quiero!	*(I wish) he knew how much I love him!*
¡Lo que nos divertiremos!	*What a good time we shall have!*

EXERCISE 31

1. Who are you? 2. What have you? 3. Whose is it? 4. What is that? 5. Which pencil have you? 6. How much is it worth? 7. How many have you? 8. To whom were you talking? 9. Which door is open? 10. What time was it? 11. What a very lucky man! 12. Who is that young man? 13. Whose hat has John? 14. How happy they are! 15. With whom have they lived? 16. Which are my books and which are yours? 17. What is the price? 18. Which do you wish? 19. What kind of a dog is it? 20. What kind of a book do you want? 21. What do you want for it? 22. For whom are these letters? 23. One of these packages, I don't know which, is for you. 24. Is it true what he says? 25. What is the way to (de) Cádiz? 26. What are you talking about? 27. Which street is the station on? 28. What kind of meat will you have? 29. We have all kinds of books. Which will you have? 30. What vegetables are there on the bill of fare? 31. Have they told you what he has done? 32. Do you know who that gentleman is? 33. What language do you speak? 34. What kind of money do you want? 35. How many five-cent stamps do you want? 36. How much does he charge? 37. Whom do you think I met last night? My friend from Córdoba. 38. Whom are you waiting for? 39. How many plans! How many calculations! 40. What day was that? 41. How glad I am! 42. Tell me, which one gave me these flowers? 43. How horrible all this is! 44. How easy it is to give advice!

CHAPTER X

INDEFINITE EXPRESSIONS

178. Indefinites. The Spanish indefinite pronouns and adjectives are

alguien, *somebody, anybody*	**nadie,** *nobody*
alguno, *some, any*	**ninguno,** *no, none*
algo, *something, anything*	**nada,** *nothing*
cosa, *thing*	**otra cosa,** *something else*
mucho, *much*	**poco,** *little;* **un poco,** *a little*
muchos, *many*	**pocos,** *few;* **algunos,** *a few*
unos, *some, a pair*	**unos cuantos,** *a few*
uno y otro, *both*	**uno u otro,** *either*
ambos, los dos, *both*	**ni uno ni otro,** *neither*
otro, *another*	**el otro,** *the other;* **los demás,** *the others*
alguno que otro, *occasional*	**ajeno,** *another's, others'*
cada, *each*	**cada uno** } *each one*
todo, *every, all*	**cada cual** }
tal, *such*	**un tal,** *a certain;* **el tal,** *the said*

These words may be conveniently studied from the English point of view as in the following sections.

179. Some — Any — No — Not A. 1. The absence of the definite article before a noun denoting substances implies a part of the substance.

¿ Tiene Vd. pan ?	*Have you any bread?*
¿ Quiere Vd. legumbres ?	*Do you wish some vegetables?*

a. The negative of the above is expressed by the negative verb.

No tengo pan.	*I have no bread.*
No quiero legumbres.	*I do not wish any vegetables.*

2. **Alguno,** *some*; **ninguno,** *no*; or **no . . . alguno** (after the noun).

Algún día.	*Some day.*
Ningún hombre.	*No man.*
No veo hombre alguno.	*I see no man;* or *I don't see a single man.*

3. **Unos,** *some*; more indefinite than **algunos**; often of things in pairs.

Unos ojos muy grandes.	*A pair of very large eyes.*
Unos pantalones.	*A pair of trousers.*

4. **Lo, la, los, las,** before **hay** and other verbs expressing partitive ideas as in 1, signify *some.*

¿Hay manzanas? Sí, las hay en la mesa.	*Are there any apples? Yes, there are some on the table.*
¿Tiene Vd. pan? Lo tengo.	*Have you any bread? I have some.*
Con su señora (los que la tenían).	*With their wives (those who had one).*

5. **Alguno que otro** and **uno que otro** mean *occasional, some or other.*

Alguno que otro pretexto.	*Some pretext or other.*
Alguna que otra mirada.	*An occasional glance.*
Mi vapor hace la carrera de América sólo una que otra vez.	*My steamer goes to America only occasionally.*

180. Some of — None of.

Algunos de mis amigos.	*Some of my friends.*
Ninguno (ningunos) de los libros.	*Not one (none) of the books.*

181. Somebody — Nobody.

Alguien viene.	*Somebody is coming.*
Nadie sabe.	*Nobody knows.*

a. **Alguien** and **nadie** cannot be used before limiting prepositional phrases as in section 180.

182. Something — Nothing, *algo — nada.*

Más vale algo que nada.	*Something is better than nothing.*

See section 210, 3, for adverbial use. See also 147, 2 and 277, 4.

a. **Alguna cosa** and **una cosa** are used for *something*, **ninguna cosa** for *nothing*, in some expressions.

¿ Quiere Vd. que le diga una cosa ?	*Do you wish me to tell you something ?*

NOTE. When **ninguno, nadie,** or **nada** or any other negative is used after the verb, it is necessary to put **no** before it. See section 212, 2.

No tengo nada / **Nada tengo**	*I have nothing.*
No conozco a nadie.	*I know nobody.*
Nadie me conoce.	*Nobody knows me.*
No ha adquirido ninguna cosa.	*He has purchased nothing.*

183. Else.

Otra cosa.	*Something else.*
Nada más.	*Nothing else.*

184. Much — Many, *mucho, muchos.*

Mucho azúcar.	*Much sugar.*
Muchos hombres.	*Many men.*

a. Very much is **muchísimo.**

b. Similar to English *a great deal, plenty*, etc. are such expressions as the following:

gran parte: **Fusilaron a gran parte de personajes influyentes.**	*They executed many influential persons.*
gran número: **En el Congreso se ha notado la ausencia de gran número de diputados.**	*In the Congress was observed the absence of many members.*
una porción de: **El chico dió a Juan una porción de golpes.**	*The boy gave John plenty of blows.*

185. Little — Few, *poco, pocos.*

a little, **un poco de**

a few { **algunos** / **unos cuantos** / **un par de** (*couple*) / **cuatro** (see section 149, 3)

poca leche, *little milk*	**algunas palabras,** *a few words*
pocas naranjas, *few oranges*	**unos cuantos limones,** *a few lemons*
un poco de dinero, *a little money*	**un par de horas,** *a couple of hours*

a. A little as an adverb is more frequently ***un poquito***: **Hablo español un poquito,** *I speak Spanish a little.*

186. Both, *ambos, los dos, las dos, uno y otro.*

Ambas manos.	*Both hands.*
Traiga Vd. pescado para los dos.	*Bring fish for (us) both.*
Uno y otro sexo.	*Both sexes.*

a. For *both . . . and*, as correlatives, see section 236.

187. Either . . . Neither, *uno u otro, ni uno ni otro,* and their declined forms.

Uno u otro puede venir.	*Either may come.*
No saben la verdad ni uno ni otro.	*Neither knows the truth.*

a. For the number of the verb see section 261, 4.

b. Neither . . . nor, as correlatives, **ni . . . ni**; *either . . . or*, **o . . . o**; see section 236.

188. Other.

1. **El otro,** *the other.*

2. **Otro,** *another* (always without the indefinite article): **otra vez,** *another time, again, encore.*

3. **Los demás,** *the others* (i.e. the remainder).

Cuando mi padre salió del cuarto, los demás me hicieron muchas preguntas.	*When my father left the room, the others asked me many questions.*

4. **Ajeno,** *another's, other's.*

en casa ajena, *in another's house* **lo ajeno,** *other people's property*

5. With numerals and adjectives of quantity, **otro** precedes.

Otros diez.	*Ten others.*
Otro tanto.	*As much more.*
Otros muchos.	*As many others.*
Van cuatro o cinco señoras y otras tantas señoritas.	*Four or five ladies are going and as many misses.*

189. Each: *cada* (invariable).

Cada uno or **cada cual.**	*Each one.*
Cada uno de nosotros.	*Each one of us.*
Callamos, quedando cada cual con sus ideas.	*We were silent, each one having his own ideas.*

190. Each Other. This idea is expressed by the plural of the reflexive verb. (See section 257 for conjugation.)

Nos veremos.	*We shall see each other.*
Se odian.	*They hate each other.*

By adding **uno y otro, uno a otro, uno de otro,** and the declined forms (also with the definite article, **el uno el otro**), great precision may be obtained.

Se temen el uno al otro.	*They fear each other (one man another).*
Se aman unos a otras.	*They love each other (men and women).*
No se acuerdan la una de la otra.	*They do not remember each other (one woman another).*

191. Every. 1. **Todo** (without article): **toda mujer,** *every woman.*

2. In expressions of time with the article and plural: **todos los sábados,** *every Saturday*; **todas las noches,** *every night.*

3. In phrases expressing frequency **cada** is used.

cada diez minutos, *every ten minutes* — **cada dos horas,** *every two hours*

4. **Todo el mundo,** *everybody.*

a. Before a relative, **todo** alone: **todo el que cae en nuestro poder,** *everybody who falls into our power.*

5. **Todo** (neuter), *everything.*

a. When **todo** is the direct object of a verb, **lo** before the verb indicates it: **Mi padre lo perdió todo,** *My father lost everything.*

192. All: *todo* (with the definite article between it and the noun).

todo el día, *all day*	**toda la casa,** *the whole house*
todos los señores, *all the men*	**todo Madrid,** *all Madrid*

193. Such: *tal* (without the indefinite article), ***semejante.***

Tal día como hoy.	*Such a day as to-day.*
Tales son las cosas.	*Such are the things.*
Semejante disparate.	*Such a blunder.*
No he visto a semejante hombre.	*I have not seen such a man (as he).*

194. A Certain. 1. **Cierto** (without the indefinite article): **cierto hombre,** *a certain man.*

2. **Un tal García,** *a certain Garcia, one Garcia.*

3. **No sé qué** (lit. *I do not know what*): **no sé qué día de agosto,** *on a certain day in August.*

195. The Said: *el tal, dicho, referido.*

el tal López, *the said Lopez*	**las referidas madre e hija,** *the said mother and daughter*
la tal comedia, *the said comedy*	
dicho príncipe, *the said prince*	

196. Indefinite Subject. When the doer of an action is indefinite, Spanish uses —

1. The reflexive verb. (See section 272.)

2. The third person plural of the verb.

Dicen.	*They say.*
Llaman a la puerta.	*There is a knock at the door.*

3. **Uno**; sometimes **persona,** in the negative; less frequently, **hombre** and **gente.**

En un instante puede uno coger una gran rama de violetas.	*In a moment one can gather a big bunch of violets.*
¿No te acuerdas de uno que tenía un estanco en la calle de Peregrinos?	*Don't you remember a man who had a tobacco shop in Peregrinos Street?*
No quedó persona a vida.	*Nobody remained alive.*
Llegar hombre a casa y no poder subir a su cuarto, no es cosa de risa para gente cansada.	*For a man to reach home and not be able to get into his room is no joke for a tired person.*

4. Whenever a fictitious name is preferable, as John Doe, or Mr. or Miss So-and-so, Spanish uses **fulano, Don Fulano de Tal, mengano,** or **zutano.**

Fulano y Zutana han preguntado por Vd.	*Mr. So-and-so and Miss So-and-so have inquired for you.*

197. Ever joined to adverbs and pronouns is **quiera,** present subjunctive of **querer.**

1. **Dondequiera que iba,** *wherever he used to go.*

2. **Quienquiera que sea,** *whoever it may be.*

3. **Cualquiera (cualesquiera),** *any* in sense that does not require negation, *any you please.*

Es un modo de vivir como otro cualquiera.	*It is a way of earning one's living like any other.*
Cualquiera de los dos.	*Either one of the two.*

a. As an adjective **cualquiera** may drop the final vowel before a noun.

cualquier día, *any day* **de cualquier modo,** *in some fashion*

b. **un cualquiera,** *a person of no account, a nobody.*
The plural of this expression is **unos cualquieras.**

EXERCISE 32

1. Have you any money? Very little. 2. We have no Spanish books. 3. I wish some white paper and black ink. 4. I am going to buy some good trousers. 5. No woman knows. 6. There is something which I do not understand. 7. Somebody is knocking at the door. 8. It is none of my acquaintances. 9. Some of the Frenchmen rose. 10. It is nothing. 11. Has anybody come? No, nobody. 12. Many are called but few are chosen. 13. I bought a few pounds of meat and some vegetables. 14. I will take a little black coffee. 15. We had neither ink nor paper. 16. Neither has come, because both are sick. 17. After these letters, I received four others and wrote as many more. 18. He sang the same song many other nights. 19. He opened the windows and rested both elbows on the sill. 20. Every afternoon I walk for a couple of

hours. 21. Mother and son embrace each other. 22. We have much to say to each other. 23. The gentlemen do not know each other. 24. None of the girls understood all that they read. 25. Everybody says it; nobody knows if it is true. 26. He thinks that he knows everything. 27. Such a thing has never been seen.[1] 28. There are no such books in the library. 29. Every boy is here, none is absent. 30. He has not slept all[2] night. 31. A certain gentleman used to come here every Monday. 32. A certain Suárez came to see me. 33. The said Suárez was another acquaintance of mine. 34. On a certain day of[3] last month there arrived letters for each one of them. 35. Where can one find a good restaurant? There is one on Burgos street. 36. Some one is ringing the bell. Some huckster, I suppose.[4] 37. Where are there some sheets for the bed, Mary? There are some in the closet. 38. Are there any pillow-cases there? There are some also. 39. That is luck and nothing else. 40. Either of these books will be useful to anybody who is studying Spanish. 41. Other people's money does not interest me. 42. Each boy has his own seat. 43. A large part of the audience remained standing, but the rest sat down. 44. I met our friend So-and-so this morning. He knows nothing of what has occurred. 45. Every one who reads Spanish knows something about Cervantes' Don Quixote. 46. I have read to-day's paper without finding anything about the marriage. 47. Have you anything pretty in your store? 48. He does not owe anything to anybody.[5]

[1] **jamás se ha visto.** [3] **del.**
[2] Insert **en** before *all*. [4] **será.** See section 266.
[5] Say *nothing to nobody*.

CHAPTER XI

PERSONAL PRONOUNS

198. Methods of Address. 1. The forms of the second person singular are used in addressing members of the family, intimate friends, children, or pet animals. Foreign speakers will always use **usted** with the third person singular of the verb, as this is the form employed by persons who desire to be courteous to each other.

a. **Usted** is derived from **vuestra merced,** *your grace.* Other similar forms are **Usía,** used in addressing magistrates, lower officers of the army, etc.; **Vuecencia,** to ambassadors, members of the king's cabinet, etc. The different degrees of nobility also have their proper form of address or **tratamiento.**

2. The second plural, **vosotros,** is primarily the plural of **tú;** but it is sometimes employed in addressing persons collectively, who singly would be addressed by **usted:** for example, in public speeches, in friendly letters addressed to two or more persons, and in public advertisements.

Vosotros, hijos de la Revolución, venís a España. — *You, sons of the Revolution, are coming to Spain.*

a. The older form **vos,** instead of **vosotros,** is still found in prayers, or in literature to represent ancient manners.

Vos, Señor, que sacasteis de la nada este mundo. — *You, Lord, that drew this world from chaos.*

¡Eh! Maestro . . . vos os burláis. — *Ah! Master, you are jesting.*

b. **Nos** for **nosotros** is used by sovereigns and magistrates, and in religious forms.

Nos el rey. — *We the king.*

199. It. 1. As the subject of a verb, *it* is usually unnecessary in Spanish: **llueve,** *it is raining.* When necessary, *it* will be the

masculine **él** or the feminine **ella**, according to the gender of the noun represented. Referring to an idea, *it* is neuter (section 206).

2. Instead of *it* after a preposition, adverbs of place are sometimes found.

Le dió una cajita. Allí miró la joven esposa con asombro.	*He gave her a little box. The young wife looked at it with surprise.*

a. This use of adverbs of place is also extended to persons.

Se me echa encima.	*He throws himself on me.*
De pronto se me puso delante.	*Suddenly he stood before me.*

200. Le — Lo — La — Les. The objective pronouns of the third person singular are used somewhat indiscriminately by some writers.

1. **Le** may be the direct object form referring to things.

No hay lazo alguno que conmigo te ligue; y si le hay, yo le desato y le rompo.	*There is no bond that binds you to me; and if there is any, I unbind it and break it.*

2. **La** and **las** may be the indirect object feminine.

Cuando la visité, estaba allí su primo y nada la dije.	*When I visited her, her cousin was there and I said nothing to her.*

a. **La** and **las** are the proper forms for use with the reflexive verb when used impersonally. See section 273.

Se la admira.	*One admires her;* or, *She is admired.*
Se las ve venir.	*They are seen coming.*

3. **Les** may be direct object plural referring to persons.

Les forzaba a partir la poca seguridad de la playa.	*The insecurity of the beach compelled them to depart.*
¡Pobrecitos niños! Todo el mundo sabe que les adoro.	*Poor children! Everybody knows that I adore them.*

NOTE. The student should not imitate the constructions described in this section, but should be guided by the following:

le { *him* or *you*, direct and indirect object masculine; *to her*, indirect object feminine
lo, *it* or *him*, direct object masculine
la, *her*, direct object feminine
les, *to them*, indirect object masculine and feminine
los, *them*, direct object masculine

201. Indefinite Feminine. The feminine of pronouns often has indefinite force. The form most frequently occurring is **la.**

Ese hombre la echa de gracioso.	*That man pretends to be funny.*
La (or las) pagará.	*He will pay for it* (that is, *get his punishment*).
¡Buena la hicimos!	*We gave it to them good.*
Entonces será ella.	*Then will come the pinch.*
En éstas y en las otras llegamos a Manresa.	*In the meantime we reached Manresa.*
Ellos harán de las suyas.	*They will play some of their tricks.*

202. The Prepositional Forms of the personal pronouns are the only ones which can be used with verbs that require a preposition before the direct object.

El café está en la plaza, y en él entramos a refrescarnos.	*The café is on the square, and we entered it for refreshment.*
Se casó con ella.	*He married her.*
No me acuerdo de él.	*I do not remember him.*
Ella, al reparar en mí, irguió altivamente la cabeza.	*When she noticed me, she raised her head haughtily.*

a. The prepositional forms are often called *disjunctive*, because they are not directly dependent on the verb.

203. Redundant Pronoun. Whenever the pronouns **le, les,** or **se** are vague in meaning, they may be made definite by the employment of the disjunctive (prepositional) forms.

Le llama a Vd.	*He is calling you.*
Les enviaremos a ellos las tarjetas.	*We shall send the cards to them.*
Se las entregó a ella.	*He delivered them to her.*

1. For the sake of emphasis or contrast, the same construction is frequent with the other personal pronouns.

Esas cosas me hacen más daño a mí que a ti.	*Those things hurt me more than you.*
A mí me gusta viajar pero a mi madre no le gusta.	*I like to travel, but my mother does not like to.*

2. This double-pronoun construction has been extended to nouns. Whenever for emphasis the direct or indirect object precedes the verb, the corresponding pronoun is also usually employed.

Le envió a éste un regalo.	*He sent the latter a present.*
A las señoras les mandó ramos de flores.	*To the ladies he sent bouquets of flowers.*
La primera muñeca que tuve me la dió él.	*The first doll that I had he gave me.*
Eso te lo habría dicho tu tía.	*Your aunt probably told you that.*

a. The neuter indefinite pronoun **todo,** when the object of a verb, must always be represented by **lo.**

Mi padre lo sabe todo.	*My father knows all.*
Quiero confesárselo todo.	*I wish to confess everything to you.*
Frutas, flores, montes, lagos, ríos, todo lo había en esta tierra bendita.	*Fruits, flowers, mountains, lakes, rivers, there was everything in this happy land.*

204. Ethical Dative. There is sometimes used a redundant pronoun, indirect object form, of the same person and number as the subject. It appears to give a slight degree of emphasis to the person.

Me lo comeré.	*I shall eat it.*
Me la he encontrado muriéndose.	*I found her dying.*
Hemos sacado a esa niña del convento y nos la llevamos a Madrid.	*We have taken that girl from the convent and are escorting her to Madrid.*

205. Mismo lends emphasis to a personal pronoun like the English *self.* When **mismo** emphasizes the subject, the pronoun must be expressed.

Él mismo salió a recibirme.	*He himself came out to receive me.*
Lo haré yo mismo.	*I shall do it myself.*
Prometí a mis amigos volver pronto y a mí mismo hacer la visita definitiva.	*I promised my friends that I would return soon, and to myself that I would make the visit the last.*

a. **Propio,** *own,* also intensifies a noun or pronoun:

Mis propias manos.	*My own hands.*
El propio rey lo hizo.	*The king himself did it.*
Por sí propio (or mismo).	*On one's own account.*

206. Neuter Pronouns. 1. The neuter pronoun has the forms

Subject	Direct Object	Indirect Object	Prepositional
ello	**lo**	**le**	**ello**

2. As subject the neuter pronoun is found mainly in the expression **ello es** (or **fué**) **que**.

Ello es que no sabemos nada de lo que hace.	*The fact is that we do not know anything of what he does.*

3. The neuter forms refer to phrases or ideas without gender.

¿ Cree Vd. lo que dice ? Ya lo creo.	*Do you believe what he says ? I surely do believe it.*
¿ Qué mal hay en ello ?	*What harm is there in it ?*
Son las seis de la tarde. Lo ha dicho el reloj de la catedral.	*It is six o'clock in the afternoon. The cathedral clock has said it.*
Cierta mujer en traje de baile. ¿ Quién era ? Lo ignorábamos.	*A certain woman in evening dress. Who was she ? We did not know.*
Comió demasiado. Por ello tuvo que sufrir una indigestión.	*He ate too much. On that account he had an attack of indigestion.*

4. After the verb **ser**, in the predicate, **lo** refers to the whole phrase rather than to a single word. In such cases no word appears necessary in English; consequently, the student must be careful to employ the pronoun **lo** when required by Spanish usage.

¿ Son huérfanas ? Lo son.	*Are the girls orphans ? They are.*
Irene fué una Venus, es decir, lo fué más tarde.	*Irene was a Venus; that is, she was later.*

a. Sometimes the English word corresponding to **lo** is *so*.

Parece viejo sin serlo.	*He seems old without being so.*
No bien deseaba una cosa (a veces sin decirlo), me la proporcionaba.	*No sooner did I desire a thing, sometimes without saying so, than he got it for me.*

b. If the pronoun refers to a definite person it takes the gender and number of the noun to which it refers or may be omitted.

¿ Es Vd. la señora de González ? Para servir a Vd., la soy.	*Are you Mrs. González ? I am, at your service.*

5. Whenever a second verb in a clause refers to a foregoing predicate noun, adjective, or adverb, it is customary to insert **lo**.

Si tal o cual recibo es falso o no lo es.	*If such and such a receipt is false or not.*

6. Instead of repeating a verb, one may substitute **hacer** and the neuter **lo**.

Todos examinaron el bicho, y yo después también lo hice.	*All examined the bug, and afterwards I too did so.*
Ella me invitó a sentarme en el sofá y lo hizo también.	*She invited me to sit on the sofa, and she did so too.*

207. Position. The remarks about the position of the personal pronouns (sections 81; 68, *a*; 91) require the following additions:

1. As a matter of style an unemphatic pronoun rarely begins a sentence except in conversation, but is appended to the verb.

Servíalo en silencio.	*She served him in silence.*
Abriéronse las iglesias.	*The churches were opened.*

2. When several verbs occur in series, if one of them has a pronoun it is appended to the verb.

Sacó papel del bolsillo, redactó una carta, púsole el sobre, pególo y echóse a reír.	*He took paper from his pocket, composed a letter, put it in an envelope, sealed it, and began to laugh.*

3. The pronoun may be attached to the auxiliary of a compound verb, but never to the past participle, though this is found in older writers and occasionally even now.

Habíanos visto.	*He had seen us.*
Siente haberle expuesto a perder la vida.	*She regrets having exposed you to lose your life.*
Después de haberla leído y héchote cruces.	*After having read it and crossed yourself.*

4. With the verbs **poder, querer, deber, ir, salir, volver a, haber de,** and other similar verbal expressions, the pronoun may stand before the auxiliary verb or be attached to the dependent infinitive.

Se lo puedo enviar a Vd. **Puedo enviárselo a Vd.**	*I can send it to you.*

¿ Me quiere Vd. vender la casa ? **¿ Quiere Vd. venderme la casa ?**	*Will you sell me the house ?*
Les vuelvo a suplicar.	*I beg you again.*
Inclinó la frente. Pronto volvió a alzarla.	*He bowed his forehead. Soon he raised it again.*
¿ Dónde se ha de colocar Eduardo ?	*Where is Edward to put himself ?*
La niña no ha de negarme la obediencia.	*The girl shall not refuse me obedience.*

5. In the progressive (periphrastic) conjugation (see section 258), the pronouns may stand before the auxiliary or be attached to it or to the present participle.

La costa se iba alejando **Íbase alejando la costa** **La costa iba alejándose**	*The coast kept getting farther away.*

EXERCISE 33

1. This is a large house and many people live in it. 2. My daughters also like very much to go to the theater. 3. You may believe that[1] now, but you may change your ideas. 4. Does that price suit you? Yes, it suits me very well. 5. O! Valencia! I never found anything comparable to it. 6. This book I dedicate to my parents. 7. He wished to send to the hotel for my valise; finally I consented to it. 8. The fact is that I should not have bought myself this fur coat. 9. Nobody could be more satisfied than I was. 10. He was only happy when he was talking, and he did it very well. 11. The only business that had turned out well was the steamer business, and that he had inherited from his father. 12. They have also told me that his uncle and aunt are rich; but they are not. 13. If my brother-in-law should not marry, that title would be for my son: Isabella the First herself gave it. 14. But I was happy, I could not conceal it. 15. On hearing me, he turned around and pushed the cash drawer to close it. 16. Generally he listened to nobody but himself. 17. You may count on me; I will

[1] Put first in sentence. See section 203, 2.

be there. 18. It was now nine o'clock, as I ascertained by[1] my watch. 19. I am going to tell him that you have arrived. 20. Tell him that I hoped to have met him at the station. 21. The fact was that the train arrived two hours late.[2] 22. When the poor man cut the bread his knife struck[3] a coin which was inside it. 23. That fellow thinks[4] he is handsome. 24. All confessed that Robert was brave when it was necessary to be so. 25. She loved him more than he did[5] her. 26. Pepita loved D. Gumersindo as the man to whom she owed everything. 27. Is the man rich? I do not think so myself; if he is, he must be a miser. 28. I have heard the name but I cannot remember it. If I could do so, I would tell it to you. 29. The coins are mine and I am going to prove it, I tell you again, the old man shouted to those who were in front of him. 30. It seems difficult to do this but it is not. 31. Many things attracted the good man's[6] attention and he tried to see most of them during his short visit. 32. To his wife he brought a diamond ring, and to his daughters he gave presents of money. They said so themselves. 33. There are things which one knows without having seen them. 34. Soldiers, you owe it to yourselves, to your families, to your country, to bear yourselves as brave men. 35. Having dressed myself hurriedly, I forgot to put it on. 36. Henry asked[7] Prieto and Co. for[5] a position and they have promised it to him. 37. Hereupon he took out one of the telegrams which he had received and read it to them. — I am glad of it. 38. My dear brother and sister, I thank you a thousand times for the present. You know yourselves what a pleasure it gives to receive such a reminder.

[1] en. [2] con dos horas de retraso. [3] dar con. [4] See section 201.
[5] Omit. [6] Indirect object; put first in the sentence. [7] solicitar.

LA CIUDAD DE ÁVILA

Ávila está cercada de murallas muy bien conservadas que fueron construídas en el siglo once. El reino de Castilla tuvo este nombre de las muchas castillas que construyeron los cristianos en la tierra reconquistada. Los cristianos no vencidos por los moros se refugiaron bajo el jefe Pelayo en Asturias en 718. Comenzaron desde allí una guerra de reconquista que tuvo su mayor éxito primero en la conquista de Toledo en 1085 y después en la derrota de los moros en la batalla de Las Navas de Tolosa en 1212. Conquistadas Córdoba en 1236 y Sevilla en 1248, no quedó más reino moro en la península que el de Granada

LA CIUDAD DE ÁVILA

1. ¿ Por qué se construyeron murallas como las de Ávila ?
2. ¿ Cómo es que actualmente España es cristiana y no mora ?
3. ¿ Qué quiere decir la palabra « reconquista » ?
4. ¿ Cuánto tiempo duró la época que se llama la reconquista ?
5. ¿ Quiénes fueron los reconquistadores ?
6. ¿ Cuál es el origen de que el heredero del trono español tenga el título de « Príncipe de Asturias » ?
7. ¿ Quién fué don Pelayo ?
8. ¿ En qué provincia de España está Ávila ? ¿ De dónde tuvo la provincia su nombre ?
9. ¿ Qué parecen ser los edificios de Ávila de mayor importancia ?
10. ¿ Qué se ve en los arrabales de la ciudad ?

actualmente, *now*
arrabales, m. *suburbs*, i. e. *part of city outside of walls*
bajo, *under*
castilla, f. *castle*
cercado -a, *surrounded, inclosed*
conservar, *to preserve*
construir, *to build*
cristiano -a, *Christian*
derrota, f. *defeat, rout*
durar, *to last*
época, *epoch, period*
heredero, m. *heir*
jefe, m. *leader*
moro -a, *Moor, Moorish*
muralla, f. *wall*
provincia, f. *province*
reconquista, f. *reconquest of Spain by Christians from Moors*
reconquistar, *to reconquer*
refugiarse, *to take refuge*
reino, m. *kingdom*
título, m. *title*
trono, m. *throne*

CHAPTER XII

ADVERBS

208. Adverbs of Place.

aquí, **acá** } *here*
ahí, *there* (near the person addressed)
allá, **allí** } *there* (at a distance), *yonder*
adentro, *within* } (implying movement)
afuera, *without* }
adelante, *forward*
atrás, *backwards*

abajo, *down*
arriba, *up*
cerca, *near*
lejos, *far*
donde, *where*
enfrente, *opposite*
dentro, *inside*
fuera, *outside, out of doors*
delante, *in front*
detrás, *behind*

Interrogative, **dónde**, *where*

a. **Aquí** and **allí** are more precise and defined, while **acá** and **allá** have a more general meaning: **Tengo el dinero aquí en el bolsillo**, *I have the money here in my pocket*; **acá** would be incorrect in this sentence.

Allí implies a definite spot, while **allá** denotes distant places: **allá en Cuba**, *there in Cuba*; **allá**, the invisible world; **acá**, this world.

Acá is frequently used with **venir**: **Ven acá**, *Come here.*

With **estar**, **acá** refers to the house in which one is speaking or writing: **Acá todos estamos bien**, *We are all well here.*

Note also **Trae acá**, *Bring (it) here.*

Acá denotes present time, **allá** the remote past; **de ayer acá**, *now*; **allá en el siglo de oro**, *then in the golden age.*

b. **Aquí**, **acá**, **allí**, **allá**, and **ahí** may be preceded by prepositions and followed by other adverbs of place.

de allí a poco, *a short time from then, thereafter*
de allí en adelante, *henceforward*
por aquí, *around here, in this direction*
por ahí, *near you, that way*
allá arriba, *up there*
allí fuera, *outside, out there*
aquí dentro, *in here*
más arriba, *farther up* (§ 144)

c. Adverbs of direction are preceded by the preposition **hacia** after verbs of motion.

Viene hacia aquí.	*He is coming this way.*
Cayó hacia atrás.	*He fell backwards.*
Marcharon hacia adelante	*They marched forward.*
Mirando hacia arriba.	*Looking upward.*

d. The neuter article combines with adverbs of place in numerous expressions.

lo de atrás, *the rear*
lo de arriba abajo, *upside down*
lo de delante atrás, *hind side foremost*

e. **Parte** forms adverbial phrases equivalent to English compounds with *where*; these are preceded by different prepositions according to sense.

Dios está en todas partes.	*God is everywhere.*
Lo busqué por todas partes.	*I searched for it everywhere.*
No vamos a ninguna parte.	*We are not going anywhere.*

f. The interrogative **dónde** is usually defined by prepositions. This preposition often appears at the end of the clause in English.

¿A dónde va Vd.? *Where are you going (to)?*
¿en dónde? ¿por dónde? ¿de dónde?

209. Adverbs of Time.

ahora, **ya** } *now*
aun, **todavía** } *yet, still*
entonces, *then*
ayer, *yesterday*
hoy, *to-day*
mañana, *to-morrow*
anoche, *last night*
pasado mañana, *day after to-morrow*
anteayer, *day before yesterday*
pronto, *soon*
siempre, *always*
después, *afterwards*
luego, *next, after*
antes, *before, rather*
temprano, *early*
tarde, *late*
jamás, *ever*
nunca, *never*
mientras, *in the meantime, while*

Interrogative, **cuándo,** *when*

a. Adverbs of time and direction are generally placed after nouns.

años antes, *years before*
meses después, *months afterward*
escalera arriba, *up stairs*
mar afuera, *out to sea*
tierra adentro, *inland*
boca abajo, *face downwards*

b. **Mismo** intensifies adverbs of time and place.

ahora mismo, *right now*	**esta noche mismo,** *this very night*
ahí mismo, *right there*	**ayer mismo,** *only yesterday*

c. **Ya** with past tenses means *already*:

Ya han venido.	*They have already come.*

With present tenses, *now*:

Era muy rico, pero ya es pobre.	*He was very rich, but now he is poor.*

With future tenses, *at another time*:

Ya nos veremos.	*We shall see each other later.*

Ya is frequently used, however, to intensify statements.

Ya estamos. *Here we are.*	**Ya se ve.** *Now it is evident.*
Ya entiendo. *Now I comprehend.*	**Ya lo creo.** *I should say so.*

¡ Ya voy ! *I am coming* (note the use of **ir** instead of **venir**).

¿ Andrés no vuelve ? Ya, ya tarda. *Andrew doesn't return ? He is very late.*

(1) **Ya no** means *no longer.*

Los que ya no pueden trabajar.	*Those who can no longer work.*
No está ya en el mundo.	*He is no longer in the world.*

(2) **Ya . . . ya** introduces alternatives.

Ya de día, ya de noche.	*By day or by night.*

See section 278, 4 for use of subjunctive mood.

d. The English adverb *long* referring to time is **mucho tiempo.**

Más tiempo.	*Longer.*
¿ Cuánto tiempo dura ?	*How long does it last ?*
Demasiado tiempo.	*Too long.*
Hace tanto tiempo.	*It is so long ago.*
Poco tiempo ha.	*A short time ago.*

(1) Note the idiom **tardar en** + infinitive (lit. *to delay in*).

No tardará mucho en venir.	*He will not be long in coming*, or *It will not be long before he comes.*
Tardó poco en llegar.	*He arrived in a short time*, or *He soon arrived.*

e. **Cuando** (unaccented) and **mientras** are also relative conjunctive adverbs introducing clauses, and sometimes have prepositional force.

cuando las elecciones, *at the time of the elections*
mientras jóvenes, *when young men*

Cuando also enters into various adverbial phrases.

cuando más, *at most*
cuando menos, *at least*
de cuando en cuando, *from time to time*

210. Adverbs of Quantity or Degree.

apenas, *scarcely*
bastante, *enough*
casi, *almost*
demasiado, *too much, too*
tanto, tan, *so much*
mucho, *much;* **muy,** *very*
poco, *little*
más, *more*
menos, *less*
harto, *full well, enough*

Interrogative, **cuánto,** *how much*

1. **Muy,** the shortened form of **mucho,** stands before adverbs and adjectives (except comparatives, but including past participles), and is never used alone.

Muy bien. *Very well.*
Un azul muy claro. *A very light blue.*
Un azul mucho más claro. *A much lighter blue.*
Estoy muy agradecido. *I am much obliged.*
Parece muy cansado. Sí, mucho. *He seems very tired. Yes, very.*

a. **Muy** never modifies **mucho.** The absolute superlative is **muchísimo.**

2. **Mucho,** being also an adjective, appears for *very* in those idiomatic expressions in which Spanish has a noun corresponding to an English adjective.

Tiene mucho frío y mucha hambre. *He is very cold and hungry.*
Es mucha verdad. *It is very true.*

3. The indefinite pronouns **algo** and **nada** are also used as adverbs of degree.

Yo soy nada curiosa. *I am not at all curious.*
Su cabeza era algo calva. *His head was somewhat bald.*

211. Adverbs of Manner.

así, *thus, so*	**bien**, *well*	**alto**, *loud*	**despacio**, *slowly*
quedo, *softly, gently*	**mal**, *badly, ill*	**bajo**, *low*	**de prisa**, *fast*

Interrogative, **cómo**, *how*

a. From adjectives, adverbs of manner are formed by adding **mente** to the feminine singular.

seguro — seguramente, *safely*
habilísimo — habilísimamente, *very skillfully*
feliz — felizmente, *happily*

With two or more adjectives **mente** is used only once.

Escribe más correcta que elegantemente. *He writes more correctly than elegantly.*

1. **Como** (unaccented) has relative force, *as*. For its use in comparisons see section 50.

Asistía a la boda como testigo. *He attended the wedding as a witness.*

2. **Recientemente**, shortened to **recién**, is common with past participles.

el recién llegado, *the new arrival* **los recién casados**, *the newly wedded*

3. Adverbial expressions of manner are also formed by the phrases **de una manera, de un modo.**

de una manera encantadora, *in a charming manner* **de este modo**, *in this manner*

4. From adjectives and nouns of nationality, adverbial expressions are formed as follows.

a la francesa, *in the French style*
arroz a la valenciana, *rice in Valencian style*
al estilo gótico, *in the Gothic style*
al estilo de Jaén, *in the fashion of Jaén*
vestida a lo rústico, *dressed in rustic style*

212. Adverbs of Affirmation and Negation.

no, *no*
sí, *yes*
tampoco, *neither*
ni . . . ni, *neither . . . nor*
ni siquiera, *not even*
justo, *right*
claro, *evidently*
¡eso no! *no, indeed!*
¡eso sí! *yes, indeed!*
sí tal, *surely*

1. **No** precedes the verb and the objective personal pronouns.

Yo no le vi.	*I did not see him.*
A mí no me gusta decir.	*I do not like to say.*
Pedro no ha venido.	*Peter has not come.*

2. **No** must precede the verb when other negative words follow **it.**

No conozco a nadie.	*I know nobody.*
No tengo nada.	*I have nothing.*
No veo a ninguno de mis amigos.	*I see none of my friends.*
Pablo no lo tiene tampoco.	*Paul hasn't it either.*

a. But if the negatives precede the verb, **no** is omitted.

Nada tengo.	*I have nothing.*
A nadie conozco.	*I know nobody.*

3. **No** usually follows adverbs and pronouns when used without a verb.

ahora no, *not now*	**yo no,** *not I*
todavía no, *not yet*	**a mí no,** *not to me*

4. If a second verb, noun, or adjective is included in the negation, **ni** precedes it. **No era joven ni muy viejo.** *He was not young nor very old.*

This is equivalent to omitting one of the correlatives **ni . . . ni.**

No tengo libros franceses ni españoles. **No tengo libros ni franceses ni españoles.**	*I have neither French nor Spanish books.*

a. Note also that the adverb **ni** is required even when the negation is merely implied.

Una noche sin luna ni estrellas.	*A night without moon or stars.*
¿Qué tienes que partir en mi riqueza ni en mi pobreza?	*What concern have you with my wealth or my poverty?*

5. After the adjective **todo** the negative is frequently suppressed.

En toda la noche he podido dormir.	*I have not been able to sleep the whole night.*
En toda mi vida he visto semejante cosa.	*In my whole life I have never seen such a thing.*

a. The last expression often omits **toda,** hence **en mi vida** is a common expression for *never.*

En mi vida lo hice.	*I never did it.*

Similar expressions are **en días de Dios, en los días de la vida,** meaning *never*.

6. **Sí** often intensifies a statement, especially in contrast to a preceding negative.

En cuanto a los muebles, no costosos pero sí cómodos y de forma elegante.	*As for the furniture, not costly but comfortable and of elegant shape.*
¿Nos pagarán todo lo que nos deben? Todo, eso sí.	*Will they pay us all that they owe us? All of it, surely.*
Lo que sí le ruego.	*That's what I do ask him.*

213. Adverbs of Doubt.

acaso
tal vez
quizá
quizás } *perhaps*

apenas
apenas si } *hardly*

1. The subjunctive mood often appears with these adverbs, see section 278, 5. **Acaso tenga Vd. la culpa,** *Perhaps you are to blame.*

2. In questions **acaso** implies improbability or shows that a negative answer is expected.

¿Acaso lo sé yo?	*How do I know?*
¿Van acaso a saberlo?	*How are they going to know?*

214. Intensification. The following methods of intensifying or modifying the meaning of words and statements exist.

1. Absolute superlative of the adverb, or the use of **sobre manera** or **sumamente; sumo, -a,** before nouns.

lejos, lejísimo, *very far*
sumamente
sobre manera } **difícil,** *extremely difficult*
con suma gracia, *with the utmost grace*

2. **Sí que.**

Entonces sí que no nos perdonarían.	*Then surely they would not pardon us.*
Eso sí que no.	*Not that by any means.*
Ahora sí que hueles, y no a ámbar.	*Now verily you do smell, and not of amber.*

3. **Que.**

¡ Socorro ! ¡ que me matan !	*Help ! they are killing me !*
¡ Tío, que te espero !	*Uncle, I am waiting for you !*

4. **Si.**

Si no ve, la pobre.	*Why, she doesn't see, poor girl.*
Si no parece la misma casa.	*It really does not seem like the same house.*
¡ Que si lo sé !	*I should say I do know it.*

5. **Tan — Tanto.**

Un instante, tan sólo un instante.	*A moment, only just a moment.*
¡ Qué día tan hermoso !	*What a fine day !*
Ni tan siquiera.	*Not even.*
Tengo tanto gusto en conocerle.	*I am so pleased to make your acquaintance.*

6. **Bastante.**

Hace bastante frío.	*It is rather cold.*
Es bastante rico.	*He is quite rich.*
La monotonía de mi vida empieza a fastidiarme bastante.	*The monotony of my life begins to bore me considerably.*

7. Repetition.

Así así es como se castiga a los pillos.	*That is the way to punish rascals.*
Casi, casi estoy tentado a pensarlo.	*I am very nearly tempted to think so.*
¡ Nada, nada !	*No, no !* (absolute refusal)
¡ Digo, digo !	*I declare ! Do tell !*

8. The diminutive **-ito** in familiar and colloquial speech.

¡ cuidadito ! *take good care* **¡ en seguidita !** *right away*

9. **Conque** introduces a natural consequence of what has just been said; or recalls to mind, and insists on, the subject under discussion.

¡ Conque vamos !	*Well then, let's go.*
¡ Conque las seiscientas pesetas !	*Come now, (take) the six hundred pesetas (which I have offered).*

215. Adverbial Phrases are formed in various ways:

1. With the definite article.

a (la) derecha, *on the right*
a (la) izquierda, *on the left*
a la moda, *in style*
a la vista, *in (at) sight*
a la verdad, *in truth*
al contado, *(in) cash*
al fin, *finally*
al momento, *instantly*
en el acto, *at once*
en el día, *nowadays*
en lo sucesivo, *in the future*
por lo común, *commonly*
por lo pronto, *for the time being*
por lo tanto, *consequently*

2. Without the article, singular.

a fondo, *thoroughly*
a mano, *by hand*
a menudo, *often*
a pie, *on foot*
con todo, *nevertheless*
de antemano, *beforehand*
de balde, *gratis*
de buena gana, *willingly*
de día, *by day*
de noche, *by night*
de nuevo, *again*
de cabeza { *head first* / *on one's head*
de pronto, *suddenly*
de propósito, *on purpose*
en contra, *against*
en fin, *in short*
en pro, *in favor of*
en seguida, *immediately*
por consiguiente, *consequently*
por supuesto, *of course*
por último, *finally*

3. Without the article, plural.

a ciegas, *blindly*
a escondidas, *secretly*
a gatas, *on all fours*
a sabiendas, *knowingly*
a solas, *alone*
de espaldas, *on (with) one's back*
de oídas, *by hearsay*
de puntillas, *on tiptoe*
de rodillas, *on one's knees*
de veras, *in truth, really*

4. Miscellaneous adverbial phrases.

a manos llenas, *by handfuls*
a más no poder, *with all one's might*
a sus anchas, *at one's ease*
al por mayor, *by wholesale*
al por menor, *by retail*
cuanto antes, *as soon as possible*
desde luego, *right away*
de vez en cuando, *from time to time*
gota a gota, *drop by drop*
ni con mucho, *not by a good deal*
para siempre, *forever*
poco a poco, *little by little*
siempre jamás, *forever and ever*

216. Position of Adverbs. Adverbs should stand close to the verb they modify; if emphatic they are placed first in the sentence.

Mañana viene él.	*He comes to-morrow.*
Bien sabes.	*You know very well.*
Llama con cuidado a Rosa.	*Call Rosa cautiously.*

a. They stand before adjectives and past participles, but must not come between the parts of compound tenses formed with **haber.**

Ha dicho demasiado.	*He has said too much.*
Está bien dicho.	*It is well said.*
He ganado siempre.	*I have always won.*

b. **Bien** before the verb is especially emphatic and must be translated by other words than *well.*

Bien hemos charlado esta noche.	*We have had a good long talk to-night.*
Bien creímos que se moría.	*We surely thought he was dying.*
Bien se lo debo.	*I certainly owe it to him.*

c. Adverbs modifying adverbial phrases stand before the whole phrase.

muy a menudo, *very often* **tan de prisa,** *so fast*

EXERCISE 34

(*This exercise contains examples of the irregular verbs and those with change of spelling. See sections 242 to 251. Adverbs must be taken from the chapter, not from vocabulary.*) 1. I arrived the day before yesterday. 2. Where did you come from? 3. He fell down from the top of the stairs. 4. They put themselves in front. 5. Do you see that light up there? 6. I had my breakfast later than usual. 7. It is snowing outside. 8. They fell forward. 9. He was not around there. 10. Come inside here. 11. He died a short time thereafter. 12. His land extends farther up. 13. He built the house months ago. 14. The bird flies out to sea. 15. Tell me right now. 16. He no longer hears. 17. He repeats it right there. 18. He sleeps anywhere. 19. He plays a long time with the boy. 20. He slept too long. 21. He will come before long. 22. He runs away very fast. 23. He thinks so. 24. I approached on

tiptoe. 25. He neither sees nor hears. 26. It is good for nothing. 27. He was frying the potatoes. 28. Do not laugh so loud. 29. Perhaps he knows, but I doubt it. 30. Now you are surely lying. 31. He took leave of us last night. 32. He is sleeping on his back. 33. Is he really coming? 34. We will come immediately. 35. Consequently I warn you. 36. He asks me for money from time to time. 37. He dresses himself as soon as possible. 38. I am sending him on purpose. 39. They have finally returned the book. 40. Commonly he does not return so soon. 41. It smells of kerosene.[1] 42. *Sólo* as an adverb is accented. 43. Who defends the prisoner gratis? 44. I paid cash. 45. Go out alone. 46. He went on all fours. 47. He had turned around with his back toward the door. 48. They came secretly. 49. He sits down on the left. 50. We had the steamer in sight a long time. 51. Of course you will say yes. 52. I shall not say that he lies, but I shall say that he is mistaken. 53. He has not done it yet. 54. She dresses in the Sevillian style. 55. They distinguish themselves in a very respectable manner. 56. I ascertained the law at once. 57. I drew the newcomer out of the room. 58. The bell rings almost always at eight o'clock. 59. Don't bite, child. 60. We were somewhat tired. 61. Over there in America you govern extremely well. 62. Concluding my speech, I left at once. 63. I began to shoot blindly. 64. Bring me Valencian rice. 65. Blow your cornet loudly and distinctly. 66. He feels too sick to go out. 67. He saw her again opposite. 68. We shall surely know something certain at last. 69. That fellow truly is the type of a bad man. 70. The diligence rolled up the street, afterwards forward on the highway. 71. Nothing seemed to him criminal nor even unpermitted. 72. In my whole life I have never had such luck.

[1] petróleo.

CHAPTER XIII

PREPOSITIONS, CONJUNCTIONS, INTERJECTIONS

217. Prepositions. The simple prepositions in Spanish are

a, *at, to*
ante, *before*
bajo, *under*
con, *with*
contra, *against*
de, *of, from*
desde, *from, since*
durante, *during*
en, *in, to, at, on*
entre, *among, between*
excepto, *except*
hacia, *towards*
hasta, *until, to, up to, as far as*
mediante, *by means of*
menos, *except, but*
para, *for*
por, *for, by*
salvo, *except, save*
según, *according to*
sin, *without*
sobre, *on, about*
tras, *after*

218. From adjectives, and adverbs in **mente,** prepositions are formed by the use of **a**:

adversamente a, *adversely to*
conforme a, *according to*
contrario a, *contrary to*
correspondiente a, *agreeably to*
frente a, *opposite to*
junto a, *close to, near*
relativamente a, *in relation to*
respecto a, *with respect to*
tocante a, *in regard to*

219. From adverbs of place and time, prepositions are formed by using **de**:

acerca de, *about, concerning*
alrededor de, *around*
antes de, *before* (time, order)
cerca de, *near, about*
debajo de, *under*
delante de, *before* (place)
dentro de, *within*
después de, *after* (time, order)
detrás de, *behind, after* (place)
encima de, *over, on top of*
fuera de, *outside of*
lejos de, *far from*

220. Prepositional Phrases.

a causa de, *on account of*
a excepción de, *with the exception of*
a fuerza de, *by dint of*
al lado de, *beside*
a lo largo de, *along*
a más de, *besides, farther than*
a pesar de, *in spite of*
a punto de, *about to*
a (or al) través de, *across, through*
además de, *besides, in addition to*
con motivo de, *on account of*
de parte de, *from*
en contra de, *against*
en cuanto a, *as for*
en frente de, *in front of*
en pro de, *in favor of*
en vez de, *instead of*
en virtud de, *by virtue of*
más allá de, *beyond*
por medio de, *by means of*
por razón de, *by reason of, at the rate of*
sin embargo de, *notwithstanding*

a. Especially to be noted are

a fines de agosto, *at the end of August*
a mediados del siglo XV, *about the middle of the fifteenth century*
a principios de 1492, *at the beginning of 1492*

b. Adverbial phrases may combine with prepositions.

de espaldas a la puerta, *with his back to the door*
a escondidas de mi madre, *without my mother's knowledge*

221. A — En. 1. **A** implies motion, **en** rest.

Voy a casa. *I am going home.*
Se arrojó al mar. *He threw himself into the sea.*
Estaré en París. *I shall be in Paris.*
Estamos en casa. *We are at home.*

a. The verbs **caer,** *to fall*, **entrar,** *to go in*, **saltar,** *to jump*, require **en. Entró en la ciudad.** *He went into the city.*

2. Concerning time, **a** considers the termination of the time, **en** the length of time in which an action takes place.

A las tres. *At three o'clock.*
A los dos días de estar aquí. *After being here two days.*
Al mes justo de esta conversación se celebraron las bodas. *Exactly a month after this conversation the wedding took place.*
Llegaré a París en dos días. *I shall reach Paris in two days.*
Estará de vuelta en ocho días. *He will be back in a week.*
Creo que ni en veinte años me moriré. *I believe that I shall not die in twenty years.*
Al día siguiente. *On the next day.*

3. With expressions of distance, **a** signifies *away*.

A dos pasos.	*Two steps away.*
La ciudad está a media milla.	*The city is half a mile away.*

222. Ante — Delante de — Antes de.

Ante means *before* an authority, *in the presence of*; or figuratively it denotes preference; **delante de,** *before*, in respect to place; **antes de,** *before*, in respect to time.

ante el juez, *before the judge*	**ante la nación,** *before the nation*
ante la belleza, *in the presence of beauty*	**ante todo,** *before all*
delante de él, *in front of him*	**delante de la casa,** *before the house*
antes de junio, *before June*	**antes de la noche,** *before night*

223. Bajo — Debajo de. **Bajo,** *under* or *below*, usually in figurative sense; **debajo de,** *under* or *below*, in physical position.

bajo el general Reyes, *under General Reyes*	**bajo una condición,** *on* (lit. *under*) *one condition*
diez grados bajo cero, *ten degrees below zero*	**debajo de la mesa,** *under the table*

224. Detrás de — Tras — Después de. **Detrás de** refers to physical position, *behind*; **tras** to succession, *after*, *behind*; **después de,** *after*, in respect to time.

Detrás de la puerta.	*Behind the door.*
Las poblaciones unas tras otras se rindieron.	*The towns, one after another, surrendered.*
Cerró tras sí la puerta.	*He shut the door behind him.*
Murió la madre, y tras ella, a los pocos días, el padre.	*The mother died, and after her, in a few days, the father.*
Después de las diez.	*After ten o'clock.*

225. En — Encima de — Sobre. **En** means *in* or *on*; **encima de,** *on top of* or *above*; **sobre,** *on*, physically and figuratively.

Vive en Cádiz.	*He lives in Cádiz.*
La comida está en la mesa.	*The dinner is on the table.*
Una lámpara colgante encima de la mesa.	*A hanging lamp above the table.*

Estaba de pie sobre la silla.	*He was standing on the chair.*
Una conferencia sobre Cervantes.	*A lecture on Cervantes.*
Le prestó mil duros sobre una finca.	*He lent him a thousand dollars on an estate.*

226. **Desde** means *since*, *from*, often a correlative with **hasta**, *to*.

desde Valencia hasta Madrid, *from Valencia to Madrid*
desde allí, *from there*
desde entonces, *since then*
desde ahora, *from now*

227. **Hasta**, *until*, *till*, *as far as*, refers to both time and place.

Hasta el 15 del mes.	*Until the 15th of the month.*
Me acompañó hasta la puerta.	*He accompanied me as far as the door.*

a. **Hasta** is frequently used as an adverb in the sense of *even*.

Hasta París cansa.	*Even Paris wearies.*
Hasta es bonita.	*She is even pretty.*
Hasta cinco hombres me encontraron.	*As many as five men met me.*

228. **Entre**, *between*, *among*, makes also adverbial expressions in the sense of *half*.

entre aquella mujer y yo, *between that woman and me.* (Note the pronoun in subject form.)
entre los árboles, *among the trees*
entre llanto y risa, *half crying, half laughing*

229. **Para** — **Por** divide the many meanings of English *for* and *by*. **Para** denotes destination or purpose; **por**, exchange or reason.

El tren para Chicago.	*The train for Chicago.*
Una mesa para la cocina.	*A table for the kitchen.*
Pagué un duro por el libro.	*I paid a dollar for the book.*
Tomé su sombrero por el mío.	*I took your hat for mine.*
Por méritos de guerra ha obtenido la cruz de San Fernando.	*For meritorious service he has obtained the cross of San Fernando.*
No lo digo por mí.	*I do not say it for my own sake.*

1. Note also, concerning **para**,

Es alta para su edad.	*She is tall for her age.*
Leyó la carta para sí.	*He read the letter to himself.*
Decir para sí.	*To say to one's self.*
Dejar para mañana.	*To leave for to-morrow.*
La lección para mañana.	*The lesson for to-morrow.*
Estar para partir.	*To be about to leave* (more common, **estar á punto de partir**).

2. **Por** is used in expressions of —

a. Time, usually indefinite:

por la noche, *at night*
mañana por la mañana, *to-morrow morning*
por entonces, *about that time*
por la Navidad, *about Christmas*

b. Place, implying movement through:

Volar por el aire.	*To fly through the air.*
Pasar por la calle.	*To go through the street.*
¿ Por dónde se va ?	*Which way does one go ?*
Por allí.	*In that direction.*
Por aquí.	*In this direction.*

(1) Hence **por** combines with the prepositions **debajo de, delante de, detrás de, encima de,** and **entre,** after verbs of movement.

Tiró la pelota por encima de la tapia.	*He threw the ball over the wall.*
Me dió un puntapie por debajo de la mesa.	*He gave me a kick under the table.*

c. Oaths and exclamations:

¡ Por Dios !	
¡ Por vida mía !	*Upon my life !*
¡ Bien por mi sobrino !	*Good for my nephew !*

d. Part of body or object concerned:

La cogió por la mano.	*He took her by the hand.*

e. In certain verbal expressions very similar to English:

enviar por el médico, *to send for the doctor*
ir por carne, *to go for meat*
preguntar por alguien, *to inquire for anybody*
tomar por esposa, *to take as wife*

f. In numerous adverbial and conjunctive expressions:

por . . . que, *however* (followed by subjunctive mood)
por malo que sea, *however bad he is*
por más que digan, *however much* (*whatever*) *they may say*
por decirlo así, *so to say*
por el estilo, *of that style*
por mayor, *at wholesale*
por desgracia, *by misfortune*

3. For **por** after passive verb see sections 270, 2; 272, *a.*

4. In regard to **para** and **por** with infinitives, see section 106, 5 and 6.

230. Double Prepositions are a peculiarity of Spanish:

1. After verbs denoting movement.

Cogió al muchacho por debajo de los brazos. *He caught the boy under the arms.*
El agua mana de entre las peñas. *The water issues from among the rocks.*

2. **Para con** appears in ideas of conduct, English *toward.*

deberes para con los padres, *duties toward one's parents*
indulgencia para conmigo, *indulgence toward me*

3. **De a** (see section 157, 1).

un puesto de a real la pieza, *a five-cent stand* (a booth or stand where articles are sold at a uniform price)

231. Prepositions complete the meaning of verbs in various ways. The same verb has different meanings according to the preposition used after it, an important thing for students to note.

pensar (without preposition before an infinitive), *intend*
pensar de, *think of, have an opinion about*
pensar en, *think of, meditate on*

a. A verb which requires a preposition before a noun object requires the same preposition before a clause that may depend on it.

No consiento en la proposición. *I do not consent to the proposition.*
No consiento en que Vd. se vaya. *I do not consent to your going.*
Me enteró de que eran naturales de Madrid. *He informed me that they were natives of Madrid.*

232. Conjunctions. The simple conjunctions uniting coördinate clauses are

y, *and*	**ni**, *nor*
o, *or*	**pero, mas, sino**, *but*

1. **Y** reverts to **e** before words beginning with **i** or **hi**, except before questions and words beginning with the diphthong **ie**.

español e inglés, *Spanish and English*
madre e hija, *mother and daughter*
nieve y hielo, *snow and ice*
¿ y Inés ? *and Inez ?*

a. Spanish often uses **y** at the beginning of a sentence or phrase merely as a mark of emphasis.

Y ¿ usted aquí ? *Why, you here ?*
¡ Y si no llega a tiempo ! *Suppose he doesn't come on time !*

2. **O** becomes **u** before a word beginning with **o** or **ho**.

uno u otro, *one or the other*
siete u ocho, *seven or eight*
mujer u hombre, *woman or man*

3. **Mas**, *but*, is more rhetorical than **pero**, and is sometimes used for euphony.

Para sí no quería grandezas : mas para su hijo todo le parecía poco. *For herself she did not desire titles ; but for her son everything seemed to her little.*

4. **Sino**, *but*, is used after a negative.

No es español sino portugués. *It is not Spanish but Portuguese.*
De nadie tiene que hablar sino de esta mujer. *He can talk about nobody but this woman.*

5. English *but* as a preposition in the sense of *only* is generally **no . . . más que.**

No tenemos más que un huevo. *We have but one egg.*

a. **No . . . más que** is common with **hacer**: **No hace más que dar un silbido**, *He only hisses.*

233. Simple conjunctions introducing dependent clauses are

como, *as, as soon as*	**pues**, *since*
cuando, *when*	**que**, *that*
mientras, *while*	**si**, *if*

1. **Pues** is frequently used as an adverb.

Pues a mí no me digas.	*Well, don't tell me.*
Pues yo, aquí es donde más he parado.	*Well, as for me, here is where I have stopped most.*
Pues si somos casi paisanos.	*Well, we are surely almost fellow-countrymen.*
Esta noche no iré. — ¿ Pues ?	"*I shall not go to-night.*" "*How is that ?*"
Conque habló mal de mí. — Pues.	"*So then he spoke ill of me.* "*He surely did.*"

2. **Que,** *that*, besides forming other conjunctions (see below), has many peculiar uses.

a. It is required after affirmations or oaths before adverbs and clauses, though redundant in English.

Dice que sí.	*He says yes* or *He says so.*
Creo que no.	*I believe not.*
Claro que no.	*Plainly no.*
A sabiendas de que no.	*Knowing the contrary.*
Se fué a la calle, supongo que a recorrer los sitios donde estuviera.	*He has gone out on the street, I suppose to go over the places where he had been.*
¡ Por Dios ! que no es verdad.	*By God, it is not true.*

b. **Que** often has comparative force, implying progressive or continuous action.

Mis esperanzas muertas que muertas.	*My hopes deader and deader.*
Mejor que mejor.	*Better and better.*
Corría que no andaba.	*She ran rather than walked.*
Tarde que temprano.	*Sooner or later.*
Corre que corre.	*It runs faster and faster.*
Perú estaba sentado, cavila que cavila.	*Peru was seated, thinking and thinking.*

c. **A que** implies a bet.

A que no sabe Vd. ¿ cuántos años tiene ?	*I bet you don't know how old he is.*

d. For **que** as an intensifier see section 214.

234. **Conjunctions** formed from adverbs and prepositions by the addition of **que** are

antes (de) que, *before*
así que, *as soon as, so that*
aunque / **bien que** } *although*
desde que, *since* (time)
después que, *after*
hasta que, *until*
luego que, *as soon as*
mientras que, *while*
para que, *in order that, so that*
porque, *because*
pues que / **puesto que** / **supuesto que** / **ya que** } *for, since* (reason)
sin que, *without*

235. Conjunctions formed from prepositional phrases by the addition of **que** are

a fin de que, *in order that*
con tal (de) que, *provided that*
dado que / **en caso de que** } *in case*
a medida que, *as*
de { **modo** / **manera** / **suerte** } **que,** *so that*

and others.

236. **Correlatives.**

apenas . . . cuando, *scarcely . . . when*

Apenas había andado doscientos pasos, cuando quince o veinte hombres rodearon mi coche.
Scarcely had I gone two hundred paces when fifteen or twenty men surrounded my coach.

así . . . como / **tanto . . . como** / **lo mismo . . . que** } *both . . . and* / *as well . . . as*

Bebieron vino y comieron dulces así los enfermos como los sanos.
They drank wine and ate goodies, both the sick and the well.

Tanto en el patio como en las salas hay flores y plantas.
Both in the court and in the rooms there are flowers and plants.

Hubiera sido mejor para España así como para Venezuela.
It would have been better for Spain as well as for Venezuela.

Lo mismo los frailes que los caballeros.
Both the friars and the gentlemen.

ni . . . ni, *neither . . . nor*

Ni Juan ni Pepe tienen razón.
Neither John nor Joe is right.

no bien . . . cuando (**cuando** often omitted), *no sooner . . . than*

No bien dejó de hablar Ramón cuando me levanté.	*No sooner did Ramón stop speaking than I arose.*

no sólo . . . sino (que), *not only . . . but also*

No sólo vino a mi cuarto sino que me llevó al suyo.	*He not only came to my room but took me to his own.*

o . . . o
o bien . . . o bien } *either . . . or*

O locura o santidad.	*Either madness or sanctity.*
O bien todo es cálculo, o bien enlaza la prosa de vivir y la poesía de sus ensueños en una perfecta armonía.	*Either all is calculation or she unites the prose of life and the poetry of her dreams into perfect harmony.*

ora . . . ora, *now . . . now*

Ora por cartas, ora citándonos.	*Now by letters, now by appointments*

sea . . . sea
ya . . . ya } *whether . . . or*

Sea por impulso propio, sea por sugestiones ajenas.	*Whether by one's own impulse or by the suggestions of others.*
Ya me quites la vida, ya me la dejes.	*Whether you take my life or grant it to me.*

237. **Interjections** are more numerous and important in Spanish than in English.

1. Divine names as exclamations are common, and are not usually regarded as profane:

¡Dios!	*Gracious!*	**¡Válgame Dios!**	*Bless me!*
¡Por Dios!	*For goodness' sake!*	**¡Jesús!**	*Heavens!*
¡Dios mío!	*Dear me!*	**Jesús, María y José**	(after a sneeze)
¡Ay Dios mío!	*Oh dear me!*	**¡Virgen santísima!**	*Mercy me!*
¡Dios te oiga!	*Just listen!*	**¡Ay María!**	*Goodness!*

a. Similarly, **¡demonio!** **¡diantre!** **¡diablo!** *The deuce!*

2. Peculiar to Spanish:

¡ **Caramba** !	
¡ **Caray** !	
¡ **Caracoles** !	*By jingo !*
¡ **Canastos** !	*Gosh !*
¡ **Canario** !	*The dickens !*
¡ **Cáspita** !	
¡ **Fuego** !	

and others.

¡ **Caramba qué suerte** !	*Gosh, what luck !*
¡ **Qué caramba de viaje es ése** !	*What a dickens of a trip that is !*
¡ **Caramba contigo** !	*The deuce take you !*

3. Ordinary interjections are

¡ **Oh** ! ¡ **ah** !	*Oh !*
¡ **Ay** !	*Oh ! alas ! ah !*
¡ **Ha** ! (exultation)	*Ha !*
¡ **He** ! (shock, start)	*Eh !*
¡ **Ea** ! (encouragement)	*Come !*
¡ **Ea, ea** ! (impatience)	*Come, come !*
¡ **Huy** ! (pain, disgust)	*Ouch ! phew !*
¡ **Ola** ! or ¡ **Hola** ! (recognition or discovery)	*Ah ! oh ! hello !*
¡ **Ole** ! (approval)	*Bully ! bravo !*
¡ **Puf** ! (aversion)	*Ugh !*
¡ **Uf** ! (weariness)	*Oh ! poh !*
¡ **Ca** ! and ¡ **quia** ! (denial or doubt)	*No ! nonsense !*
¡ **Bah** ! (incredulity or contempt)	*Pshaw !*
¡ **Chist** ! / ¡ **Chitón** ! (to impose silence)	*Hush !*

¡ **Ah** ! **Esteban.** ¡ **Hola** ! **Manolo** !	*Hey, Stephen ! Say, Manolo !*
Al verse en el espejo, no pudo menos de lanzar un ¡ ah ! **de admiración.**	*On seeing himself in the mirror, he could not help uttering an ah ! in admiration.*
¡ **Chist** ! **habla bajo.**	*Hush ! speak low.*
Está sufriendo un ataque de melancolía. — ¡ Quia ! **contestó el médico. Lo que tiene esta señora es un cólico.**	*She is suffering an attack of melancholy. Nonsense ! answered the doctor. The trouble with this lady is the colic.*

¿ Va bien el violín ? — ¡ Ca ! Hay veces que lo rompería !	*Violin practice going nicely ? No ! There are times when I should like to smash it.*
Dicen que Alsina ha perdido en Bolsa. — ¡ Uf ! Es natural.	*They say that Alsina has lost on the exchange. Poh ! That's natural.*
¡ Ea ! ¡ a trabajar !	*Come ! get to work !*
Dos días revuélcase en la cama lanzando ¡ ayes ! doloridos.	*For two days he turns in his bed uttering cries of pain.*

4. Some imitations of natural sounds are

¡ ajajá !, **¡ je !**, **¡ je !** } laughter

¡ cataplúm ! splash

¡ pum, pum ! pistol shot, blows of any sort

¡ zas ! smash

5. Used to animals:

¡ Arre !, **¡ Alza !**, **¡ Anda !** } *Get up !*

¡ So ! ¡ jo ! ¡ cho ! *Whoa !*

¡ Miz miz !, **¡ Zape !** } (To cats) *Puss, puss !* / *Scat !*

¡ Tus tus !, **¡ Toma !** } (To dogs) *Here ! here !*

6. Imperatives frequently become interjections:

¡ Anda !	(incredulity)	*Pshaw ! go away !*
	(importunity)	*Come ! do !*
¡ Calla ! ¡ Calle !	(command)	*Shut up ! keep still !*
	(incredulity)	*Nonsense !*
¡ Diga !		*Say ! do tell !*
¡ Oye ! ¡ Oiga !		*Listen ! hear, hear !*
¡ Mira ! ¡ Mire Vd. !		*Look ! listen !*
¡ Quita ! ¡ Quítese Vd. !		*Get out ! let me alone !*
¡ Toma !		*Why ! here, take it !*
¡ Vamos ! ¡ Vaya !		*Come on !*
¡ Viva !		*Hurrah !*
¡ Muera !		*Down with him ! kill him !*

¡ Vaya ! is the commonest of these, and the hardest to render by a single word. Study the examples:

¡ Vaya ! abur.	*Well, good-by.*
¡ Carta de tu tío ! Y ¡ vaya si es gorda !	*Letter from your uncle ! And it's a fat one !*
¡ Vaya una hora de venir !	*This is a pretty hour to come !*
¡ Vaya si le conozco !	*I should say I do know him !*

7. Nouns and adjectives may become interjections:

¡ **Al asesino** !	*Murder!*	¡ **Cuidado** !	*Take care! look out!*
¡ **Al ladrón** !	*Stop thief!*	¡ **Firme** !	*Steady!*
¡ **Alto** !	*Halt!*	¡ **Fuego** !	*Fire!*
¡ **Bravo** !	*Good!*	¡ **Socorro** !	*Help!*

¡ **Ojo** ! ¡ **Mucho ojo** ! *Attention! With care!* (Used sometimes on shipping cases containing breakable merchandise.)

8. Personal pronouns are connected with adjectives used as interjections by the preposition **de**; which is also true of ¡ **Ay** ! with nouns or pronouns.

¡ **Necio de mí** !	*Fool that I am!*
¡ **Pobrecita de ella** !	*Poor little girl!*
¡ **Ay de mí** !	*Woe is me!*
¡ **Ay de los vencidos** !	*Woe to the conquered!*

9. **Hombre, mujer, chico, hijo, hija,** are frequent in conversation for emphasis or protestation. ¡ **Hombre** ! is used even to women and by women to each other. **Señor** appears in expressions not addressed to a particular individual: ¡ **Pues, señor, no esperaba escapar tan bien,** *Well, sir, I did not expect to get off so easily.*

EXERCISE 35

1. We saw the man run through the street. 2. Having neither brothers nor sisters, he is an only son. 3. Christopher Columbus did not go to discover the new world but to seek a new way to the Indies. 4. I shall know at the end of the month. 5. The wedding was fixed for the beginning of December. 6. They followed the shadow along the walls. 7. Federico had learned the facts in two days. 8. He looked at them over his spectacles. 9. Buyers had come even from England. 10. There was nobody in the dining-room but her and her mother. 11. I bet they don't dare tell me so. 12. I was sure that you were going to say that. 13. I trust that they will put me back soon. 14. I have scolded an innkeeper. Why? where? when? how? Because where, when I eat, they serve badly, I get out of patience. 15. I do not know anything in

regard to the affair. 16. They came around the city. 17. He would come about Christmas if you asked[1] him. 18. Come under the bridge. 19. On account of the weather, he brought a wrap. 20. On the next day he wanted to return. 21. We wish to reach home in a fortnight. 22. A week after learning this, he had a letter from his partner. 23. He learned that they would come before October. 24. The President has put the army under the command of General Grant. 25. About that time the army was below the city. 26. What shall we do with the boy who stands before us? 27. He went from Caracas to La Guaira in a few hours. 28. I leave for Spain about the middle of next month. 29. He knows a good deal for his age. 30. He said to himself, "I shall get out of here before night." 31. Send for a doctor. 32. She went for medicine. 33. Has anybody inquired for me during my absence? 34. The enemy came out from among the trees. 35. Go and distribute this money among the poor. 36. Ferdinand and Isabella had no male children that lived to inherit the kingdom. 37. He neither translated the sentence nor knew the sense of it. 38. He produced but one great work. 39. She did nothing but sing all day. 40. I made ten or eleven mistakes in that exercise. 41. Being able not only to hear but also to see very well, I was satisfied. 42. They are not French but Russian. 43. After they came, the army departed for the Peninsula. 44. Hearing the noise, we jumped out of bed. 45. Coming from under the bridge, the man said he was not an enemy but a fisherman. 46. Who says yes? 47. Before he obtained the prize, he worked both night[2] and day.[2] 48. Since I have seen you, business goes much better. 49. It was the signal that the enemy was approaching.

[1] Use imperfect subjunctive of **pedir**.
[2] Adverbial; insert **de**.

CHAPTER XIV

VERB FORMS

238. The changes in form which a verb undergoes are classified by voice, mood, tense, number, and person. The Spanish verb makes these changes by means of endings and auxiliaries. Their systematic arrangement is called conjugation.

239. Verbs are divided into three classes according to the endings of the infinitive:

I. **-ar** II. **-er** III. **-ir**

But the **-er** and **-ir** verbs differ in only four forms; namely, the infinitive, the first and second persons plural of the present indicative, and the second person plural of the imperative.

240. Regular Verbs.

INFINITIVE MOOD

PRESENT TENSE

compr**ar**, *to buy*	vend**er**, *to sell*	viv**ir**, *to live*

PARTICIPLES

PRESENT (GERUND)

compr**ando**, *buying*	vend**iendo**, *selling*	viv**iendo**, *living*

PAST

compr**ado**, *bought*	vend**ido**, *sold*	viv**ido**, *lived*

INDICATIVE MOOD

PRESENT TENSE

SING. 1. compr**o**	*I buy*	vend**o**	*I sell*	viv**o**	*I live*
	I do buy		*I do sell*		*I do live*
	I am buying		*I am selling*		*I am living*

© by Underwood and Underwood

VISTA GENERAL DE LA ALHAMBRA

La Alhambra fué una residencia y fortaleza de los monarcas moros construída sobre una colina que domina la ciudad de Granada. Circundan la Alhambra dobles murallas cuyas torres enormes. Granada fué sitiada por los ejércitos cristianos mandados por Fernando e Isabel, entrando en ella los Reyes Católicos el 6 de enero de 1492. Este título se lo otorgó el Papa por haber expulsado los últimos musulmanes de España

VISTA GENERAL DE LA ALHAMBRA

1. ¿Qué es la Alhambra?
2. ¿Cómo está situada respecto a la ciudad de Granada?
3. ¿Cuál de los reinos moros en España fué el último?
4. ¿Por qué pudo existir este reino más tiempo que los demás?
5. ¿Por qué a Fernando e Isabel les otorgó el Papa el título de los Reyes Católicos?
6. ¿Cuánto tiempo duró la dominación árabe en España?
7. ¿Qué suceso histórico ocurrió en el mismo año que la toma de Granada?

católico -a, *Catholic*
circundar, *to surround*
colina, f. *hill*
doble, *double*
dominación, f. *domination*
durar, *to last*
existir, *to exist*
expulsar, *to expel*
monarca, m. *monarch*
muralla, f. *wall*
musulman, *Moslem, Mohammedan*
ocurrir, *to happen*
otorgar, *to grant*
Papa, m. *the Pope*
reino, m. *kingdom*
respecto a, *in respect to*
suceso, m. *event*
título, m. *title*
toma, f. *capture*

2. compr**as**	*you buy* *you do buy* *you are buying*	vend**es**	*you sell* *you do sell* *you are selling*	viv**es**	*you live* *you do live* *you are living*
3. compr**a**	*he buys* *he does buy* *he is buying*	vend**e**	*he sells* *he does sell* *he is selling*	viv**e**	*he lives* *he does live* *he is living*
PLUR. 1. compr**amos**	*we buy* *we do buy* *we are buying*	vend**emos**	*we sell* *we do sell* *we are selling*	viv**imos**	*we live* *we do live* *we are living*
2. compr**áis**	*you buy* *you do buy* *you are buying*	vend**éis**	*you sell* *you do sell* *you are selling*	viv**ís**	*you live* *you do live* *you are living*
3. compr**an**	*they buy* *they do buy* *they are buying*	vend**en**	*they sell* *they do sell* *they are selling*	viv**en**	*they live* *they do live* *they are living*

NEGATIVE FORM

no compro, *I do not buy* etc.	**no vendo,** *I do not sell* etc.	**no vivo,** *I do not live* etc.

INTERROGATIVE FORM

¿Compra Vd.? *Do you buy?* etc.	**¿Vende Vd.?** *Do you sell?* etc.	**¿Vive Vd.?** *Do you live?* etc.

IMPERFECT TENSE

SING. 1. compr**aba**	*I was buying* *I used to buy*	vend**ía**	*I was selling* *I used to sell*
2. compr**abas**	*you were buying* *you used to buy*	vend**ías**	*you were selling* *you used to sell*
3. compr**aba**	*he was buying* *he used to buy*	vend**ía**	*he was selling* *he used to sell*
PLUR. 1. compr**ábamos**	*we were buying* *we used to buy*	vend**íamos**	*we were selling* *we used to sell*
2. compr**abais**	*you were buying* *you used to buy*	vend**íais**	*you were selling* *you used to sell*
3. compr**aban**	*they were buying* *they used to buy*	vend**ían**	*they were selling* *they used to sell*

vivir like **vender**

PRETERIT TENSE

Sing. 1.	compr**é**, *I bought*	vend**í**, *I sold*	**vivir** like **vender**
2.	compr**aste**, *you bought*	vend**iste**, *you sold*	
3.	compr**ó**, *he bought*	vend**ió**, *he sold*	
Plur. 1.	compr**amos**, *we bought*	vend**imos**, *we sold*	
2.	compr**asteis**, *you bought*	vend**isteis**, *you sold*	
3.	compr**aron**, *they bought*	vend**ieron**, *they sold*	

NEGATIVE FORM

no compré, *I did not buy*, etc. **no vendí**, *I did not sell*, etc.

INTERROGATIVE FORM

¿Compró Vd.? *Did you buy?* etc. **¿Vendió Vd.?** *Did you sell?* etc.

FUTURE TENSE

Sing. 1.	comprar**é**, *I shall buy*	vender**é**, *I shall sell*	
2.	comprar**ás**, *you will buy*	vivir**é**, *I shall live*	
3.	comprar**á**, *he will buy*	and same endings as for **comprar**	
Plur. 1.	comprar**emos**, *we shall buy*	added to the infinitive	
2.	comprar**éis**, *you will buy*		
3.	comprar**án**, *they will buy*		

CONDITIONAL

Sing. 1.	comprar**ía**, *I should buy*	vender**ía**, *I should sell*	
2.	comprar**ías**, *you would buy*	vivir**ía**, *I should live*	
3.	comprar**ía**, *he would buy*	and same endings as for **comprar**	
Plur. 1.	comprar**íamos**, *we should buy*	added to the infinitive	
2.	comprar**íais**, *you would buy*		
3.	comprar**ían**, *they would buy*		

IMPERATIVE MOOD

2d Sing.	compr**a**, *buy*	vend**e**, *sell*	viv**e**, *live*
2d Plur.	compr**ad**, *buy*	vend**ed**, *sell*	viv**id**, *live*

For the negative, use corresponding person and number of the present subjunctive: **no compres**, *do not buy*; see section 87.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

PRESENT TENSE

compr**e**	vend**a**	**vivir** like **vender**
compr**es**	vend**as**	throughout subjunctive
compr**e**	vend**a**	
compr**emos**	vend**amos**	
compr**éis**	vend**áis**	
compr**en**	vend**an**	

IMPERFECT TENSE

First Form		Second Form	
compr**ase**	vend**iese**	compr**ara**	vend**iera**
compr**ases**	vend**ieses**	compr**aras**	vend**ieras**
compr**ase**	vend**iese**	compr**ara**	vend**iera**
compr**ásemos**	vend**iésemos**	compr**áramos**	vend**iéramos**
compr**aseis**	vend**ieseis**	compr**arais**	vend**ierais**
compr**asen**	vend**iesen**	compr**aran**	vend**ieran**

FUTURE TENSE (HYPOTHETICAL)

compr**are**	vend**iere**
compr**ares**	vend**ieres**
compr**are**	vend**iere**
compr**áremos**	vend**iéremos**
compr**areis**	vend**iereis**
compr**aren**	vend**ieren**

NOTE. Translations of the subjunctive mood, being likely to cause misconceptions, are not given.

241. Compound Tenses. The compound tenses of all verbs are formed from the past participle and the various tenses of the auxiliary verb **haber,** *to have.*

INFINITIVE (PRESENT PERFECT)

haber comprado, *to have bought*

PARTICIPLE (PRESENT PERFECT OR PERFECT GERUND)

habiendo comprado, *having bought*

INDICATIVE MOOD

PRESENT PERFECT (pres. ind. of **haber** + past participle)

he comprado, *I have bought*, etc.

PLUPERFECT (imper. ind. of **haber** + past participle)

había comprado, *I had bought*, etc.

PRETERIT PERFECT (preterit ind. of **haber** + past participle)

hube comprado, *I had bought*, etc.

FUTURE PERFECT (fut. ind. of **haber** + past participle)

habré comprado, *I shall have bought*, etc.

CONDITIONAL PERFECT (conditional of **haber** + past participle)

habría comprado, *I should have bought*, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

PRESENT PERFECT (pres. subj. of **haber** + past participle)

haya comprado, etc.

PLUPERFECT 1st FORM (imper. subj. **-se** form of **haber** + past participle)

hubiese comprado, etc.

PLUPERFECT 2d FORM (imper. subj. **-ra** form of **haber** + past participle)

hubiera comprado, etc.

FUTURE PERFECT (fut. subj. of **haber** + past participle)

hubiere comprado, etc.

NOTE. The student, in forming compound tenses according to this scheme, must take care to use the correct form of the past participle; as **he vendido,** *I have sold*; **he escrito,** *I have written*; etc.

242. Orthographic Changes. As a Spanish verb throughout its conjugation maintains the sound of the final consonant of the radical,

it is necessary at times to change the spelling to preserve the sound. See section 7 for changes in spelling.

a. The following table shows changes of spelling which occur in both regular and irregular verbs.

VERBS WHOSE INFINITIVES

END WITH	CHANGE	BEFORE	IN	EXAMPLES
1. **car**	**c** to **qu**	**e**	1st person preterit indic., and all pres. subj.	**sacar,** *to draw out*
2. **gar**	**g** to **gu**			**llegar,** *to arrive*
3. **guar**	**gu** to **gü**			**averiguar,** *to ascertain*
4. **zar**	**z** to **c**			**lanzar,** *to throw*
5. **ger**	**g** to **j**	**o** and **a**	1st person present indic., and all pres. subj.	**coger,** *to catch*
6. **gir**	**g** to **j**			**dirigir,** *to address*
7. **quir**	**qu** to **c**			**delinquir,** *to transgress*
8. **guir**	**gu** to **g**			**distinguir,** *to distinguish*
9. consonant before **cer, cir**	**c** to **z**			**vencer,** *to conquer, fall due*
				esparcir, *to scatter*
10. Vowel before **cer, cir**	have **zc**			**conocer,** *to know*
				lucir, *to shine*

1.	Preterit indic.		**saqué, sacaste,** etc.	Present subj.	**saque,** etc.
2.	"	"	**llegué, llegaste,** etc.	" "	**llegue,** etc.
3.	"	"	**averigüé, averiguaste,** etc.	" "	**averigüe,** etc.
4.	"	"	**lancé, lanzaste,** etc.	" "	**lance,** etc.
5.	Present	"	**cojo, coges,** etc.	" "	**coja,** etc.
6.	"	"	**dirijo, diriges,** etc.	" "	**dirija,** etc.
7.	"	"	**delinco, delinques,** etc.	" "	**delinca,** etc.
8.	"	"	**distingo, distingues,** etc.	" "	**distinga,** etc.
9.	"	"	**venzo, vences,** etc.	" "	**venza,** etc.
	"	"	**esparzo, esparces,** etc.	" "	**esparza,** etc.
10.	"	"	**conozco, conoces,** etc.	" "	**conozca,** etc.
	"	"	**luzco, luces,** etc.	" "	**luzca,** etc.

NOTE. Important exceptions to 10 are **mecer,** *to rock*; **cocer,** *to cook, to boil*; **empecer,** *to damage*, with forms according to 9: while **hacer,** *to make*; **decir,** *to say*, are irregular, see section 250.

b. Unaccented **i** cannot stand between two vowels, but is changed to **y**. This occurs whenever an ending containing the diphthong **ie** or **ió** is added to a verb-stem ending in a vowel; as,

Creer, *to believe*

Preterit Indicative	Imperfect Subjunctive
creí	first form
creíste	creyese, etc.
creyó	
creímos	second form
creísteis	creyera, etc.
creyeron	
Present Participle	**Future Subjunctive**
creyendo	creyere, etc.

Many verbs ending in **-uir** have similar changes; see section 248.

c. Verbs whose stems end in **ll** or **ñ** lose the **i** of the diphthongs **ie** and **ió**; as, **engullir,** *to devour*, and **tañer,** *to play* (*a stringed instrument*):

Preterit Indicative		Imperfect Subjunctive	
engullí	tañí	first form	
engulliste	tañiste	engullese	tañese
engulló	tañó		
engullimos	tañimos	second form	
engullisteis	tañisteis	engullera	tañera
engulleron	tañeron		
Present Participle		**Future Subjunctive**	
engullendo	tañendo	engullere	tañere

(1) Likewise after **j** of the preterit stems of **decir, -ducir,** and **traer,** the **i** of the diphthongs **ie** and **ió** disappears; see the verbs, section 250.

d. Most verbs ending in **-iar** and **-uar** accent the weak vowel of the termination in the 1st, 2d, and 3d persons singular and the 3d

plural of the present indicative and present subjunctive, and the 2d singular of the imperative.

Enviar, *to send*

Present Indicative	Present Subjunctive	Imperative
envío	envíe	——
envías	envíes	envía
envía	envíe	——
enviamos	enviemos	——
enviáis	enviéis	enviad
envían	envíen	——

Continuar, *to continue*

Present Indicative	Present Subjunctive	Imperative
continúo	continúe	——
continúas	continúes	continúa
continúa	continúe	——
continuamos	continuemos	——
continuáis	continuéis	continuad
continúan	continúen	——

Some important verbs which do *not* accent the vowel are

cambiar, *exchange*
diferenciar, *differentiate*
estudiar, *study*
limpiar, *clean*
principiar, *begin*
presenciar, *witness*
remediar, *remedy*
All verbs in **-guar** (see section 242, *a*, 3)

e. The past participles of verbs of the **-er** and **-ir** conjugations whose stems end in **a**, **e**, or **o** require a written accent on the termination to show that the adjacent vowels do not form a diphthong with a consequent shift of spoken accent.

caído **leído** **corroído**

Note. Common verbs conjugated like the models in section 242 are

Radical change indicated thus, **(i)** **(ue)**

a. 1. **acercarse,** *approach*
fabricar, *manufacture*
provocar, *provoke*
suplicar, *beg*
tocar, *touch*
volcar (ue), *overturn*

2. **cargar,** *load*
colgar (ue), *hang*
entregar, *deliver*
juzgar, *judge*
negar (ie), *deny*
pagar, *pay*
pegar, *stick, strike*
rogar (ue), *ask*

3. **apaciguar,** *pacify*
fraguar, *forge, invent*
menguar, *lessen*
santiguar, *make sign of cross, bless*

4. **alcanzar,** *reach*
almorzar (ue), *breakfast*
calzar, *put on (shoes etc.)*
empezar (ie), *begin*
forzar (ue), *force*
gozar, *enjoy*
rezar, *pray*
tropezar (ie), *stumble*

5. **acoger,** *receive*
escoger, *choose, select*
recoger, *pick up, collect*
proteger, *protect*

6. **afligirse,** *worry*
corregir (i), *correct*
elegir (i), *elect*
exigir, *demand*
regir (i), *rule*

8. **seguir (i),** *follow*
See section 248, 2

9. **torcer (ue),** *twist*
uncir, *yoke*

10. **agradecer,** *thank*
carecer, *lack*
crecer, *grow*
merecer, *deserve*
parecer, *seem*
permanecer, *remain*

(There are about 200 verbs having this termination. Many are formed from adjectives, thus:

duro, *hard*; **endurecer,** *harden*
verde, *green*; **enverdecer,** *become green*

Such verbs are called inceptive verbs.)

b. **leer,** *read*
poseer, *possess*

Proveer, *provide,* has past participles **proveído** and **provisto.**

c. **bullir,** *boil*
mullir, *beat soft*
bruñir, *polish*
ceñir (i), *gird*
reñir (i), *scold*

d. The following verbs accent the vowel:

confiar, *trust*
criar, *raise, educate*
guiar, *guide*
variar, *vary*
acentuar, *accent*
efectuar, *effect*

243. Principal Parts. Radical-changing and irregular verbs are conveniently memorized by referring their forms to six principal parts, as follows:

INFINITIVE	PRESENT PARTICIPLE	PAST PARTICIPLE	PRESENT INDICATIVE	PRETERIT INDICATIVE	PRETERIT INDICATIVE
gives		gives	1ST SING.	1ST SING.	3D SING.
(from whole infinitive)		COMPOUND TENSES	gives		gives
FUTURE			PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE		IMPERFECT AND FUTURE SUBJUNCTIVE
CONDITIONAL					
(from stem of infinitive)					
PRESENT INDICATIVE (except 1st sing.)					
IMPERFECT INDICATIVE					
IMPERATIVE					

(This scheme is not an absolute guide, as there are some exceptions, but it is an aid to memory.)

244. Radical-Changing Verbs are those whose irregularities consist chiefly in a change of the radical vowel when it is accented or when it precedes certain other vowels. The following may serve as models, divided for convenience into classes.

Class I. Verbs having a change of **e** to **ie** and **o** to **ue** when the stem is accented.

1. **Pensar,** *to think*

PRIN. PARTS Pensar, pensando, pensado, pienso, pensé, pensó

PRES. IND.	IMPF. IND.	IMPERAT.	PRES. SUBJ.	FUT. IND.	PRET. IND.
pienso	pensaba	——	piense	pensaré	pensé
piensas	*etc.*	piensa	pienses	*etc.*	pensaste
piensa		——	piense		pensó
pensamos		——	pensemos	CONDITIONAL	pensamos
pensáis		pensad	penséis	pensaría	pensasteis
piensan		——	piensen	*etc.*	pensaron

IMPF. SUBJ.		FUT. SUBJ.
1ST FORM	2D FORM	
pensase	pensara	pensare
etc.	*etc.*	*etc.*

2. Contar, *to count*

PRIN. PARTS Contar, contando, contado, cuento, conté, contó

PRES. IND.	IMPF. IND.	IMPERAT.	PRES. SUBJ.	FUT. IND.	PRET. IND.
cuento	contaba	——	cuente	contaré	conté
cuentas	*etc.*	cuenta	cuentes	*etc.*	contaste
cuenta		——	cuente		contó
contamos		——	contemos	CONDITIONAL	contamos
contáis		contad	contéis	contaría	contasteis
cuentan		——	cuenten	*etc.*	contaron

IMPF. SUBJ.		FUT. SUBJ.
1ST FORM	2D FORM	
contase, *etc.*	contara, *etc.*	contare, *etc.*

3. Perder, *to lose*

PRIN. PARTS Perder, perdiendo, perdido, pierdo, perdí, perdió

PRES. IND.	IMPF. IND.	IMPERAT.	PRES. SUBJ.	FUT. IND.	PRET. IND.
pierdo	perdía	——	pierda	perderé	perdí
pierdes	*etc.*	pierde	pierdas	*etc.*	perdiste
pierde		——	pierda		perdió
perdemos		——	perdamos	CONDITIONAL	perdimos
perdéis		perded	perdáis	perdería	perdisteis
pierden		——	pierdan	*etc.*	perdieron

IMPF. SUBJ.		FUT. SUBJ.
1ST FORM	2D FORM	
perdiese, *etc.*	perdiera, *etc.*	perdiere, *etc.*

4. Mover, *to move*

PRIN. PARTS Mover, moviendo, movido, muevo, moví, movió

PRES. IND.	IMPF. IND.	IMPERAT.	PRES. SUBJ.	FUT. IND.	PRET. IND.
muevo	movía	——	mueva	moveré	moví
mueves	*etc.*	mueve	muevas	*etc.*	moviste
mueve		——	mueva		movió
movemos		——	movamos	CONDITIONAL	movimos
movéis		moved	mováis	movería	movisteis
mueven		——	muevan	*etc.*	movieron

IMPF. SUBJ.		FUT. SUBJ.
1ST FORM	2D FORM	
moviese, *etc.*	moviera, *etc.*	moviere, *etc.*

1. Like **pensar** are

acertar, *hit the mark*
alentar, *encourage*
apretar, *squeeze*
atravesar, *cross*
calentar, *warm*
cerrar, *shut*
confesar, *confess*
despertar, *wake*
empezar, *begin*
encomendar, *recommend*
gobernar, *govern*
helar, *freeze*
manifestar, *show, inform*
merendar, *take lunch*
nevar, *snow*
quebrar, *break*
regar, *irrigate, water*
remendar, *mend, patch*
sentarse, *sit down*
temblar, *tremble*

2. Like **contar** are

acordarse, *remember*
acostarse, *go to bed*
almorzar, *take breakfast*
apostar, *wager, bet*
colgar, *hang*
consolar, *console*
costar, *cost*
encontrar, *meet*
forzar, *force*
mostrar, *show*
probar, *try, test*
recordar, *remind*
rodar, *roll*
rogar, *ask, beg*
soltar, *let go, loosen*
sonar, *ring*
soñar, *dream*
tronar, *thunder*
volar, *fly*
volcar, *upset*

3. Like **perder** are

ascender, *ascend*
atender, *heed*
defender, *defend*
descender, *descend*
encender, *kindle, light*
entender, *understand*
extender, *extend*
verter, *pour, shed*

4. Like **mover** are

doler, *pain, ache*
llover, *rain*
morder, *bite*
torcer, *twist*

245. Belonging to Class I are certain verbs with peculiarities:

1. **Errar**, *to err*, has **ye** in place of **ie** to avoid that spelling at the beginning of a word.

PRIN. PARTS Errar, errando, errado, yerro, erré, erró

PRES. IND.	PRES. SUBJ.	IMPERAT.
yerro	yerre	——
yerras	yerres	yerra
yerra	yerre	——
erramos	erremos	——
erráis	erréis	errad
yerran	yerren	——

2. a. **Jugar,** *to play*, has **ue** when the stem is accented. For spelling of present subjunctive and first person singular preterit, see section 242, *a*, 2.

PRIN. PARTS Jugar, jugando, jugado, juego, jugué, jugó

PRES. IND.	IMPF. IND.	IMPERAT.	PRES. SUBJ.	FUT. IND.	PRET. IND.
juego	jugaba	——	juegue	jugaré	jugué
juegas	*etc.*	juega	juegues	*etc.*	jugaste
juega		——	juegue		jugó
jugamos		——	juguemos	CONDITIONAL	jugamos
jugáis		jugad	juguéis	jugaría	jugasteis
juegan		——	jueguen	*etc.*	jugaron

IMPF. SUBJ.		FUT. SUBJ.
1ST FORM	2D FORM	
jugase, *etc.*	jugara, *etc.*	jugare, *etc.*

b. **Agorar,** *to augur*, and other verbs having **go** in the stem, as **degollar,** *to behead*, and **avergonzar,** *to shame*, will require the diæresis when this syllable breaks to **ue** under the accent. Otherwise like **contar.**

PRIN. PARTS Agorar, agorando, agorado, agüero, agoré, agoró

PRES. IND.	PRES. SUBJ.	IMPERAT.
agüero	agüere	——
agüeras	agüeres	agüera
agüera	agüere	——
agoramos	agoremos	——
agoráis	agoréis	agorad
agüeran	agüeren	——

c. **Desosar,** *to bone*, and **desovar,** *to spawn*, have an **h** inserted before **ue** in the accented syllable.

PRES. IND.	PRES. SUBJ.	IMPERAT.
deshueso	deshuese	——
deshuesas	deshueses	deshuesa
deshuesa	deshuese	——
desosamos	desosemos	——
desosáis	desoséis	desosad
deshuesan	deshuesen	——

3. *a.* **Discernir,** *to discern*, being derived from **cerner,** has the vowel-changes of **perder** but the endings of the **-ir** conjugation in the first and second plural, the present indicative, the second plural imperative, and the infinitive.

PRIN. PARTS Discernir, discerniendo, discernido, discierno, discerní, discernió

PRES. IND.	PRES. SUBJ.	IMPERAT.
discierno	discierna	——
disciernes	disciernas	discierne
discierne	discierna	——
discernimos	discernamos	——
discernís	discernáis	discernid
disciernen	disciernan	——

b. **Concernir,** *to concern*, has the peculiarities of **discernir,** but is defective, being used only in the third person singular and plural of each tense.

4. *a.* **Volver,** *to return*, has an irregular past participle but is otherwise like **mover.**

PRIN. PARTS Volver, volviendo, vuelto, vuelvo, volví, volvió

Like **volver** are

devolver, *give back*
envolver, *wrap up*
revolver, *stir*
absolver, *absolve*
disolver, *dissolve*
resolver, *resolve*
solver, *loosen*

b. **Oler,** *to smell*, has **hue** when the stem is accented, because no word should begin with **ue.**

PRIN. PARTS Oler, oliendo, olido, huelo, olí, olió

PRES. IND.	PRES. SUBJ.	IMPERAT.
huelo	huela	——
hueles	huelas	huele
huele	huela	——
olemos	olamos	——
oléis	oláis	oled
huelen	huelan	——

246. Class II. Verbs whose stem-vowel **e** becomes **ie** when accented, and **i** before an accented syllable containing **ie, ió,** or **a**; or whose stem-vowel **o** becomes **ue** or **u** under the same circumstances.

1. **Sentir,** *to feel*

PRIN. PARTS Sentir, sintiendo, sentido, siento, sentí, sintió

PRES. IND.	IMPF. IND.	IMPERAT.	PRES. SUBJ.	FUT. IND.	PRET. IND.
siento	sentía	——	sienta	sentiré	sentí
sientes	sentías	siente	sientas	*etc.*	sentiste
siente	sentía	——	sienta		sintió
sentimos	sentíamos	——	sintamos	CONDITIONAL	sentimos
sentís	sentíais	sentid	sintáis	sentiría	sentisteis
sienten	sentían	——	sientan	*etc.*	sintieron

IMPF. SUBJ.		FUT. SUBJ.
1ST FORM	2D FORM	
sintiese	sintiera	sintiere
etc.	*etc.*	*etc.*

2. **Dormir,** *to sleep*

PRIN. PARTS Dormir, durmiendo, dormido, duermo, dormí, durmió

PRES. IND.	IMPF. IND.	IMPERAT.	PRES. SUBJ.	FUT. IND.	PRET. IND.
duermo	dormía	——	duerma	dormiré	dormí
duermes	*etc.*	duerme	duermas	*etc.*	dormiste
duerme		——	duerma		durmió
dormimos		——	durmamos	CONDITIONAL	dormimos
dormís		dormid	durmáis	dormiría	dormisteis
duermen		——	duerman	*etc.*	durmieron

IMPF. SUBJ.		FUT. SUBJ.
1ST FORM	2D FORM	
durmiese	durmiera	durmiere
etc.	*etc.*	*etc.*

1. Like **sentir** are

advertir, *warn*	**divertir,** *amuse*	**mentir,** *lie*
arrepentirse, *repent*	**herir,** *strike, wound*	**preferir,** *prefer*
convertir, *convert*	**hervir,** *boil*	**referir,** *relate*
consentir, *consent*	**invertir,** *invest*	**resentirse,** *resent*

2. Like **dormir,** but with irregular past participle, is **morir,** *to die.*

PRIN. PARTS Morir, muriendo, muerto, muero, morí, murió

a. The past participal **muerto** is used with active meaning instead of **matado** when referring to human beings; as, **Han muerto al capitán,** *They have killed the captain.*

3. **Adquirir,** *to acquire,* and **inquirir,** *to inquire,* have **ie** when the stem is accented and **i** when unaccented.

PRIN. PARTS Adquirir, adquiriendo, adquirido, adquiero, adquirí, adquirió

PRES. IND.	PRES. SUBJ.	IMPERAT.	
adquiero	adquiera	——	Other forms
adquieres	adquieras	adquiere	regular
adquiere	adquiera	——	
adquirimos	adquiramos	——	
adquirís	adquiráis	adquirid	
adquieren	adquieran	——	

247. Class III. Verbs whose stem-vowel **e** becomes **i** when accented, or before an accented syllable containing **ie, ió,** or **a.**

1. **Pedir,** *to request, ask for*

PRIN. PARTS Pedir, pidiendo, pedido, pido, pedí, pidió

PRES. IND.	IMPF. IND.	IMPERAT.	PRES. SUBJ.	FUT. IND.	PRET. IND.
pido	pedía	——	pida	pediré	pedí
pides	pedías	pide	pidas	*etc.*	pediste
pide	pedía	——	pida		pidió
pedimos	pedíamos	——	pidamos	CONDITIONAL	pedimos
pedís	pedíais	pedid	pidáis	pediría	pedisteis
piden	pedían	——	pidan	*etc.*	pidieron

IMPF. SUBJ.		FUT. SUBJ.
1ST FORM	2D FORM	
pidiese	pidiera	pidiere
etc.	*etc.*	*etc.*

Like **pedir** are

competir, *compete*
concebir, *conceive*
derretir, *melt*
despedirse, *take leave*
expedir, *forward, ship*
gemir, *groan*
impedir, *prevent*
medir, *measure*
rendirse, *surrender*
repetir, *repeat*
servir, *serve*
vestir, *dress*
corregir, *correct*
elegir, *elect*
regir, *rule*

See section 242, *a*, 6.

ceñir, *gird*
reñir, *scold*
teñir, *dye*

See section 242, *c*.

2. **Seguir,** *to follow*, and its derivatives are like **pedir,** but with orthographic changes according to section 242, *a*, 8.

PRIN. PARTS Seguir, siguiendo, seguido, sigo, seguí, siguió

PRES. IND.	IMPF. IND.	IMPERAT.	PRES. SUBJ.	FUT. IND.	PRET. IND.
sigo	seguía	——	siga	seguiré	seguí
sigues	*etc.*	sigue	sigas	*etc.*	seguiste
sigue		——	siga		siguió
seguimos		——	sigamos	CONDITIONAL	seguimos
seguís		seguid	sigáis	seguiría	seguisteis
siguen		——	sigan	*etc.*	siguieron

IMPF. SUBJ.		FUT. SUBJ.
1ST FORM	2D FORM	
siguiese, *etc.*	siguiera, *etc.*	siguiere, *etc.*

Like **seguir** are

conseguir, *succeed* **perseguir,** *pursue* **proseguir,** *prosecute*

3. **Erguir,** *to erect*, may have either **ie** (written **ye**) or **i** when the stem is accented.

PRIN. PARTS Erguir, irguiendo, erguido, {yergo / irgo}, erguí, irguió

PRES. IND.	PRES. SUBJ.	IMPERAT.	
yergo, irgo	yerga, irga	——	Other forms like **seguir**
yergues, irgues	yergas, irgas	yergue, irgue	
yergue, irgue	yerga, irga	——	
erguimos	irgamos	——	
erguís	irgáis	erguid	
yerguen, irguen	yergan, irgan	——	

© by Underwood and Underwood

EL PATIO DE LOS LEONES EN LA ALHAMBRA

En el centro está la fuente sostenida por doce leones. El patio está circuido por corredores y una galería que sostienen 128 columnas de alabastro muy delicadas. Constituyen el ornamento de las paredes azulejos azules y amarillos y escudos en que se leen sentencias árabes

EL PATIO DE LOS LEONES

1. ¿ Qué da nombre a este patio ?
2. ¿ Qué es un patio ?
3. ¿ Hay una o dos tazas para el agua ?
4. ¿ Adónde desciende el chorro de agua ?
5. ¿ Para qué sirve el agua ?
6. ¿ Para qué sirven los leones ?
7. ¿ Le parecen a Vd. leones estos animales ?
8. ¿ Por qué está elevado el suelo de los corredores sobre el nivel del patio ?
9. ¿ Qué contraste hace el color de las columnas con el de las paredes ?

alabastro, m. *alabaster*
azulejo, m. *tile*
circuído, *surrounded*
columna, f. *column*
constituir, *to form*
contraste, m. *contrast*
corredor, m. *corridor*
chorro, m. *stream*
delicado, m. *slender*
descender (ie), *to descend*
escudo, m. *shield*
galería, f. *gallery*
león, m. *lion*
nivel, m. *level*
ornamento, m. *ornament*
patio, m. *courtyard*
sentencia, f. *maxim*
sostener, *to support*

4. Verbs ending in **-eír** belong to this class, but lose one **i** when two **i's** come together. Note the many forms with written accent.

Reír, *to laugh*

PRIN. PARTS Reír, riendo, reído, río, reí, **rió**

PRES. IND.	IMPF. IND.	IMPERAT.	PRES. SUBJ.	FUT. IND.	PRET. IND.
río	reía	——	ría	reiré	reí
ríes	*etc.*	ríe	rías	*etc.*	reíste
ríe		——	ría		**rió**
reímos		——	riamos	CONDITIONAL	reímos
reís		reíd	riáis	reiría	reísteis
ríen		——	rían	*etc.*	rieron

IMPF. SUBJ.		FUT. SUBJ
1ST FORM	2D FORM	
riese	riera	riere
etc.	*etc.*	*etc.*

Like **reír** are

engreír, *make conceited* **sonreír,** *smile*

Freír, *fry*, has irregular past participle **frito,** as well as **freído.**

248. Verbs ending in **-uir** have a **y** added to the stem-vowel **u** except before **i**; and **i** unaccented between two vowels is changed to **y.**

1. **Huir,** *to run away, flee*

PRIN. PARTS Huir, huyendo, huído, huyo, huí, huyó

PRES. IND.	IMPF. IND.	IMPERAT.	PRES. SUBJ.	FUT. IND.	PRET. IND.
huyo	huía	——	huya	huiré	huí
huyes	huías	huye	huyas	*etc.*	huiste
huye	huía	——	huya		huyó
huimos	huíamos	——	huyamos	CONDITIONAL	huimos
huís	huíais	huid	huyáis	huiría	huisteis
huyen	huían	——	huyan	*etc.*	huyeron

IMPF. SUBJ.		FUT. SUBJ.
1ST FORM	2D FORM	
huyese	huyera	huyere
etc.	*etc.*	*etc.*

Like **huir** are

atribuir, *attribute*	**excluir**, *exclude*
concluir, *finish*	**incluir**, *include, inclose*
construir, *construct*	**influir**, *influence*
contribuir, *contribute*	**instruir**, *instruct*
destituir, *remove from office*	**obstruir**, *obstruct*
destruir, *destroy*	**restituir**, *restore*
distribuir, *distribute*	**sustituir**, *substitute*

2. **Argüir** requires the diæresis before **i** but not before **y**.

PRIN. PARTS Argüir, arguyendo, argüido, arguyo, argüí, arguyó
IMPF. IND. Argüía, *etc.*

249. Irregular Past Participles. Some verbs otherwise regular have irregular past participles:

abrir	*to open*	**abierto**
cubrir	*to cover*	**cubierto**
descubrir	*to discover*	**descubierto**
escribir	*to write*	**escrito**
freír	*to fry*	**freído, frito**
imprimir	*to print*	**impreso**
oprimir	*to oppress*	**oprimido, opreso**
prender	*to take, arrest*	**prendido, preso**
proveer	*to provide*	**proveído, provisto**
romper	*to break*	**rompido, roto**
suprimir	*to suppress*	**suprimido, supreso**

a. The form **roto** is used when the verb is transitive, otherwise **rompido.**

Ha roto la pierna.	*He has broken his leg.*
He rompido con mi novia.	*I have broken with my sweetheart.*

b. The forms **frito, opreso, preso, provisto, supreso,** are preferred as adjectives. With **haber** the regular form is used, though **frito** and **provisto** may occur.

Pescado frito.	*Fried fish.*
Parrón está preso.	*Parrón is captured.*
Ha prendido el fuego en el convento.	*The fire spread to,* or *broke out in, the convent.*

250. Irregular Verbs may be conveniently divided into two groups according to their preterits. In one group, the preterits, like those of regular verbs, are accented on the ending in the first and third persons of the singular; the preterits of the second group accent the stem in the first and third singular. The arrangement is alphabetical in each group.

Group I.

Asir, *to grasp*

PRIN. PARTS Asir, asiendo, asido, asgo, así, asió

PRES. IND.	IMPF. IND.	IMPERAT.	PRES. SUBJ.	FUT. IND.	PRET. IND.
asgo	asía	——	asga	asiré	así
ases	*etc.*	ase	asgas	*etc.*	asiste
ase		——	asga		asió
asimos		——	asgamos	CONDITIONAL	asimos
asís		asid	asgáis	asiría	asisteis
asen		——	asgan	*etc.*	asieron

IMPF. SUBJ.		FUT. SUBJ.
1ST FORM	2D FORM	
asiese	asiera	asiere
etc.	*etc.*	*etc.*

Caer, *to fall*

PRIN. PARTS Caer, cayendo, caído, caigo, caí, cayó

PRES. IND.	IMPF. IND.	IMPERAT.	PRES. SUBJ.	FUT. IND.	PRET. IND.
caigo	caía	——	caiga	caeré	caí
caes	*etc.*	cae	caigas	*etc.*	caíste
cae		——	caiga		cayó
caemos		——	caigamos	CONDITIONAL	caímos
caéis		caed	caigáis	caería	caísteis
caen		——	caigan	*etc.*	cayeron

IMPF. SUBJ.		FUT. SUBJ.
1ST FORM	2D FORM	
cayese	cayera	cayere
etc.	*etc.*	*etc.*

Note that a written accent is necessary on the **i** of the past participle and of the second singular and first and second plural of the preterit.

Dar, *to give*

PRIN. PARTS Dar, dando, dado, doy, di, dió

PRES. IND.	IMPF IND.	IMPERAT.	PRES. SUBJ.	FUT. IND.	PRET. IND.
doy	daba	——	dé	daré	di
das	*etc.*	da	des	*etc.*	diste
da		——	dé		dió
damos		——	demos	CONDITIONAL	dimos
dais		dad	deis	daría	disteis
dan		——	den	*etc.*	dieron

IMPF. SUBJ.		FUT. SUBJ.
1ST FORM	2D FORM	
diese, *etc.*	diera, *etc.*	diere, *etc.*

Ir, *to go*

PRIN. PARTS Ir, yendo, ido, voy, fuí, fué

PRES. IND.	IMPF. IND.	IMPERAT.	PRES. SUBJ	FUT. IND.	PRET. IND
voy	iba	——	vaya	iré	fuí
vas	ibas	ve	vayas	irás, *etc.*	fuiste
va	*etc.*	——	vaya		fué
vamos		vamos	vayamos	CONDITIONAL	fuimos
vais		id	vayáis	iría	fuisteis
van		——	vayan	irías, *etc.*	fueron

IMPF. SUBJ.		FUT. SUBJ.
1ST FORM	2D FORM	
fuese, *etc.*	fuera, *etc.*	fuere, *etc.*

Irse, *to go away*

PRIN. PARTS Irse, yéndose, ido, me voy, me fuí, se fué

Oír, *to hear*

PRIN. PARTS Oír, oyendo, oído, oigo, oí, oyó

PRES. IND.	IMPF. IND.	IMPERAT.	PRES. SUBJ.	FUT. IND.	PRET. IND.
oigo	oía	——	oiga	oiré	oí
oyes	*etc.*	oye	oigas	*etc.*	oíste
oye		——	oiga		oyó
oímos		——	oigamos	CONDITIONAL	oímos
oís		oíd	oigáis	oiría	oísteis
oyen		——	oigan	*etc.*	oyeron

IMPF. SUBJ.		FUT. SUBJ.
1ST FORM	2D FORM	
oyese, *etc.*	oyera, *etc.*	oyere, *etc.*

Note the many written accents, occurring on **i** when stressed after **o**.

Salir, *to go out, leave*

PRIN. PARTS Salir, saliendo, salido, salgo, salí, salió

PRES. IND.	IMPF. IND.	IMPERAT.	PRES. SUBJ.	FUT. IND.	PRET. IND
salgo	salía	——	salga	saldré	salí
sales	*etc.*	sal	salgas	saldrás, *etc.*	saliste
sale		——	salga		salió
salimos		——	salgamos	CONDITIONAL	salimos
salís		salid	salgáis	saldría	salisteis
salen		——	salgan	saldrías, *etc.*	salieron

IMPF. SUBJ.		FUT. SUBJ.
1ST FORM	2D FORM	
saliese, *etc.*	saliera, *etc.*	saliere, *etc.*

Ser, *to be*

PRIN. PARTS Ser, siendo, sido, soy, fuí, fué

PRES. IND.	IMPF. IND.	IMPERAT.	PRES. SUBJ.	FUT. IND.	PRET. IND
soy	era	——	sea	seré	fuí
eres	eras	sé	seas	*etc.*	fuiste
es	era	——	sea		fué
somos	éramos	——	seamos	CONDITIONAL	fuimos
sois	erais	sed	seáis	sería	fuisteis
son	eran	——	sean	*etc.*	fueron

IMPF. SUBJ.		FUT. SUBJ.
1ST FORM	2D FORM	
fuese, *etc.*	fuera, *etc.*	fuere, *etc.*

Valer, *to be worth*

PRIN. PARTS Valer, valiendo, valido, valgo, valí, valió

PRES. IND.	IMPF. IND.	IMPERAT.	PRES. SUBJ.	FUT. IND.	PRET. IND
valgo	valía	——	valga	valdré	valí
vales	*etc.*	val *or* vale	valgas	*etc.*	valiste
vale		——	valga		valió
valemos		——	valgamos	CONDITIONAL	valimos
valéis		valed	valgáis	valdría	valisteis
valen		——	valgan	*etc.*	valieron

IMPF. SUBJ.		FUT. SUBJ.
1ST FORM	2D FORM	
valiese, *etc.*	valiera, *etc.*	valiere, *etc.*

Derivatives are

equivaler, *to be equal to* **prevaler,** *avail*

Ver, *to see*

PRIN. PARTS Ver, viendo, visto, veo, vi, vió

PRES. IND.	IMPF. IND.	IMPERAT.	PRES. SUBJ.	FUT. IND.	PRET. IND.
veo	veía	——	vea	veré	vi
ves	*etc.*	ve	veas	*etc.*	viste
ve		——	vea		vió
vemos		——	veamos	CONDITIONAL	vimos
veis		ved	veáis	vería	visteis
ven		——	vean	*etc.*	vieron

IMPF. SUBJ.		FUT. SUBJ.
1ST FORM	2D FORM	
viese	viera	viere
etc.	*etc.*	*etc.*

The derivative **proveer,** *to provide*, is regular but has also the irregular past participle **provisto.**

Yacer, *to lie*

PRIN. PARTS Yacer; yaciendo; yacido; yazco, yazgo, *or* yago; yací; yació

PRES. IND.	IMPF. IND.	IMPERAT.	PRES. SUBJ.	FUT. IND.	PRET. IND.
yazco, yazgo,	yacía	——	yazca, yazga,	yaceré	yací
or yago	*etc.*	yace	yaga	*etc.*	yaciste
yaces		*or* yaz	*etc.*		yació
yace		——			yacimos
yacemos		——		CONDITIONAL	yacisteis
yacéis		yaced		yacería	yacieron
yacen		——		*etc.*	

IMPF. SUBJ.		FUT. SUBJ.
1ST FORM	2D FORM	
yaciese	yaciera	yaciere
etc.	*etc.*	*etc.*

Group II. The preterits in this group have unaccented **e** and **o** in the first and third persons of the singular because the spoken accent falls on the stem; the stem-vowel is usually different from the stem-vowel of the infinitive.

Andar, *to go*

PRIN. PARTS Andar, andando, andado, ando, anduve, anduvo

PRES. IND.	IMPF. IND.	IMPERAT.	PRES. SUBJ.	FUT. IND.	PRET. IND.
ando	andaba	——	ande	andaré	anduve
etc.	*etc.*	anda	*etc.*	*etc.*	anduviste
		——			anduvo
		——		CONDITIONAL	anduvimos
		andad		andaría	anduvisteis
		——		*etc.*	anduvieron

IMPF. SUBJ.		FUT. SUBJ.
1ST FORM	2D FORM	
anduviese, *etc.*	anduviera, *etc.*	anduviere, *etc.*

Caber, *to be contained in, hold*

PRIN. PARTS Caber, cabiendo, cabido, quepo, cupe, cupo

PRES. IND.	IMPF. IND.	IMPERAT.	PRES. SUBJ.	FUT. IND.	PRET. IND.
quepo	cabía	——	quepa	cabré	cupe
cabes	*etc.*	cabe	quepas	*etc.*	cupiste
cabe		——	quepa		cupo
cabemos		——	quepamos	CONDITIONAL	cupimos
cabéis		cabed	quepáis	cabría	cupisteis
caben		——	quepan	*etc.*	cupieron

IMPF. SUBJ.		FUT. SUBJ.
1ST FORM	2D FORM	
cupiese, *etc.*	cupiera, *etc.*	cupiere, *etc.*

Decir, *to say*

PRIN. PARTS Decir, diciendo, dicho, digo, dije, dijo

PRES. IND.	IMPF. IND.	IMPERAT.	PRES. SUBJ.	FUT. IND.	PRET. IND
digo	decía	——	diga	diré	dije
dices	*etc.*	di	digas	dirás, *etc.*	dijiste
dice		——	diga		dijo
decimos		——	digamos	CONDITIONAL	dijimos
decís		decid	digáis	diría	dijisteis
dicen		——	digan	dirías, *etc.*	dijeron

IMPF. SUBJ.		FUT. SUBJ.
1ST FORM	2D FORM	
dijese, *etc.*	dijera, *etc.*	dijere, *etc.*

The present indicative third singular has the special indefinite form **diz,** *it is said.*

The derivatives **bendecir,** *to bless*, and **maldecir,** *to curse*, differ from **decir** as follows:

Past Part.	Imperative (2d sing.)	Fut. Ind.
bendecido	bendice	bendeciré, *etc.*
maldecido	maldice	maldeciré, *etc.*

Other derivatives are like **decir** except in the imperative singular:

	Imperative (2d sing.)
contradecir, *contradict*	contradice
desdecir, *gainsay*	desdice
predecir, *predict*	predice

-ducir (stem now obsolete)

Conducir, *to conduct, drive*

Prin. Parts conducir, conduciendo, conducido, conduzco, conduje, condujo

Pres. Ind.	Impf. Ind.	Imperat.	Pres. Subj.	Fut. Ind.	Pret. Ind.
conduzco	conducía	——	conduzca	conduciré	conduje
conduces	*etc.*	conduce	conduzcas	*etc.*	condujiste
conduce		——	conduzca		condujo
conducimos		——	conduzcamos	Conditional	condujimos
conducís		conducid	conduzcáis	conduciría	condujisteis
conducen		——	conduzcan	*etc.*	condujeron

Impf. Subj.		Fut. Subj.
1st form	2d form	
condujese	condujera	condujere
etc.	*etc.*	*etc.*

Derivatives are

deducir, *deduce*
educir, *bring out*
inducir, *induce*
introducir, *introduce*
producir, *produce*
reducir, *reduce*
reproducir, *reproduce*
traducir, *translate*

Estar, *to be*

PRIN. PARTS Estar, estando, estado, estoy, estuve, estuvo

PRES. IND.	IMPF. IND.	IMPERAT.	PRES. SUBJ.	FUT. IND.	PRET. IND.
estoy	estaba	——	esté	estaré	estuve
estás	*etc.*	está	estés	*etc.*	estuviste
está		——	esté		estuvo
estamos		——	estemos	CONDITIONAL	estuvimos
estáis		estad	estéis	estaría	estuvisteis
están		——	estén	*etc.*	estuvieron

IMPF. SUBJ.		FUT. SUBJ.
1ST FORM	2D FORM	
estuviese, *etc.*	estuviera, *etc.*	estuviere, *etc.*

Haber, *to have*

PRIN. PARTS Haber, habiendo, habido, he, hube, hubo

PRES. IND.	IMPF. IND.	IMPERAT.	PRES. SUBJ.	FUT. IND.	PRET. IND.
he	había	——	haya	habré	hube
has	*etc.*	(he)	hayas	habrás, *etc.*	hubiste
ha		——	haya		hubo
hemos		——	hayamos	CONDITIONAL	hubimos
habéis		habed	hayáis	habría	hubisteis
han		——	hayan	habrías, *etc.*	hubieron

IMPF. SUBJ.		FUT. SUBJ.
1ST FORM	2D FORM	
hubiese, *etc.*	hubiera, *etc.*	hubiere, *etc.*

NOTE. Though chiefly used as an auxiliary verb, **haber** remains as a finite verb in such expressions as

El malhechor fué habido.	*The criminal was apprehended.*
¡ Haya paces !	*Stop quarreling !*
¡ Bien haya !	*Blessed is he !*
¡ Mal haya !	*Curses on him.*

The imperative combines with the adverbs **aquí, ahí,** and **allá.** Personal pronouns are appended to the verb: thus, **Heme aquí,** *Here I am*; **Hétenos allá,** *There we are.*

Some grammarians deny the derivation of **he** from **haber,** and attribute it to **ver.** Others believe **he** derived from Arabic.

Hacer, *to make, to do*

PRIN. PARTS Hacer, haciendo, hecho, hago, hice, hizo

PRES. IND.	IMPF. IND.	IMPERAT.	PRES. SUBJ.	FUT. IND.	PRET. IND.
hago	hacía	——	haga	haré	hice
haces	*etc.*	haz	hagas	harás, *etc.*	hiciste
hace		——	haga		hizo
hacemos		——	hagamos	CONDITIONAL	hicimos
hacéis		haced	hagáis	haría	hicisteis
hacen		——	hagan	harías, *etc.*	hicieron

IMPF. SUBJ.		FUT. SUBJ.
1ST FORM	2D FORM	
hiciese, *etc.*	hiciera, *etc.*	hiciere, *etc.*

The derivative **satisfacer,** *to satisfy*, retains the original **f** of the Latin:

PRIN. PARTS Satisfacer, satisfaciendo, satisfecho, satisfago, satisfice, satisfizo

Poder, *to be able, can*

PRIN. PARTS Poder, pudiendo, podido, puedo, pude, pudo

PRES. IND.	IMPF. IND.	IMPERAT.	PRES. SUBJ.	FUT. IND.	PRET. IND.
puedo	podía	*wanting*	pueda	podré	pude
puedes	*etc.*		puedas	podrás, *etc.*	pudiste
puede			pueda		pudo
podemos			podamos	CONDITIONAL	pudimos
podéis			podáis	podría	pudisteis
pueden			puedan	podrías, *etc.*	pudieron

IMPF. SUBJ.		FUT. SUBJ.
1ST FORM	2D FORM	
pudiese, *etc.*	pudiera, *etc.*	pudiere, *etc.*

Poner, *to put*

PRIN. PARTS Poner, poniendo, puesto, pongo, puse, puso

PRES. IND.	IMPF. IND.	IMPERAT.	PRES. SUBJ.	FUT. IND.	PRET. IND.
pongo	ponía	——	ponga	pondré	puse
pones	*etc.*	pon	pongas	pondrás, *etc.*	pusiste
pone		——	ponga		puso
ponemos		——	pongamos	CONDITIONAL	pusimos
ponéis		poned	pongáis	pondría	pusisteis
ponen		——	pongan	pondrías, *etc.*	pusieron

IMPF. SUBJ.		FUT. SUBJ.
1ST FORM	2D FORM	
pusiese, *etc.*	pusiera, *etc.*	pusiere, *etc.*

A few derivatives are

anteponer, *put before*	**exponer,** *expose*	**recomponer,** *mend*
componer, *compose, mend*	**imponer,** *impose*	**proponer,** *propose*
disponer, *dispose*	**oponer,** *oppose*	**suponer,** *suppose*

Reponer, *to reply*, is used chiefly in the preterit, **repuso.**

Querer, *to wish, desire; to love*

PRIN. PARTS Querer, queriendo, querido, quiero, quise, quiso

PRES. IND.	IMPF. IND.	IMPERAT.	PRES. SUBJ.	FUT. IND.	PRET. IND
quiero	quería	——	quiera	querré	quise
quieres	*etc.*	quiere	quieras	querrás, *etc.*	quisiste
quiere		——	quiera		quiso
queremos		——	queramos	CONDITIONAL	quisimos
queréis		quered	queráis	querría	quisisteis
quieren		——	quieran	querrías, *etc.*	quisieron

IMPF. SUBJ.		FUT. SUBJ.
1ST FORM	2D FORM	
quisiese	quisiera	quisiere
etc.	*etc.*	*etc.*

Saber, *to know*

PRIN. PARTS Saber, sabiendo, sabido, sé, supe, supo

PRES. IND.	IMPF. IND.	IMPERAT.	PRES. SUBJ.	FUT. IND.	PRET. IND.
sé	sabía	——	sepa	sabré	supe
sabes	*etc.*	sabe	sepas	sabrás, *etc.*	supiste
sabe		——	sepa		supo
sabemos		——	sepamos	CONDITIONAL	supimos
sabéis		sabed	sepáis	sabría	supisteis
saben		——	sepan	sabrías, *etc.*	supieron

IMPF. SUBJ.		FUT. SUBJ.
1ST FORM	2D FORM	
supiese	supiera	supiere
etc.	*etc.*	*etc.*

Tener, *to have*

PRIN. PARTS Tener, teniendo, tenido, tengo, tuve, tuvo

PRES. IND.	IMPF. IND.	IMPERAT.	PRES. SUBJ.	FUT. IND.	PRET. IND.
tengo	tenía	——	tenga	tendré	tuve
tienes	*etc.*	ten	tengas	tendrás, *etc.*	tuviste
tiene		——	tenga		tuvo
tenemos		——	tengamos	CONDITIONAL	tuvimos
tenéis		tened	tengáis	tendría	tuvisteis
tienen		——	tengan	tendrías, *etc.*	tuvieron

IMPF. SUBJ.		FUT. SUBJ.
1ST FORM	2D FORM	
tuviese	tuviera	tuviere
etc.	*etc.*	*etc.*

Derivatives are

abstenerse, *abstain* **detener,** *stop* **obtener,** *obtain*
atenerse, *stick to, heed* **entretener,** *entertain* **retener,** *retain*
contener, *restrain* **mantener,** *maintain* **sostener,** *sustain*

Traer, *to bring*

PRIN. PARTS Traer, trayendo, traído, traigo, traje, trajo

PRES. IND.	IMPF. IND.	IMPERAT.	PRES. SUBJ.	FUT. IND.	PRET. IND.
traigo	traía	——	traiga	traeré	traje
traes	*etc.*	trae	traigas	*etc.*	trajiste
trae		——	traiga		trajo
traemos		——	traigamos	CONDITIONAL	trajimos
traéis		traed	traigáis	traería	trajisteis
traen		——	traigan	*etc.*	trajeron

IMPF. SUBJ.		FUT. SUBJ.
1ST FORM	2D FORM	
trajese	trajera	trajere
etc.	*etc.*	*etc.*

Derivatives are

atraer, *attract* **distraer,** *distract*
contraer, *contract* **extraer,** *extract*

Venir, *to come*

PRIN. PARTS Venir, viniendo, venido, vengo, vine, vino

PRES. IND.	IMPF. IND.	IMPERAT.	PRES. SUBJ.	FUT. IND.	PRET. IND.
vengo	venía	——	venga	vendré	vine
vienes	*etc.*	ven	vengas	vendrás, *etc.*	viniste
viene		——	venga		vino
venimos		——	vengamos	CONDITIONAL	vinimos
venís		venid	vengáis	vendría	vinisteis
vienen		——	vengan	vendrías, *etc.*	vinieron

IMPF. SUBJ.		FUT. SUBJ.
1ST FORM	2D FORM	
viniese	viniera	viniere
etc.	*etc.*	*etc.*

Important derivatives are

avenir, *reconcile*
convenir, *agree*
prevenir, *warn, anticipate*
provenir, *take rise from*
sobrevenir, *come unexpectedly*
subvenir, *assist*

251. Defective Verbs, having only certain forms in use, are —

1. **Placer,** *to please,* usually found only in the third person singular.

PRES. PART.	PRES. IND.	IMPF. IND.	PRES. SUBJ.	FUT. IND.	PRET. IND.
placiendo	place	placía	plega, *or* plegue, *or* plazca	placerá	plugo, *or* plació
				CONDITIONAL placería	

IMPF. SUBJ.		FUT. SUBJ.
1ST FORM	2D FORM	
pluguiese, *or* placiese	pluguiera, *or* placiera	pluguiere

2. **Raer,** *to erase.* This verb, but little used, is conjugated like **caer** with the addition in the present subjunctive of the forms **raya, rayas,** etc.

3. **Roer,** *to gnaw.*

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Subj.
roo, roigo, royo	roa, roiga, roya
roes	roas, roigas, royas
roe	roa, roiga, roya
roemos	*etc.*
roéis	
roen	

a. The derivative **corroer,** *to corrode,* avoids the forms with **-ig-** or **-y-**.

4. Ten verbs ending in **-ir** are commonly used only in those forms which have **i** in the ending. Hence they lack the present indicative singular and third plural, the present subjunctive, and the imperative singular. Otherwise their conjugation is regular. These verbs are

abolir, *to abolish*
aguerrir, *to make warlike*
arrecirse, *to become numb*
aterirse, *to become numb*
desmarrirse, *to become sad*
despavorir, *to become frightened*
embaír, *to impose upon*
empedernir, *to harden*
garantir, *to guarantee*
manir, *to become tender*

252. Impersonal Verbs denote the action of an unspecified subject, generally *it* in English, but not referring to any person or thing. Such verbs in Spanish use the infinitive, the participles, and the third person singular of the various tenses.

1. Impersonal verbs denoting phenomena of nature are

amanecer, *to dawn:* **amanece,** *it is dawning*
anochecer, *to get dark* or *night:* **anochece,** *it is getting dark*
deshelar, *to thaw:* **deshiela,** *it is thawing*
granizar, *to hail:* **graniza,** *it hails*
helar, *to freeze:* **hiela,** *it is freezing*
llover, *to rain:* **llueve,** *it is raining*
nevar, *to snow:* **nieva,** *it is snowing*
relampaguear, *to lighten:* **relampaguea,** *it lightens*
tronar, *to thunder:* **truena,** *it thunders*

2. Other impersonal verbs are

acontecer, *to happen :* **acontece,** *it happens*
bastar, *to be enough :* **basta,** *it is enough*
constar, *to be evident :* **consta,** *it is evident*
convenir, *to suit :* **conviene,** *it suits*
importar, *to matter :* **importa,** *it matters*
suceder, *to happen :* **sucede,** *it happens*

Haber, hacer, estar, and **ser** may also be used impersonally.

253. ***Haber*** **Impersonal.** For the sake of the translation, a complete conjugation of **haber** used impersonally is here given.

Infinitive	**haber,** *be*; as, **no puede haber,** *there cannot be*
Pres. Part.	**habiendo,** *there being*
Past Part.	**habido,** *there having been*

Indicative Mood

Present	**hay,** *there is, there are*
Imperfect	**había,** *there was, there were*
Preterit	**hubo,** *there was, there were*
Future	**habrá,** *there will be*
Conditional	**habría,** *there would be*
Pres. Perf.	**ha habido,** *there has been*
Pluperfect	**había habido,** *there had been*
Pret. Perf.	**hubo habido,** *there had been*
Fut. Perf.	**habrá habido,** *there will have been*
Condit. Perf.	**habría habido,** *there would have been*

Subjunctive Mood

Present	**haya,** *let there be*	**haya habido**
Imperfect 1st	**hubiese**	**hubiese habido**
2d	**hubiera**	**hubiera habido**
Future	**hubiere**	**hubiere habido**

a. With expressions of time **ha** is used instead of **hay: poco tiempo ha,** *a short time ago.*

254. Passive Voice. The passive voice of a Spanish verb is formed from the auxiliary **ser** and the past participle of the verb.

The past participle must agree in gender and number with the subject. For other auxiliaries see section 270, 1, *a*.

Infinitive	**ser llamado,** *to be called*
Pres. Part.	**siendo llamado,** *being called*
Past Part.	**sido llamado,** *been called*

Indicative Mood

Present	**soy llamado,** *I am called*
	eres llamado, *you are called*
	es llamado, *he is called*
	ella es llamada, *she is called*
	somos llamados, *we are called*
	sois llamados, *you are called*
	son llamados, *they are called*
Imperfect	**era llamado,** *I was called*
	eras llamado, *you were called*, etc.
Preterit	**fuí llamado,** *I was called*, etc.
Future	**seré llamado,** *I shall be called*, etc.
Conditional	**sería llamado,** *I should be called*, etc.
Imperative 2d Sing.	**sé llamado,** *be called*
2d Plur.	**sed llamados,** *be called*

Subjunctive Mood

Present	**sea llamado,** etc.
Imperfect 1st form	**fuese llamado,** etc.
2d form	**fuera llamado,** etc.
Future	**fuere llamado,** etc.

Compound Tenses

indicative mood

Pres. Perf.	**he sido llamado,** *I have been called*, etc.
Pluperfect	**había sido llamado,** *I had been called*, etc.
Pret. Pfrf.	**hube sido llamado,** *I had been called*, etc.
Fut. Perf.	**habré sido llamado,** *I shall have been called*, etc.
Condit. Perf.	**habría sido llamado,** *I should have been called*, etc.

subjunctive mood

Present	**haya sido llamado,** etc.
Imperfect 1st form	**hubiese sido llamado,** etc.
2d form	**hubiera sido llamado,** etc.
Future	**hubiere sido llamado,** etc.

255. Reflexive Verbs.

INFINITIVE **levantarse,** *to get up*
PRES. PART. **levantándose,** *getting up*
PAST PART. **levantado,** (*got*) *up*

PRESENT INDICATIVE

SING. 1. **me levanto,** *I get up*	PLUR. 1. **nos levantamos,** *we get up*
2. **te levantas,** *you get up*	2. **os levantáis,** *you get up*
3. **se levanta,** *he gets up*	3. **se levantan,** *they get up*
Vd. se levanta, *you get up*	**Vds. se levantan,** *you get up*

IMPERF. IND. **me levantaba,** *I was getting up*, etc.
PRET. IND. **me levanté,** *I got up*, etc.
FUT. IND. **me levantaré,** *I shall get up*, etc.
CONDITIONAL **me levantaría,** *I should get up*, etc.
PRES. PERF. IND. **yo me he levantado,** *I have got up*, etc.
NEG. **yo no me he levantado,** *I have not got up*, etc.
INTERR. **¿ se ha levantado Vd. ?** *did you get up ?* etc.
NEG. INTERR. **¿ no se ha levantado Vd.?** *did you not get up ?* etc.

IMPERATIVE MOOD

SING. 2. **levántate,** *get up*
PLUR. 2. **levantaos,** *get up*

For the negative, supply corresponding persons from the present subjunctive.

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE AS IMPERATIVE

SING. 2. **que te levantes,** *get up*	**no te levantes,** *don't get up*
(formal) **levántese Vd.,** *get up*	**no se levante Vd.,** *don't get up*
3. **que se levante,** *let him get up*	**que no se levante,** *let him not get up*
PLUR. 1. **levantémonos,** *let us get up*	**no nos levantemos,** *let us not get up*
2. **que os levantéis,** *get up*	**no os levantéis,** *don't get up*
(formal) **levántense Vds.,** *get up*	**no se levanten Vds.,** *don't get up*
3. **que se levanten,** *let them get up*	**que no se levanten,** *let them not get up*

Other forms of reflexive verbs are formed in a similar way. The pronouns precede the verb except the infinitive, the present

participle, and the positive imperative, to which the pronoun is appended. A written accent is required whenever, by the addition of this extra syllable, the spoken accent is thrown farther back than the second syllable from the end of the word. Before **nos** the final **s** of the first person plural, and before **os** the final **d** of the second person plural, are dropped.

Thus, **levantemos + nos** gives **levantémonos**
levantad + os gives **levantaos**

But **id + os** gives **idos**, from **irse**, *to go away*

256. Impersonal Reflexive.

PRESENT INDICATIVE

se me ocurre, *it occurs to me*
se te ocurre, *it occurs to you*
se le ocurre, *it occurs to him, her*
se le ocurre a Vd., *it occurs to you*
se nos ocurre, *it occurs to us*
se os ocurre, *it occurs to you*
se les ocurre, *it occurs to them*

PRESENT PERFECT INDICATIVE

se me ha ocurrido, *it has occurred to me*, etc.

PRETERIT INDICATIVE

se me ocurrió, *it occurred to me*, etc.

257. Reciprocal Verb. The plural of some reflexive verbs may be called reciprocal because they represent the action as occurring between two or more individuals.

amarse, *to love each other*

PRESENT INDICATIVE

nos amamos, *we love each other*
os amáis, *you love each other*
se aman, *they love each other*

The persons concerned may be defined as to gender and number by the use of **el uno el otro, la una la otra**, etc.

Juan y María se aman el uno a la otra. *John and Mary love each other.*
Las mujeres se aman unas a otras. *The women love each other.*

258. Periphrastic Conjugation. (Progressive Form.)

PRESENT INDICATIVE

estoy cantando, *I am singing*
estás cantando, *you are singing*
está cantando, *he is singing*
estamos cantando, *we are singing*
estáis cantando, *you are singing*
están cantando, *they are singing*

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE

estaba cantando, *I was singing*, etc.

PRETERIT INDICATIVE

estuve cantando, *I was singing*, etc.

Other tenses and moods are formed in a similar way.

Instead of **estar** other verbs may be used as the auxiliary, especially **ir.** See section 275.

PRESENT INDICATIVE

voy siendo, *I am getting*
vas siendo, *you are getting*
va siendo, *he (it) is getting*
vamos siendo, *we are getting*
vais siendo, *you are getting*
van siendo, *they are getting*

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE

iba siendo, *I was getting*, etc.

PRETERIT INDICATIVE

fuí siendo, *I was getting*, etc.

EXERCISE 36

I. *Make lists of —*

1. Irregular past participles.
2. Present participles with change of stem-vowel.
3. Irregular futures and conditionals, 1st person singular.
4. Irregular imperatives.

5. Preterits having an unaccented termination in the 1st and 3d person singular; as, **tuve, tuvo.**

6. Present indicatives, 1st person singular, having the letter **g** as the last letter of the stem, and the corresponding present subjunctive; as, **tengo, tenga.**

II. *Study the irregular verbs according to the following scheme by substituting each verb in turn.*

I	*sell*	**vendo**	*he sells*, **vende**
we		**vendemos**	*do you sell?* **¿ vende Vd.?**
they		**venden**	

I was selling, **vendía** — *he used to sell*, **vendía**

I	*have sold*	**he vendido**	
we		**hemos vendido**	*have you sold?* **¿ ha vendido Vd.?**
they		**han vendido**	

I	*sold*	**vendí**	
he		**vendió**	*did you sell?* **¿ vendió Vd.?**
they		**vendieron**	

I shall	*sell*	**venderé**	*I should*	*sell*	**vendería**
we shall		**venderemos**	*he would*		**vendería**
they will		**venderán**	*we should*		**venderíamos**

sell	(familiar), **vende**	*don't sell*	(familiar) **no vendas**
	(formal), **venda Vd.**		(formal) **no venda Vd.**

let him	*sell*	**que él venda**
let us		**vendamos**
let them		**que vendan**

(*he wishes*) *me to sell*, **que yo venda**
in order that he might sell, **para que vendiese** or **vendiera**
(*I ordered*) *him to sell*, **que él vendiese** or **vendiera**

CHAPTER XV

SYNTAX OF VERB. TENSES

259. Agreement. A verb must agree in person and number with its subject.

Yo estudio; tú juegas.	*I study; you play.*
Eran las once de la mañana.	*It was eleven in the morning.*

260. Person. If the subject has different persons, the verb will have the first person in preference to the second or third, and the second in preference to the third.

Él y yo íbamos en el mismo tren.	*He and I were traveling in the same train.*
Ella cree que tú y yo nos entendemos.	*She believes that you and I have an understanding.*
Tú y Juan no os amáis.	*You and John do not love each other.*

a. A relative pronoun, as the subject of a verb, has the same person as its antecedent. See section 164, 5.

Iré yo que soy más joven.	*I will go who am younger.*
Tú eres un pastelero que siempre quieres quedar bien con todo el mundo.	*You are a trimmer who always wants to be on good terms with everybody.*

261. Number. A compound subject requires a plural verb.

El vino y el aceite se venden bien.	*Wine and oil sell well.*

1. But if the verb precedes the compound subject, it sometimes agrees with the first noun only.

Se vende mucho vino y aceite.	*Much wine and oil are sold.*

2. A singular noun or pronoun is frequently used to sum up a series, in which case the verb is singular.

Café, caña de azúcar, algodón, tabaco y cochinilla, todo se produce con facilidad.	*Coffee, sugar-cane, cotton, tobacco, and cochineal, all are easily produced.*

a. Two or more singular subjects, closely related in thought but not connected by a conjunction, may be followed by a singular verb.

La profesión, el partido político, la vida entera de muchos hombres pende de casos fortuitos.	*The profession, the politics, the whole life of many men depend on chance circumstances.*

3. Two or more neuters take a singular verb; hence, two infinitives with a singular verb is common. If, however, it is desired to emphasize each idea by way of contrast, the article is used before each neuter, followed by a plural verb.

Sería difícil el moralizar y evangelizar a estas gentes.	*To make moral these peoples and Christianize them would be difficult.*
Saber teología y no saber montar desacreditaba a D. Luis a los ojos de su primo.	*To know theology and not to know how to ride discredited Louis in the eyes of his cousin.*
El oír y el entender no son lo mismo.	*Hearing and understanding are not the same.*

4. Words connected by **ni . . . ni, o . . . o,** or similar connectives may take a plural or a singular verb according to sense, but require different verbs to show the person when the person differs in the several clauses.

Ni uno ni otro es mi padre.	*Neither one is my father.*
Era un joven de una belleza que ni la penitencia ni la agonía habían podido eclipsar.	*He was a young man of a beauty which neither fasting nor the hour of death had been able to eclipse.*
O Vd. es loco o yo lo soy.	*Either you are crazy or I am.*

5. Collective nouns may be followed by either a singular or a plural verb, according as the whole or its component parts are uppermost in mind.

El día de su salida acudieron a saludarlo muchas personas. Gran parte fué con él hasta la Guaira y no se apartaron hasta perder de vista el barco que lo conducía a la Habana.	*On the day of his departure many persons came to pay their respects. A large number went with him as far as La Guaira, and did not disperse until the vessel which was taking him to Havana was lost from sight.*

6. With **ser** the subject rather than the predicate noun determines the number; but if the subject is separated from the verb while the predicate noun comes close after it, the verb may agree with the predicate noun in both person and number.

Sus colecciones eran una maravilla.	*His collections were a marvel.*
El alquiler de esta casa son mil pesetas al año.	*The rent of this house is one thousand pesetas a year.*
Son los cuadros de Murillo lo que más me gusta en Sevilla.	*Murillo's paintings are what I like best in Seville.*

But, **Los cuadros de Murillo es lo que más me gusta en Sevilla.**

262. Present Tense. 1. The Spanish present tense indicative, generally used as in English, may also represent an action which began in the past but is still continuing in the present. English has the present perfect.

¿Desde cuándo está Vd. aquí?	*Since when have you been here?*
Estoy aquí desde ayer.	*I have been here since yesterday.*
Sesenta años llevo sirviendo al rey.	*I have spent sixty years serving the king.*

a. After the impersonal verb **hace** with expressions of time, the present tense is frequent.

Hace días que no la veo.	*It is days since I have seen her.*
Hace dos meses que estoy aquí.	*I have been here for two months.*

2. In lively narrative, the present is sometimes used instead of the preterit.

Estaban ciegos de cólera. Me entero del motivo de la disputa, les digo que unos y otros están equivocados y se ponen furiosos contra mí.	*They were blind with anger. I learned the cause of the dispute and told them they were both wrong, and they got angry at me.*

3. The present also appears for the future, especially in offers.

Si quieres que me marche, mañana salgo para Barcelona, y espero allí a embarcar.	*If you wish me to go, I will leave to-morrow for Barcelona and wait there to embark.*
Se lo doy a Vd. por dos pesetas.	*I will give it to you for two pesetas.*

4. The present tense is employed in certain idiomatic expressions, as

A poco más se muere.	*He almost died.*
Tropezó y por poco se cae.	*He stumbled and almost fell.*

263. Imperfect, Preterit, and Present Perfect compared and contrasted in their regular uses, see sections 63, 65, and 73.

264. Imperfect Indicative. 1. The imperfect tense, indicative, has the force of the English pluperfect when used with expressions of time denoting a continuance of the action.

Hacía dos años que estaba en Madrid.	*I had been in Madrid two years.*

2. The imperfect indicative may appear in place of the conditional.

Una de las cosas que hacía, si llegara a tocarme un buen premio, era regalarle al portero el pantalón mío de cuadros.	*One of the things which I should do, if I happened to win a good prize, would be to give the janitor my checked trousers.*

265. Preterit Perfect, or past anterior, indicative, is used after conjunctions which denote time, as **apenas,** *scarcely*; **así que,** *as soon as*; **después que,** *after*; etc.

Mi amo apenas me hubo visto cuando me llamó por mi nombre.	*Scarcely had my master seen me when he called me by name.*
Después que hubieron salido del aposento.	*After they had left the apartment.*

a. The simple preterit is generally employed instead of the compound preterit.

Así que se marchó el médico.	*As soon as the doctor had gone.*

b. The conjunctions compounded with **que** lose their first element if the participle stands first.

Echado que hubo pie a tierra.	*As soon as he had set foot on the ground.*
Salido que hubieron del aposento.	*After they had left the apartment.*
Sentado que se hubo ella.	*When she had seated herself.*

266. Future. The future indicative may denote probability.

Serán las doce.	*It is probably twelve o'clock.*
¿ Vd. sabrá bastante contabilidad y tendrá buena letra ? No, señor, no la tengo muy buena ni muy mala siquiera. No sé leer.	*I suppose you know bookkeeping and write a good hand? No, sir, I don't write a very good hand nor even a very bad one. I can't read.*

a. The future tense is frequent in rhetorical questions that are considered undeniable by the speaker.

¿ Habrá desgracia mayor ?	*Can there be a greater misfortune ?*
¡ Qué ojos los de aquella niña ! — ¿ Serán más hermosos que los suyos ? pregunté.	*"What eyes that girl has !" "Can they be handsomer than yours ?" I asked.*

b. For **haber de** and **ir a** as paraphrases for the future, see sections 107, 3; and 60.

267. The Future Perfect has uses corresponding to those of the simple future.

¡ Qué asombro habrá sido el de Vd. !	*What astonishment yours must have been !*

268. The Conditional may be employed like the future, to denote probability, when referring to past time.

Serían las tres de la madrugada.	*It was probably three in the morning.*
Podría tener a la sazón catorce años.	*He might have been at that time fourteen years old.*
Juan no vino. Estaría enfermo.	*John did not come. I suppose he was sick.*

269. Impersonal Verbs. Verbs that are used only in the third person singular are called impersonal. See section 252

1. Verbs denoting phenomena of nature are impersonal in both Spanish and English.

Llueve.	*It is raining.*
Va a helar.	*It is going to freeze.*
Está nevando.	*It is snowing.*

2. **Ser** with adjectives and a few nouns is common in the impersonal use.

Es justo.	*It is right.*
Fué claro.	*It was evident.*
Fuerza es confesar.	*It must be confessed.*

3. Spanish has many impersonal expressions which correspond to personal expressions in English. The person concerned in the action of the Spanish verb is expressed by the indirect object.

A mí no me importa.	*I don't care.* (Lit. *It doesn't matter to me.*)
No me conviene vender.	*It doesn't suit me to sell.*
Le toca a Vd. hablar.	*It is your turn to speak.*

4. Many reflexive verbs are used impersonally. As the person concerned is expressed by the indirect object pronoun, these verbs may be said to have an impersonal conjugation. See section 256.

Se me figura.	*I imagine.*
Se me olvida.	*I forget.*
Se nos ocurre.	*There occurs to us.*
¿Qué se te ofrece?	*What is the matter?*
A D. Luis se le figuraba que iba a deslustrar su gloria.	*Louis fancied that he was going to blast his reputation.*

EXERCISE 37

1. The color, the drawing, the composition, all revealed a genius of the first rank. 2. You and I are going to Madrid. 3. Who says so? I, who have seen you take off your hat. 4. The old man and you were seated before the door. 5. The doctor, the notary, and the priest were present at the party. 6. Eating and drinking are

indispensable. 7. Neither John nor Paul has arrived. 8. Either she will write or I will. 9. Many people came to say good-by, and some wept. 10. I have been up[1] more than two hours. 11. You are probably a friend of the Spanish consul. 12. When I met you, I had been there half an hour. 13. It was only six months that they had been married. 14. We have always been friends from childhood. 15. He was probably forty years old when he took command[2] of the army. 16. As soon as he had finished his speech the audience shouted, "Bravo, bravo." 17. After the captain had gone ashore, the sailors stopped working. 18. There were many strangers who had come to attend the fair. 19. I promised that neither I nor any of my friends would raise insurrectionary[3] parties. 20. It is more than a year since I have spoken to him. 21. I have forgotten the lesson. 22. It did not occur to me to say anything. 23. He imagines he is[4] a great orator. 24. It does not matter to me what he says. 25. It is very fine weather to-day: the sun is shining and there is no dust. 26. There was no moon that night. 27. If it rains, it will be very muddy in the streets. 28. Was it very cold when you were in the country? 29. In the summer it dawns early and grows dark late. 30. I do not know what education he is likely to have, nor what books he may have read. 31. I suppose he is coming to-morrow morning. 32. She is to deliver the work next Monday evening. 33. Have you been waiting long? 34. The candidate had many friends in the audience, but a large number did not applaud his speech. 35. The salary of this position is two thousand dollars a year. 36. We are the ones who have the greatest interest in this project.

[1] levantado.
[2] Supply the definite article.
[3] Omit.
[4] Use infinitive.

CHAPTER XVI

PASSIVE VOICE. PARTICIPLES

270. Passive Voice. The passive voice indicates that the action is performed upon the subject; as, *The dog was kicked by the boy.* The person performing the action is called the agent; as, *boy* in the example.

1. In Spanish the passive voice is formed by the combination of the auxiliary verb **ser** and the past participle of the verb, which must agree in gender and number with the subject. See section 254 for conjugation.

a. Other verbs than **ser** are sometimes joined with the past participle in the formation of the passive voice; as, **quedar, hallarse, encontrarse, verse, andar, ir.**

Queda explicado en la página 20.	*It is explained on page 20.*
Las tropas se hallaban mandadas por buenos oficiales.	*The troops were commanded by good officers.*
En el fondo del lienzo se veía pintado otro cuadro.	*In the background of the canvas was painted another picture.*
Van incluídas muchas fotografías en el diccionario.	*Many photographs are included in the dictionary.*

2. The agent in Spanish is introduced by **por**; or, in case the action is mental, by **de.**

César fué asesinado por Bruto.	*Cæsar was assassinated by Brutus.*
César fué respetado de todos.	*Cæsar was respected by all.*

271. The passive voice is little used in Spanish. On the other hand, it is commonly employed in English for the following purposes:

(1) To give prominence to the thing acted on by placing it at the beginning of the sentence as the subject of the passive verb.

(2) To make a statement indefinite.

Now Spanish, using the active voice, obtains the same results as follows:

1. By reason of the personal **a** (see section 134) which allows the object to stand first in the sentence.

A Carlos V sigue Felipe II.	*Charles V is succeeded by Philip II.*

2. Indefiniteness is obtained by the use of the third person plural. (See section 196.)

Me llamaron a las cinco.	*I was called at five o'clock.*
Sintió que le tocaban en la espalda.	*He felt himself touched on the shoulder.*

3. By substituting the reflexive verb; see section 272.

272. Reflexive Substitute for Passive. As a substitute for the passive voice, the reflexive verb is most important.

Puede decirse.	*It may be said.*
Se han mandado los efectos por el vapor Caracas.	*The goods have been shipped by the steamer Caracas.*
Se daba la orden de ataque.	*The order for attack was given.*
Diéronseles las mejores armas.	*The best arms were given them.*

a. As with the true passive, the agent may be introduced by **por** after a reflexive verb.

Firmóse la concordia primero por él y después por el rey.	*The agreement was signed first by him and afterwards by the king.*

b. The reflexive substitute for the passive occurs frequently in signs and general statements.

Se vende la casa.	*The house is for sale.*
Se prohibe fumar.	*Smoking forbidden.*
Aquí se habla español.	*Spanish spoken here.*
Se dice.	*It is said.* (*People say. They say.*)
Se alquila.	*For hire* (or *rent*).

273. Impersonal Reflexive. The reflexive verb used impersonally as a substitute for the passive voice conveys an idea of indefiniteness. **Se,** in the popular mind, acquires almost the meaning of *somebody* or *people.*

Se nos pregunta por correo.	*We are asked by mail.* (Lit. *It is asked us by mail.*)
Se procesa a los criminales.	*The criminals are prosecuted.*
Se me busca a mí.	*I am being looked for.*
Se va a salir de la iglesia.	*People are about to come out of the church.*

274. Present Participle. The present participle, or gerund, has many uses. It never changes its form; and may have a subject different from that of the principal verb. It may denote —

1. Time.

Nos conocimos siendo niños.	*We became acquainted when we were children.*

2. Manner.

Ve corriendo.	*Go on the run.*

3. Means.

En otros siglos hubiera logrado su propósito pagando un asesino.	*In other centuries he would have achieved his purpose by paying an assassin.*

4. Cause.

No yendo nosotros, supongo que no irás tú.	*Since we are not going, I suppose you will not go.*
Siendo ella bonita y Luciano distinguido, hacían una buena pareja.	*As she was pretty and Lucian distinguished, they made a fine couple.*

5. The only preposition used with the gerund is **en**; which then means *after.*

En muriendo ella, saldrás de aquí.	*After she dies, you will get out of here.*

6. The gerund must not be used as an adjective. Spanish has many adjectives derived from the Latin present participle in **ante** or **ente,** which take its place.

una cesta colgante, *a hanging basket*
agua corriente, *running water*

a. If no adjective exists to express the idea, a relative clause must be employed.

Remito a Vd. cuatro cajas que contienen cien fusiles.	*I send you four boxes containing a hundred rifles.*

275. Periphrastic Conjugation. The present participle is used with verbs to denote progressive action, whenever it is desired to emphasize the progressive character of the act. The weak English progressive is usually the corresponding simple tense form.

She is singing.	**Ella canta.**
She was singing.	**Ella cantaba.**
But, **Ella estaba cantando en el momento en que entré.**	*She was singing at the time when I stepped in.*

The verb **estar** most frequently occurs as the auxiliary in the periphrastic conjugation; but other verbs, as **hallarse, encontrarse, venir, andar, quedar,** are employed and give great precision to the idea. With verbs denoting movement **ir** is especially common. The present participle with these words is closely allied to its use in expressing manner. For the progressive conjugation see section 258.

Pedro está construyendo una tapia.	*Peter is building a wall.*
He estado arreglando la habitación.	*I have been putting the room in order.*
Conforme ella iba leyendo la carta, iba poniéndose pálida.	*As she continued reading the letter she kept growing paler and paler.*
Los relámpagos fueron siendo menos frecuentes.	*The flashes of lightning kept getting less frequent.*
La casa de Cerinola venía cayendo desde tiempo del padre de Luis.	*The house of Cerinola had been decaying since the time of Louis' father.*
Un día el pintor andaba recorriendo las iglesias de Madrid.	*One day the painter was visiting the churches of Madrid.*

276. Past Participle. With auxiliary verbs the Spanish past participle forms compound tenses and the passive voice. See sections 241, 254.

1. With **haber,** the past participle is invariable; with other verbs it agrees with the subject.

Ha escrito la carta.	*He has written the letter.*
Tengo la carta que ha escrito.	*I have the letter which he has written.*
Está / Queda } escrita la carta.	*The letter is written.*
Fué escrita la carta.	*The letter was written.*

2. **Tener** may be used, with transitive verbs only, as an auxiliary when attention is directed to the state of the direct object rather than to the process indicated by the verb. The participle then agrees with the direct object.

Lo que más dañaba a la división eran unas piezas que los carlistas tenían situadas en un cerrillo.	*What most harmed the division was a couple of guns which the Carlists had located on a knoll.*
¿Cómo decirle que la tengo engañada?	*How tell her that I keep her deceived?*

a. **Llevar** is sometimes used like **tener** as an auxiliary verb.

Llevo escrita la carta.	*I have got the letter written.*

3. **Ser** cannot be the auxiliary with an intransitive verb.

Han ido.	*They are gone.*
Ha muerto.	*He is dead.*

4. Some past participles have an active meaning; but they are usually applicable only to human beings.

Un hombre muy leído.	*A well-read man.*
Es cansado.	*He is tiresome.*

agradecido, *grateful*	**parecido,** *similar, like*
atrevido, *bold*	**porfiado,** *obstinate*
callado, *silent*	**sentido,** *sensitive*
divertido, *merry*	**sufrido,** *patient*

and many others.

5. The past participle may be used absolutely; in which case it usually stands first in the clause. English commonly requires in the corresponding construction that the present participle of an auxiliary precede the past participle.

Dicho esto, salió.	*Having said this, he went out.*
A mí, muerta la señora Condesa, nada me puede interesar de aquella casa.	*As for me, now that the countess is dead, nothing in that house can interest me.*

6. The means whereby the action of a past participle is carried out is usually introduced by **de.**

La tierra está cubierta de nieve.	*The earth is covered with snow.*
Fué cargado de hierros.	*He was loaded with irons.*

7. The prepositions **antes de, después de, luego de,** and **para** may govern an absolute participial construction, in which the noun is often in reality the subject of a passive verb.

Después de cerradas las puertas, empezó la conferencia.	*After the doors were closed the lecture began.*
Luego de vuelto le vi.	*After he returned I saw him.*
Las ideas no eran para reveladas a su sobrina.	*The ideas were not (such as) to be revealed to his niece.*

EXERCISE 38

1. His opinion was listened to with profound respect. 2. The lady was agreeably surprised by the visit. 3. I complain and I am told that I ought not to complain. 4. Behind my back I hear myself called. 5. The lands have been sold at auction two months ago. 6. There were seen on both sides two long narrow counters. 7. On a table in the center were placed the works recently published and the reviews. 8. The letter for you was sent to Madrid. 9. The letter lay inclosed in a little secret drawer. 10. Everything has been sold very dear. 11. Not a bill is paid without my consent. 12. People say that it is the fashion. 13. The doors are closed at six o'clock. 14. This house for rent. 15. It may be said that I haven't a single moment of rest. 16. Segovia was founded

by the Phœnicians. 17. The walls were adorned with religious engravings. 18. The trees are now covered with leaves. 19. The French king was made a[1] prisoner by the Spaniards. 20. A sharp dispute had the community divided. 21. As he passed the bank he thought of[2] the money which he had deposited there. 22. The days are getting shorter. 23. It is raining. 24. I am getting tired of my residence in this place. 25. We have been working all day. 26. It is snowing at present. 27. She was[3] talking to Sancho when she entered the room. 28. I prefer to earn wages[4] by sewing. 29. You ought to be ashamed to work like a peon when you are the richest man in the village. 30. As the teacher was sick, we had no lessons to-day. 31. By traveling one learns many things. 32. After the performance was finished[5] we left the theater. 33. She is an amusing actress, very similar to her father. 34. They would rob me of[1] the treasure after it was discovered. 35. He has the gold coins hidden in his garden. 36. Why did you come in when I was busy? 37. Having reached his village, he found that his parents were dead. 38. He earned this money by working all summer. 39. As he had no friends in the city, he did not remain there long. 40. Because he was a bold man by nature, he did not hesitate. 41. The sick man was taken to the hospital and his life was saved. 42. The question having been read,[5] the assembly discussed it for more than an hour.

[1] Omit. [2] **en.** [3] Use **venir.**
[4] Say *a wage.* [5] Absolute past participle.

CHAPTER XVII

INFINITIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE MOODS

277. Infinitive Mood. See Lesson XIX, Part I, for discussion of this mood before reading the following additions.

1. Infinitives completing the sense of impersonal verbs or of predicate nouns and adjectives stand without a connecting preposition.

Importa saber.	*It is important to know.*
Es fácil equivocarse.	*It is easy to be mistaken.*
Es lástima perder el tiempo.	*It is a pity to waste time.*

a. If the dependent verb has a subject expressed by a noun, or by a pronoun other than the indirect object pronoun, it is better to replace the infinitive by a clause having the verb in the subjunctive mood.

Tiempo es de partir.	*It is time to leave.*
Tiempo es de que tú te vayas.	*It is time for you to leave.*
Me es imposible salir.	*It is impossible for me to go out.*
Es imposible que salgan los niños.	*It is impossible for the children to go out.*

2. An infinitive connected with an adjective by the preposition **de** often has a passive force. Such verbs are usually reflexive.

Esta fruta es buena de comer.	*This fruit is good to eat.*
Es digno de notarse.	*It is worth noting.*

3. Infinitives often stand alone after relative and interrogative pronouns in cases where some auxiliary like **poder** or **deber** can be introduced.

No tengo a quien dirigirme.	*I have nobody to whom to apply.*
No sé qué decir.	*I do not know what to say.*

4. With the indefinite pronouns **algo, nada, mucho, poco,** and nouns denoting something indefinite, infinitives may stand after the connective **que.**

Nada tengo que decir.	*I have nothing to say.*
Deja mucho que desear.	*It leaves much to be desired.*
El mancebo esperaba cantidades que anotar.	*The clerk was waiting for figures to take down.*

5. Infinitives are sometimes used as imperatives, frequently introduced by **a,** and often in exclamations which repeat a previous statement.

¡Ea! despejar, que voy a echar la llave.	*Come! Clear out, I am going to lock up.*
¡Pues a dormir, caballeros!	*Well, sirs, to bed!*
¡Pagarme Vd. a mí!	*You pay me!*

278. Subjunctive Mood. The subjunctive mood conveys an idea of indefiniteness. Hence, in addition to the uses of the dependent subjunctive already given, Lessons XX and XXI, there are the following. The verbs of dependent clauses take the subjunctive,

1. When they depend on questions, or on any construction, implying restriction or a negative:

¿Quién asegura que sean ciertas estas noticias?	*Who vouches for it that this news is true?*
Yo no tenía persona que me aconsejara.	*I had nobody to advise me.*
No creo que ningún griego haya estado tan contento como yo lo estaba.	*I do not believe any Greek has been as satisfied as I was.*

2. After impersonal expressions unless these state a certainty:

Es posible que sea ella mi madrastra.	*It is possible that she may become my stepmother.*
Mejor es que no juguemos a los naipes.	*It is better for us not to play cards.*
¿Qué importa que yo esté mejor o peor?	*What does it matter whether I am better or worse?*

But, **Es cierto que ninguna obra de semejante antigüedad se ha conservado tan bien.**	*It is certain that no work of such antiquity has been preserved so well.*

3. In indefinite relative clauses and those with an indefinite antecedent:

Haré lo que Vd. me mande.	*I will do whatever you command me.*
¿Hay quien pueda salvarla?	*Is there anybody who can save her?*
Quiero un muchacho que lleve esta carta al correo.	*I want a boy to take this letter to the post-office.*

4. In clauses presenting alternatives:

Ya me quites la vida, ya me la dejes, morirás ahorcado.	*Whether you take my life or grant it to me, you will die on the gallows.*
Tuviésemos o no dinero, fuese de día o de noche, ardiese la tierra bajo el sol del verano, o estuviese cubierta de una vara de nieve.	*Whether we had money or not, whether it was day or night, whether the earth was burning beneath the summer sun or whether it was covered by a yard of snow.*

5. In any clause which implies indefiniteness, concession, or the like, and is introduced by an adverb of doubt, a conjunction, or a conjunctive phrase; after the same conjunction may appear the indicative if the clause denotes certainty:

Voy a referir cosas que acaso Vd. ya sepa.	*I am going to relate things which perhaps you already know.*
Con una condición me callo, y es que no te vayas de mi lado.	*On one condition I will be silent, and that is that you do not leave me.*
No hay desgracia en el mundo, por grande que sea, que no pueda ser mayor.	*There is no misfortune in the world, however great it may be, which cannot be greater.*
Busqué un sitio donde pudiera dormir.	*I looked for a place where I might sleep.*

6. After superlatives or negatives if the writer wishes to make the statement more modest or less sweeping:

No hay la menor ofensa en que yo la acompañe.	*There is not the slightest offense in my accompanying you.*
Nada indicaba que tuviese tan grande animosidad contra mí.	*Nothing indicated that he had such great animosity toward me.*
Ésta será la última carta que yo escriba a Vd.	*This is the last letter that I shall write you.*

7. In both principal and subordinate clauses of many expressions denoting indifference, are found the present, the imperfect, and the future tenses of the subjunctive:

Sea como sea.	*Be it as it may.*
Fuera como fuese, las circunstancias le favorecerían.	*However it was, circumstances would favor him.*
Quienquiera denota persona indeterminada, alguno, sea el que fuere.	***Quienquiera** denotes an indefinite person, any one, whoever it may be.*
Valga lo que valiere.	*Take it for what it may be worth.*
Venga lo que viniere.	*Come what may.*

279. Unreal Conditions expressed by the imperfect subjunctive may have the imperfect subjunctive in the conclusion as well as in the condition, especially if the condition is placed first with the omission of **si**. The second clause must then be connected by **y** or **que**.

Si te hubieras ido no hubieras presenciado esta victoria.	*If you had gone you would not have witnessed this victory.*
Pidiera ella mi protección y (or que) yo se la dispensara.	*Should she ask for my protection, I would give it to her.*

a. The imperfect subjunctive may appear in the conclusion of a condition which is not expressed.

¿Quién creyera que en esta forma estaba oculto un dios?	*Who would believe (if anybody saw me) that in this form was hidden a god?*
Vierais entonces un cuadro sublime.	*You would then have seen (if you had been there) a sublime picture.*

LA TORRE DE COMARES

Esta torre encierra la más grande de la Alhambra y quizás la de más interés monumental. Se conoce el salón de los Embajadores, llamado así por haber servido para recepciones diplomáticas

LA TORRE DE COMARES

1. ¿ Qué es un embajador ?

2. ¿ De qué cortes habrán venido los embajadores a quienes recibieron los moros en el gran salón ?

3. ¿ De dónde se sacó el agua que surtía a la Alhambra ?

4. ¿ Cómo fué posible que los cristianos tomasen una fortaleza que tenía torres tan fuertes ?

5. Se refiere que una reina mora con sus dos hijos se escapó de la torre de Comares; ¿ cómo pudo hacerlo ?

diplomático -a, *diplomatic*
embajador, m. *ambassador*
recepción, f. *reception*
romántico -a, *romantic*
salón, m. *hall*
surtir, *to supply*

b. The simple tenses are often used instead of the compound tenses as in the last preceding example.

280. The **Imperfect Subjunctive** of the **-ra** form, being derived from the Latin pluperfect, was formerly used as a pluperfect indicative and occasionally appears in poetry or in imitations of the older form.

Pasaran ya tres semanas desde nuestra llegada.	*Three weeks had passed since our arrival.*
El arte mágica que su padre le enseñara.	*The magic art which his father had taught him.*

281. The **Future Subjunctive,** also called the hypothetical subjunctive, is used in clauses implying a supposition. It is now found only in legal style or antiquated phrases.

Cuando un comerciante encargare a su mancebo la recepción de mercaderías y éste las recibiere sin reparo sobre su cantidad o calidad, surtirá su recepción los mismos efectos que si la hubiere hecho el principal.	*When a merchant intrusts to his clerk the reception of merchandise and the latter receives it without examination as to its quantity or quality, its acceptance shall entail the same consequences as if the proprietor had done it.*
Al que leyere.	*To him who may read* (found in the preface of books).
Si alguno llamare a la puerta, le abrirás.	*If anybody should knock at the door, you will open to him.*

a. The present indicative after **si,** or the present subjunctive after a conjunctive phrase implying uncertainty, now replaces the hypothetical subjunctive.

Si alguno llama a la puerta, le abrirás, or **En caso que alguno llame a la puerta le abrirás.**

282. **Wishes** may be expressed,

1. By the simple independent subjunctive:

¡ Dios me lo perdone !	*God pardon me for it.*

2. By the subjunctive dependent on **ojalá** or **plega a Dios** with or without a connecting **que**:

¡Ojalá disfrutemos otros muchos años!	*May we enjoy many other years!*
¡Plega a Dios que sea recompensado!	*May it please God that he be rewarded.*

a. **Ojalá** may even stand alone when referring to a previous verb.

Vi todo, hasta la posibilidad de que él se defendiera, me desarmara y me matase. ¡Ojalá!	*I saw everything, even the possibility that he might defend himself, disarm me, and kill me. I wish he might.*

3. By the imperfect subjunctive when contrary to reality or considered impossible of attainment:

¡Fuese ya mañana y estuviésemos en la batalla!	*Would that it were the morrow and that we were in the battle.*

Such wishes may be introduced by **ojalá, pluguiera a Dios, así, quién, si.**

a. ¡Ojalá no hubiera ido!	*O that I had not gone!*
¡Ojalá fuesen todos los pueblos como éste!	*O that all towns were like this!*
b. ¡Pluguiera a Dios que aun viviese!	*Would to God that he were still alive!*
¡Pluguiese a Dios que así fuera!	*Would to God that it were so!*
c. ¡Así esta pícara fatiga me permitiese a mí bromear también!	*I wish this confounded weariness would permit me also to make jests!*

d. **Quién** implies the first person singular:

¡Quién supiera escribir!	*I wish I knew how to write!*
¡Quién pudiera volar!	*I wish I could fly!*
¡Quién fuera señora para llevar tal traje!	*I wish I were a lady to wear such a gown!*
e. ¡Si bastara querer!	*If only wishing were enough!*
¡Si viera Vd. qué viejo y feo está!	*I wish you could* (or *You ought to*) *see how old and ugly he is!*

EXERCISE 39

(*Before attempting this exercise the student should review Lessons XIX, XX, and XXI, of Part I.*)

1. He found little or nothing to admire. 2. It is time to go. 3. It is time that John should come. 4. It would be good for you to take him out to get[1] a little air. 5. My father demands of me that I should stay here with him at least two months. 6. She wished a good situation for her daughter which would get her out of financial difficulties.[2] 7. My father and his friends are delighted that I am not completely ignorant of country affairs. 8. It is strange that there should be no time to write to you. 9. I have told him not to speak to me again. 10. Get another to play the piano. 11. It is not good for man to be alone. 12. If you had listened to me, this would not have happened. 13. Even if it were so, why had he not come? 14. It is possible that mamma will not allow us to talk to each other alone. 15. As there is nobody here who will do me that service, I will introduce myself. 16. It is necessary for me to have a Spaniard accompany me. 17. As soon as it is night I will go and get you. 18. I thank you greatly that you have had the kindness to pick it up. 19. Do you believe that he will come? 20. I was afraid that Sancho would not come the second night. 21. It does not matter to me that she does not know me. 22. It is not evident that the jewel is yours. 23. I remember as if it were a thing of yesterday. 24. *Ojalá* comes from the Arabic, "if God wills," by[3] which is denoted a keen desire that a thing should happen. 25. O that I may see him alive! 26. I wish I might live a thousand years. 27. May he come soon. 28. I wish this tooth would stop aching. 29. No boat has come in, that I know of.[4] 30. Although it was late, he decided to enter the theater. 31. The table was set for all those who might come. 32. I want a boy to go to New York. 33. Do you know anybody

[1] **tomar.**
[2] financial difficulties = **apuros.**
[3] **con.**
[4] Omit.

who speaks Spanish? 34. Whether he comes or not, he will pay for[1] the ticket. 35. If Carlos himself had come to ask me for the money, I should have refused it. 36. It is to be supposed that he had nothing to do. 37. At your age, illnesses, however severe they may be, are easily cured. 38. Alas! gracious goodness, I wish I were that! 39. The girls trembled, although it was impossible that Doña Blanca had heard them. 40. He dreamed of Europe where he would see theaters and civilized people. 41. However strong he may be, it is possible that he lose. 42. Would I find anybody who would help me? 43. There is no church in the city which we have not visited. 44. Whether he goes to Europe or stays at home, it is the same to me. 45. However that may be, I do not hesitate in saying that I believe him. 46. It is the least that he can do. 47. Francisco, learning that his father was asleep, in order that the latter might not hear him and wake up, went on tiptoe to his room. 48. Perhaps the young man might have come earlier by asking permission of his master to leave on[2] the morning train, but he did not wish to do so.

[1] Omit. [2] con.

CHAPTER XVIII

IDIOMATIC USES OF VERBS

283. Andar — ir — pasearse. **Andar** denotes mechanical motion, as *to walk, go, move*; **ir,** *to go*; **pasearse,** *to take walks or drives for pleasure.*

La máquina no anda.	*The machine does not go.*
Anduvo cinco leguas.	*He walked five leagues.*
La tierra anda.	*The earth moves.*
Voy a pie, a caballo, en coche, en tranvía, en ferrocarril.	*I go on foot, on horseback, in a carriage, in the street car, on the railway.*
Me paseo **Doy un paseo** **Doy una vuelta**	*I take a walk.*
Se pasea en coche todas las tardes.	*He drives every afternoon.*

284. **Caber** is from the root of the English word *capable.*

No cabe duda.	*There is no doubt.*
Si cabe.	*If it is possible.*

Caber en, *to hold, to be contained,* takes for its subject the name of the thing contained.

Los vestidos no caben en el baúl.	*The trunk will not hold the clothes.*
No cabe el piano por la ventana.	*The piano will not go through the window.*
¿Cabe Vd.?	*Can you get in? Is there room for you?*

285. Caer, *to fall.*

caer bien, *to be becoming*

El traje cae bien a la muchacha.	*The suit is very becoming to the girl.*

caer a, *to open on*

La ventana cae a la calle.	*The window opens on the street.*

caer en, *to catch on, to comprehend*

No cae en ello.	*He does not comprehend it.*
¡Ya caigo!	*Now I catch on.*

286. Conocer — saber, *to know.* **Conocer** refers to persons and things; **saber,** to ideas.

Conozco al Sr. Díaz.	*I know Mr. Díaz.*
¿Conoce Vd. la música?	*Do you recognize the music?*
¿Sabe Vd. esta lección?	*Do you know this lesson?*
¿Sabe Vd. quién es?	*Do you know who it is?*

a. **Conocer** also means *to make one's acquaintance.* **Le conocí en Sevilla,** *I made his acquaintance in Seville.* Hence **un conocido,** *an acquaintance.*

b. **Saber a** means *to taste of.*

La sopa sabe a petróleo.	*The soup tastes of kerosene.*

287. Dar, *to give,* appears idiomatically in over 200 expressions.

dar la hora, *to strike the hour*

Van a dar las ocho.	*It is going to strike eight.*

dar los buenos días, *to wish one good morning*

dar un paso, *to take a step*

dar cuerda a un reloj, *to wind up a clock*

dar a, *to open on, to lead to*

Esta puerta da al patio.	*This door opens on the court.*

dar con, *to happen on, to find*

¿Has dado con ella?	*Have you found her?*

On the other hand, English *give* in the sense of *to make a present* is **regalar**; *to grant favors,* **conceder**; *to deliver or hand,* **entregar.**

Mi padre me regaló un reloj de oro.	*My father gave me a gold watch.*
Me concedió el permiso de visitar el castillo.	*He gave me permission to visit the castle.*
Le entregué el telegrama.	*I gave him the telegram.*

288. Echar, *to throw* or *toss.*

Écheme Vd. ese lápiz. *Toss me that pencil.*

echar el café, *to pour the coffee*

echar una carta al buzón (or **al correo**), *to mail a letter*

echar llave a la puerta, *to lock the door*

echar (de) menos, *to miss*

echar de ver, *to notice*

echar a perder, *to spoil*

Una alfombra riquísima echada a perder. *A magnificent rug spoiled.*

echarse a, *to begin*

El señor se echó a reír. *The gentleman began to laugh.*

289. Faltar, *to be lacking* — **sobrar,** *to be superfluous, to be enough and more, to be left.*

Sobran palabras y falta sentido. *Too many words and a lack of sense.*

No faltaba más (a frequent expression, often used with present signification). *That caps the climax.*

a. Note the use of the imperfect subjunctive in the following:

Poco faltaba para que cayera. *He nearly fell.*

Por poco, adverbio con que se da a entender que apenas faltó nada para que sucediera una cosa. ***Por poco,*** *an adverb, by which one is given to understand that something almost happened.*

290. Hacer, *to do* or *make.*

hacer caso de, *to pay attention to, to mind*

No hagas caso de ése. *Never mind that fellow.*

hacer daño, *to hurt, to be injurious*

Hace daño a los ojos leer en una sala oscura. *It hurts the eyes to read in a dark room.*

hacer falta, *to need* (with indirect object of person concerned)

A Juan le hace falta un sombrero. *John needs a hat.*

Me hace falta un paraguas. *I need an umbrella.*

Hace falta tinta. *There is no ink.* (*Ink is needed.*)

hacer el papel, *to play the part*
hacer preguntas, *to ask questions*
hacer lo posible, *to do one's best*

Hizo lo posible para ganar el premio. *He did his best to win the prize.*

For **hacer** with infinitives, see section 104, *c*.

Hace construir una casa. *He is having a house built.*

hacer por (+ infinitive), *try*

Haga Vd. por venir. *Try to come.*

a. **Hacerse** *to become.* The past participle, **hecho,** often as an adjective; as, **ropa hecha,** *ready-made clothing.*

Encontró a su hermanita hecha una soberbia moza. *He found his little sister grown into a fine-looking young lady.*

Estaba allí con la boca hecha un agua. *He stood there with his mouth watering.*

b. **Hace** impersonal, see section 58.

Hace frío. *It is cold* (of the weather).

Hace un año. *A year ago.*

291. **Poder,** *to be able, can, may,* denotes physical ability. English sometimes uses *can* in the sense of mental ability, which in Spanish is **saber.**

Sé nadar, pero no puedo nadar hoy, estando malo. *I can swim* (that is, *I know how to swim*), *but I cannot swim today because I am sick.*

Poder also implies permission, *may.*

¿ Se puede entrar ? *May one come in ?*

poder más, *to be more powerful*

Veremos quién puede más. *We will see who can* (*do*) *most,* or *is most powerful.*

no poder más, *can do no more*

No puedo más. *I can't* (*do any*) *more, I am played out.*

a más no poder, *to the utmost of one's ability*

Riéndose a más no poder. *Laughing to split his sides.*

no poder menos de, *cannot help*

El padre no pudo menos de llorar. *The father could not help crying.*

292. **Poner,** *to put, place* — **meter,** *to put into.*

Pone la espada sobre la mesa.	*He places the sword on the table.*
Metió el dinero en el bolsillo.	*He put the money in his pocket.*
El sol se pone.	*The sun sets.*
Una puesta de sol.	*A sunset.*
La gallina pone huevos.	*The hen lays eggs.*

ponerse de pie, *to stand up*

ponerse pálido, *to turn pale*

ponerse a, *to start, to begin*

Se puso a trabajar.	*He began to work.*

meterse en, *to meddle*

Se mete en todo.	*He meddles in everything;* i.e. *a jack-of-all-trades.*

293. **Prestar,** *to lend.*

pedir prestado / **tomar prestado** } *to borrow* — **un préstamo,** *a loan*

Me pidió prestado mi paraguas.	*He borrowed my umbrella.*
Tomé prestado este libro a Carlos.	*I borrowed this book of Charles.*
Buscó un préstamo sobre su sortija de brillantes.	*He sought a loan on his diamond ring.*

294. **Servir,** *to serve.*

¿Para qué sirve eso?	*What is that good for?*
No sirve para nada.	*It is good for nothing.*
Él me sirvió de guía.	*He served me as a guide.*

servir (+ infinitive), *please*

Sírvase Vd. decirme.	*Please tell me.*
Le suplicamos a Vd. se sirva asegurar este envío.	*We beg you kindly to insure this shipment.*

servirse de, *to use*

¿Por qué no se sirve Vd. del guía?	*Why don't you use the guide?*

295. **Ser de** denotes source or origin, as well as the idea of property expressed by English *belong.*

Es de Sevilla.	*He is from Seville.*
La finca es de mi tío.	*The estate is my uncle's* or *belongs to my uncle.*

Ser de also means *to become of.*

¿ Qué ha sido de ellos ?	*What has become of them ?*
¿ Qué va a ser de mis hijas ?	*What is going to become of my daughters ?*

a. Become with more specific meaning, denoting a change of state, *get*, is expressed by **hacerse, llegar a ser, venir a ser.**

Se ha hecho abogado.	*He has become a lawyer.*
Llegó (or **Vino**) **a ser general.**	*He became a general.*

With adjectives, **ponerse** and **volverse** are frequent.

La señora se puso pálida.	*The lady turned pale.*
Se volvió loco.	*He became crazy.*

Other ways of expressing *become* are

(1) The progressive form of the verb; as **Va siendo tarde** or **haciéndose tarde,** *It is getting late.* See section 258.

(2) The inceptive verbs in **-ecer** (see sect. 242, note, *a*, 10, p. 212): **obscurecer,** *to get dark*; **enflaquecer,** *to become thin*, i.e. **ponerse flaco.**

296. Tener appears in idioms referring to the body or mind, which are usually expressed in English by the verb *to be.*

¿ Qué tiene Vd. ?	*What is the matter ?*
Tengo dolor de cabeza, or **Me duele la cabeza.**	*I have a headache.*

Referring to the body,

tener *to be*
- **calor,** m. *warm*
- **frío,** m. *cold*
- **hambre,** f. *hungry*
- **sed,** f. *thirsty*
- **sueño,** m. *sleepy*

Referring to the mind,

tener *to be*
- **gana** or **ganas,** f. *eager, have a desire*
- **miedo,** m. *afraid*
- **prisa,** f. *in a hurry*
- **vergüenza,** f. *ashamed*
- **razón,** f. *right*

no tener razón, *to be wrong*
tener inconveniente, m. *to have an objection*

NOTE. As the words used with **tener** are nouns, *very* is rendered by **mucho.**

Tengo mucho calor y mucha sed.	*I am very hot and very thirsty.*

For **tener** referring to age, see section 53, *b*.

¿ Cuántos años tiene el chico ?	*How old is the boy ? He is eleven*
Tiene once años.	*years old.*

For **tener que,** *must*, with an infinitive, see section 107, 1.

Tenemos que despedirnos.	*We must take leave.*

297. Valer, *to be worth.*

¿ Cuánto vale ?	*How much is it worth ?*
Más vale saber que haber.	*Better wisdom than property.*
Más vale que yo no venga.	*I had better not come.*
No hay pero que valga.	*There is no objection that counts.*

valerse de, *to avail one's self of, to use*

Se vale de su fuerza.	*He uses his strength.*

EXERCISE 40

(*The student is expected to find the expressions in the preceding pages, not in the vocabulary.*) 1. He wished him good morning. 2. The clock is going to strike seven. 3. It has just struck nine. 4. My room looks out on a court. 5. Charles busied himself in winding the many clocks. 6. My mother gave me some Spanish books. 7. He took a step backward. 8. Your new suit is very becoming to you. 9. Let's go for a walk. I prefer to drive. 10. My watch does not go well ; it is slow.[1] 11. Yours is fast, it seems to me. 12. The steamer travels very fast to-day. 13. It hurts me to sit in a draft. 14. He has become a lawyer. 15. After his absence of nine years, he found his sister grown into a handsome young lady of seventeen. 16. They did their best to win the game, but they were played out. 17. Better late than never. 18. It is worth little. 19. This room does not hold three hundred persons. 20. He cannot play the piano to-day because he has hurt his finger. 21. I cannot play because I never learned. 22. Can you speak Spanish well ? 23. May one come in ? 24. I do not know him, nor do I know who he is. 25. Please pour the coffee. 26. Where do I mail

[1] *to be slow*, **atrasar** (a verb) ; *to be fast*, **adelantar.**

this letter? 27. We missed you at the performance. 28. Who played the leading part? 29. These photographic plates are spoiled. 30. I have spoiled another plate in the developer. 31. Please post these letters for Chicago for me. 32. Why don't you use the dictionary? 33. What is the machine good for? 34. It is used to develop photographic plates. 35. Peter has borrowed my pencil. 36. He came to borrow my gun. 37. He obtained a loan on the estate. 38. One letter is lacking in the word, and another is superfluous. 39. Of my fortnight in Madrid five days are left.[1] 40. Do you know your lesson? I know it by heart. 41. It lacked a little of the time when[2] the afternoon train would leave. 42. This faithful old servant helped his master[3] to walk when he did not know how and later when he could not. 43. The lady has had flowers brought from her garden. 44. Have you hurt yourself? 45. He could not help following his steps. 46. He was much ashamed and turned red. 47. What will become of my children? 48. My friend, Don Genaro's son, has become a doctor. 49. If you get sick, send for him. 50. That man will never become president. 51. Never meddle in other people's business. 52. I am getting hoarse from[4] so much shouting. 53. If you do not need it, we will keep it till Thursday. 54. If I need money, he gets it for me.[3] 55. We have done our best to learn how to write Spanish well.

[1] Use **sobrar**: supply **me**.
[2] **para que**; omit *of the time*.
[3] Indirect object.
[4] **con**.

APPENDIX I

List of Verbs with Peculiarities of Conjugation

Verbs whose sole peculiarity consists in an orthographic change such as is indicated in section 242 *a*, inceptive verbs, etc., are not included in this list.

abnegar, renounce: 244, 1; 242, *a*, 2
abolir, abolish: 251, 4
abrir, open: *p.p. irr.*, 249
absolver, absolve: *p.p. irr.*, 245, 1
abstenerse, abstain: 250 *cf.* **tener**
abstraer, abstract: 250 *cf.* **traer**
acertar, hit the mark: 244
aclocarse, stretch out, brood: 244, 2; 242, *a*, 1
acordar, resolve, remind, tune; **acordarse,** remember: 244, 2
acostar, lay down: 244, 2
acrecentar, increase: 244, 1
adestrar, guide: 244, 1
adherir, adhere: 246, 1
adormir, make drowsy: 246, 2
adquirir, acquire: 246, 3
aducir, adduce: 250 *cf.* **-ducir**
advertir, observe, advise: 246, 1
agorar, divine, prognosticate: 245, 2, *b*
aguerrir, inure to warfare: 251, 4
alebrarse, squat, cower: 244, 1
alentar, breathe, encourage: 244, 1
aliquebrar, break the wings: 244, 1
almorzar, breakfast: 244, 2; 242, *a*, 3
alongar, lengthen: 244, 2; 242, *a*, 2
amoblar, furnish: 244, 2
amolar, whet: 244, 2
amover, remove, dismiss: 244, 4
andar, go, walk: 250
antedecir, foretell: 250 *cf.* **decir**
anteponer, put before, prefer: 250 *cf.* **poner**
antever, foresee: 250 *cf.* **ver**
apacentar, graze: 244, 1
apercollar, collar, snatch: 244, 2
aplacer, please: 251, 1
apostar, bet, post: 244, 2; **apostar,** post troops, *reg.*
apretar, squeeze, press: 244, 1
aprobar, approve: 244, 2
argüir, argue: 248, 2
arrecirse, become benumbed: 251, 4
arrendar, rent, hire: 244, 1
arrepentirse, repent: 246, 1
ascender, ascend: 244, 3
asentar, seat, set down: 244, 1
asentir, assent, acquiesce: 246, 1
aserrar, saw: 244, 1
asir, seize, grasp: 250
asolar, level to ground, raze: 244, 2
asoldar, hire: 244, 2
asonar, assonate, be in assonance: 244, 2
atender, attend, mind: 244, 3
atenerse, abide, hold: 250 *cf.* **tener**
atentar, try: 244, 1; **atentar,** attempt a crime, *reg.*
aterirse, become rigid with cold: 251, 4
aterrar, fell: 244, 1; **aterrar,** terrify, *reg.*

atestar, cram, stuff: 244, 1; **atestar**, attest, *reg.*
atraer, attract: 250 *cf.* **traer**
atravesar, cross: 244, 1
atribuir, attribute: 248
atronar, make a thundering din, stun: 244, 2
avanzar, advance: 242, *a*, 4
avenir, reconcile: 250 *cf.* **venir**
aventar, fan, winnow: 244, 1
avergonzar, shame: 245, 2, *b*
bendecir, bless: 250 *cf.* **decir**
bienquerer, esteem, wish well: 250 *cf.* **querer**
bruñir, burnish: 242, *c*
bullir, boil: 242, *c*
caber, be contained: 250
caer, fall: 250
calentar, warm, heat: 244, 1
cegar, blind: 244, 1
ceñir, gird: 242, *c*
cerner, sift: 244, 3
cerrar, close: 244, 1
cimentar, found, establish: 244, 1
circuir, encircle: 248
clocar, cluck: 244, 2
cocer, boil, bake: 244, 4; 242, *a*, 10, note
colar, strain, filter: 244, 2
colegir, collect: 247; 242, *a*, 6
colgar, hang up: 244, 2; 242, *a*, 2
comedirse, behave: 247
comenzar, commence: 244, 1; 242, *a*, 4
competir, compete: 247
complacer, please, content: 251, 1
componer, compose: 250 *cf.* **poner**
comprobar, verify, confirm: 244, 2
concebir, conceive: 247
concernir, concern: 245, 3, *b*
concertar, concert, regulate: 244, 1
concluir, conclude: 248
concordar, accord, agree: 244, 2
condescender, condescend: 244, 3
condolerse, condole: 244, 4
conducir, conduct: 250 *cf.* **-ducir**
conferir, confer: 246, 1
confesar, confess: 244, 1
confluir, join: 248
conmover, move, affect: 244, 4
conseguir, obtain, attain: 247, 2
consentir, consent: 246, 1
consolar, console: 244, 2
consonar, be in consonance, rime: 244, 2
constituir, constitute: 248
construir, construct: 248
contar, count, tell: 244, 2
contender, contend: 244, 3
contener, contain: 250 *cf.* **tener**
contorcerse, be distorted, writhe: 244, 4; 242, *a*, 9
contradecir, contradict: 250 *cf.* **decir**
contraer, contract: 250 *cf.* **traer**
contrahacer, counterfeit: 250 *cf.* **hacer**
contraponer, oppose, compare: 250 *cf.* **poner**
contravenir, contravene: 250 *cf.* **venir**
contribuir, contribute: 248
controvertir, controvert: 246, 1
convenir, agree, fit: 250 *cf.* **venir**
convertir, convert: 246, 1
corregir, correct: 247; 242, *a*, 6
corroer, corrode: 251, 2, *a*
costar, cost: 244, 2
creer, believe: 242, *b*
cubrir, cover: 249
dar, give: 250
decaer, decay: 250 *cf.* **caer**
decir, say: 250

deducir, deduce : 250 *cf.* **-ducir**
defender, defend : 244, 3
deferir, defer : 246, 1
degollar, behead, cut the throat : 245, 2, *b*
demoler, demolish : 244, 4
demostrar, demonstrate : 244, 2
dentar, tooth, indent ; teeth : 244, 1
deponer, depose, depone : 250 *cf.* **poner**
derretir, melt : 247
derrocar, pull down, demolish : 244, 2 ; 242, *a*, 1
derruir, cast down, destroy : 248
des : *for verbs compounded with this prefix, see the simple verbs*
descender, descend : 244, 3
desleír, dilute : 247, 4
desolar, make desolate : 244, 2
desollar, flay : 244, 2
desosar, remove bones : 245, 2, *c*
desovar, spawn : 245, 2, *c*
despertar, awaken : 244, 1
desterrar, exile : 244, 1
destituir, deprive, remove from office : 248
destruir, destroy : 248
detener, detain : 250 *cf.* **tener**
detraer, detract : 250 *cf.* **traer**
devolver, give back : 245, 4, *a*
diferir, defer, delay, differ : 246, 1
digerir, digest : 246, 1
diluir, dilute : 248
discernir, discern : 245, 3, *a*
discordar, disagree, be discordant : 244, 2
disentir, dissent : 246, 1
disminuir, diminish : 248
disolver, dissolve : 245, 4, *a*
disonar, be in dissonance : 244, 2
disponer, dispose : 250 *cf.* **poner**
distender, distend : 244, 3
distraer, distract : 250 *cf.* **traer**
distribuir, distribute : 248
divertir, divert : 246, 1
dolar, plane, smooth (wood, etc.) : 244, 2
doler, pain, grieve : 244, 4
dormir, sleep : 246, 2
educir, educe, bring out : 250 *cf.* **-ducir**
elegir, elect : 247 ; 242, *a*, 6
embaír, impose, deceive : 251, 4
embestir, invest, attack : 247
emparentar, be related by marriage : 244, 1
empedernir, harden, make inveterate : 251, 4
empedrar, pave : 244, 1
empeller, urge, push : 242, *c*
empezar, begin : 244, 1 ; 242, *a*, 4
emporcar, sully, befoul : 244, 2 ; 242, *a*, 1
encender, light, kindle : 244, 3
en : *for verbs compounded with this prefix, see the simple verbs*
encontrar, meet, find : 244, 2
engreír, elate, puff up : 247, 4
engrosar, fatten, strengthen : 244, 2
enhestar, erect, set upright : 244, 1
enmendar, amend, correct : 244, 1
ensangrentar, cover with blood : 244, 1
entender, hear, understand : 244, 3
enterrar, inter : 244, 1
entortar, make crooked ; deprive of one eye : 244, 2
entre : *for verbs compounded with this prefix, see the simple verbs*
envolver, involve, wrap up, complicate : 245, 4, *a*
equivaler, equal, be equivalent : 250 *cf.* **valer**

erguir, erect: 247, 3
errar, err, wander: 245, 1
escarmentar, give warning example, learn by experience: 244, 1
escocer, smart: 244, 4; 242, *a*, 10, note
escribir, write: *p.p. irr.*, 249
esforzar, strengthen; **esforzarse,** attempt: 245, 2; 242, *a*, 4
estar, be: 250
estatuir, establish: 248
estregar, rub, scour, grind: 244, 1; 242, *a*, 2
estreñir, bind, restrain: 247, 1; 242, *c*
excluir, exclude: 248
expedir, expedite, despatch: 247, 1
exponer, expose: 250 *cf.* poner
extender, extend: 244, 3
extraer, extract: 250 *cf.* traer
ferrar, put on iron points, etc.: 244, 1
fluir, flow: 248
follar, blow with bellows: 244, 2
forzar, force: 244, 2; 242, *a*, 4
fregar, rub, cleanse: 244, 1; 242, *a*, 2
freír, fry: 247, 4
garantir, guarantee: 251, 4
gemir, groan, moan: 247, 1
gobernar, govern: 244, 1
gruir, cry like cranes: 248
gruñir, grunt: 242, *c*
haber, have: 250
hacendar, transfer property: 244, 1
hacer, do, make: 250
heder, have a stench, stink: 244, 3
helar, freeze: 244, 1
henchir, stuff, cram: 247, 1
hender, cleave, split: 244, 3
herbar, dress skins: 244, 1
herir, wound: 246, 1
herrar, shoe (horses), brand (cattle): 244, 1
hervir, boil, bubble: 246, 1
holgar, rest, cease working: 244, 2; 242, *a*, 2
hollar, trample on, tread on: 244, 2
huir, flee: 248
imbuir, imbue: 248
impedir, impede: 247, 1
imponer, impose: 250 *cf.* poner
imprimir, print: *p.p. irr.*, 249
improbar, disapprove, censure: 244, 2
incensar, perfume, incense: 244, 1
incluir, include: 248
indisponer, indispose, disincline: 250 *cf.* poner
inducir, induce: 250 *cf.* -ducir
inferir, infer: 246, 1
infernar, torment: 244, 1
influir, influence: 248
ingerir, graft, insert: 246, 1
inquirir, inquire: 246, 3
instituir, institute: 248
instruir, instruct: 248
interdecir, interdict: 250 *cf.* decir
interponer, interpose: 250 *cf.* poner
intervenir, intervene: 250 *cf.* venir
introducir, introduce: 250 *cf.* -ducir
invernar, winter: 244, 1
invertir, invert, spend, invest: 246, 1
investir, invest, gird: 247, 1
ir, go: 250
jugar, play: 245, 2, *a*
leer, read: 242, *b*
llover, rain: 244, 4
maldecir, curse: 250 *cf.* decir
malherir, wound seriously: 246, 1
malquerer, dislike, abhor: 250 *cf.* querer
malsonar, make cacophony: 244, 2
maltraer, maltreat: 250 *cf.* traer
manifestar, manifest: 244, 1

manir, mellow, mature meat: 251, 4
mantener, maintain: 250 *cf.* **tener**
mecer, rock, lull, mix: 242, *a*, 10, note
medir, measure: 247, 1
melar, boil to honey, deposit honey (of bees): 244, 1
mentar, mention: 244, 1
mentir, lie: 246, 1
merendar, lunch: 244, 1
moblar, furnish: 244, 2
moler, grind: 244, 4
morder, bite: 244, 4
morir, die: 246, 2
mostrar, show: 244, 2
mover, move: 244, 4
negar, deny: 244, 1; 242, *a*, 2
nevar, snow: 244, 1
obstruir, obstruct: 248
obtener, obtain: 250 *cf.* **tener**
oír, hear: 250
oler, smell: 245, 4, *b*
oponer, oppose: 250 *cf.* **poner**
oprimir, oppress: 249
pedir, ask: 247, 1
pensar, think, mean, believe: 244, 1
perder, lose, spoil, destroy: 244, 3
perseguir, pursue, persecute: 247, 2
pervertir, pervert: 246, 1
placer, please: 251, 1
plañir, lament, bewail: 242, *c*
plegar, fold: 244, 1; 242, *a*, 2
poblar, found, people, fill: 244, 2
poder, be able, can: 250
poner, put: 250
poseer, possess: 242, *b*
posponer, place after, postpone: 250 *cf.* **poner**
predecir, predict: 250 *cf.* **decir**
predisponer, predispose: 250 *cf.* **poner**
preferir, prefer: 246, 1
prender, arrest, catch: 249
preponer, put before, prefer: 250 *cf.* **poner**
presentir, forebode, foresee: 246, 1
presuponer, presuppose: 250 *cf.* **poner**
prevalerse, prevail: 250 *cf.* **valer**
prevenir, forestall, prevent: 250 *cf.* **venir**
prever, foresee: 250 *cf.* **ver**
probar, prove, try, taste: 244, 2
producir, produce: 250 *cf.* **-ducir**
proferir, utter, pronounce: 246, 1
promover, promote: 244, 4
proponer, propose: 250 *cf.* **poner**
proseguir, pursue, prosecute: 247, 2
proveer, provide: 242, *b*; 249
provenir, proceed: 250 *cf.* **venir**
quebrar, break: 244, 1
querer, wish, like: 250
raer, scrape, grate, erase: 251, 2
rarefacer, rarify: 250 *cf.* **hacer**
re: *for verbs compounded with this prefix, see the simple verbs*
recordar, remind: 244, 2
referir, relate, refer: 246, 1
regar, water: 244, 1; 242, *a*, 2
regimentar, form into regiments: 244, 1
regir, rule, direct: 247, 1; 242, *a*, 6
regoldar, belch, eruct: 244, 2; 245, 2, *b*
reír, laugh: 247, 4
remendar, repair, patch: 244, 1
rendir, subdue, render; **rendirse,** surrender: 247, 1
renovar, renovate, renew: 244, 2
reñir, quarrel, scold: 247, 1; 242, *c*
repetir, repeat, recite: 247, 1
requebrar, court, make love: 244, 1
requerir, investigate, require, request: 246, 1

resolver, resolve: *p.p. irr.*, 245, 4, *a*
resollar, respire: 244, 2
reventar, burst: 244, 1
rodar, roll: 244, 2
roer, gnaw: 251, 3
rogar, entreat, ask: 244, 2; 242, *a*, 2
saber, know: 250
salir, go out, come out: 250
salpimentar, season with pepper and salt: 244, 1
sarmentar, gather prunings of vine: 244, 1
satisfacer, satisfy: 250 *cf.* **hacer**
segar, reap: 244, 1; 242, *a*, 2
seguir, follow; 247, 2
sembrar, sow: 244, 1
sementar, sow: 244, 1
sentar, seat, set, suit: 244, 1
sentir, feel, regret: 246, 1
ser, to be: 250
serrar, saw: 244, 1
servir, serve: 247, 1
sobre: *for verbs compounded with this prefix, see the simple verbs*
sofreír, fry slightly: 247, 4
solar, floor, pave, sole. 244, 2
soldar, solder, mend: 244, 2
soler, be wont, be accustomed: 244, 4
soltar, untie, loosen: 244, 2
solver, loosen: *p.p. irr.*, 245, 4, *a*
sonar, sound: 244, 2
sonreír, smile: 247, 4
sonrodarse, stick in the mud: 244, 2
soñar, dream: 244, 2
sosegar, appease, rest: 244, 1; 242, *a*, 2
sostener, sustain: 250 *cf.* **tener**
soterrar, put underground, bury: 244, 1
sub: *for verbs compounded with this prefix, see the simple verbs*
sugerir, suggest: 246, 1
superponer, superimpose: 250 *cf.* **poner**
supervenir, supervene: 250 *cf.* **venir**
suponer, suppose: 250 *cf.* **poner**
suprimir, suppress: 249
sustituir, substitute: 248
sustraer, subtract: 250 *cf.* **traer**
tañer, ring, peal, touch: 242, *c*
temblar, tremble: 244, 1
tender, stretch: 244, 3
tener, have, hold: 250
tentar, feel, try: 244, 1
teñir, tinge, dye, stain: 247, 1; 242, *c*
torcer, twist, bend: 244, 4; 242, *a*, 9
tostar, toast: 244, 2
traducir, translate: 250 *cf.* **-ducir**
traer, bring: 250
trans *or* **tras:** *for verbs compounded with this prefix, see the simple verbs*
travesar, cross: 244, 1
trocar, exchange, barter: 244, 2; 242, *a*, 1
tronar, thunder: 244, 2
tropezar, stumble: 244, 1; 242, *a*, 4
valer, be worth: 250
venir, come: 250
ventar, blow: 244, 1
ver, see: 250
verter, pour, shed: 244, 3
vestir, dress, clothe: 247, 1
volar, fly, rise, blow up: 244, 2
volcar, overturn: 244, 2; 242, *a*, 1
volver, return, come back: 245, 4
yacer, lie: 250, I
yuxtaponer, put in juxtaposition: 250 *cf.* **poner**
za(m)bullirse, dive: 242, *c*
zaherir, reproach, censure: 246, 1

APPENDIX II

1. Verbs followed directly by a dependent infinitive without a connecting preposition are —

aconsejar, advise, counsel
acostumbrar, be accustomed
afirmar, affirm, declare
asegurar, assure, claim
aseverar, assert
celebrar, be glad
confesar, confess
convenir, suit
creer, think, believe
deber, should, ought
declarar, declare
dejar, let, allow, permit
desear, desire, wish
determinar, determine
escuchar, listen to
esperar, hope
figurarse, imagine
fingir, pretend
gustar, like, please
hacer, make
imaginarse, imagine
impedir, prevent, hinder
intentar, try, attempt
jurar, swear
lograr, succeed in
mandar, order
más vale, it is better
merecer, deserve
mirar, look at, watch
necesitar, need, want
negar, deny
notificar, notify
ocurrir(se), occur (to one)
odiar, hate
oír, hear
osar, dare
parecer, seem
pensar, intend
permitir, permit
poder, be able
preferir, prefer
presumir, presume
pretender, claim, try
procurar, try
prohibir, prohibit
prometer, promise
proponer, propose, purpose
querer, wish
recomendar, recommend
reconocer, acknowledge, confess
recordar, remember
saber, know how, be able
sentir, feel, hear, regret, be sorry
servirse, please, be so kind as
significar, mean, signify
soler, be wont
sostener, maintain; affirm
sugerir, suggest
temer, fear
tocar, be one's turn
valer más, be better
ver, see

2. Verbs that require a *before a dependent infinitive are —*

abandonar(se), give (one's self) up to
acceder, accede, agree
acercarse, draw near, approach
acertar, happen
acomodarse, conform one's self
acudir, hasten
adherir(se), stick to
aficionarse, become addicted
ajustarse, agree, combine
alcanzar, reach, attain, succeed
andarse, undertake, busy one's self with
animar, encourage
aplicarse, apply one's self
aprender, learn
apresurar(se), hasten, hurry
arriesgarse, risk one's self
aspirar, aspire
atreverse, dare
autorizar, authorize
aventajar, excel, surpass
aventurarse, venture
ayudar, aid, help
circunscribir(se), confine (one's self)
comenzar, commence, begin
comprometer(se), engage, agree
condenar, condemn
condescender, condescend
conducir, lead, conduct
conformarse, conform, agree
consagrar(se), devote (one's self)
conspirar, conspire
continuar, continue
contrariar, oppose
contribuir, contribute
convidar, invite
convocar, convoke
cooperar, coöperate
correr, run
dar, give
decidir(se), decide, determine
dedicar(se), dedicate (one's self)
desafiar, challenge
descender, descend
deshacerse, try hard; kill one's self in
destinar, destine
detenerse, stop, tarry
determinar(se), determine
disponer(se), prepare, get ready
distraerse, amuse one's self
divertirse, amuse one's self
echar(se), exercise; begin
empezar, begin
enseñar, teach
entrar, start
entretener(se), entertain (one's self)
enviar, send
esforzar(se), attempt, endeavor
excitar, excite
exhortar, exhort
exponer(se), expose (one's self)
faltar, fail
forzar, force
ganar, excel, surpass; win, gain (by)
habituar(se), accustom (one's self)
humillar(se), humiliate (one's self)
igualar, equal
impeler, impel
incitar, incite
inclinar(se), incline, induce
inducir, induce
inspirar, inspire
invitar, invite
ir, go
jugar, play (at)
limitar(se), limit (one's self)
llegar, come, succeed

mandar, send
matarse, kill one's self
meterse, undertake
mover(se), impel (one's self)
negarse, decline, refuse
obligar(se), oblige (one's self)
ofrecer(se), offer, present (one's self)
oponerse, oppose, be adverse
pararse, stop
pasar, proceed, pass
persuadir(se), persuade (one's self)
poner(se), put one's self, begin
preparar(se), prepare, make ready
presentarse, present one's self
probar, try
proceder, proceed
provocar, provoke
quedar(se), remain
reducir(se), reduce one's self, bring (one's self) down
referirse, refer
rehusar(se), refuse
renunciar, renounce
resignarse, resign, submit
resistirse, struggle, resist
resolver(se), resolve, decide
romper, break out in
sacar, draw out, extract, invite
salir, go (*or* come) out
sentarse, be seated, sit down
soltar, start
someter(se), submit (one's self)
temer, fear
tender, tend
tirar, tend, be inclined
tornar, return; . . . again
urgir, urge
vencer(se), outdo, excel, surpass
venir(se), come, happen
volar, fly
volver, return; . . . again

3. Verbs that require con *before a dependent infinitive are—*

amenazar, threaten
bastar, be sufficient, be enough
contar, count on
contentarse, content one's self
divertirse, amuse one's self
soñar, dream

4. Verbs that require de *before a dependent infinitive are—*

absolver(se), absolve (one's self)
aburrirse, be vexed, wearied
acabar, finish, end
acordarse, remember
acusar, accuse
admirarse, wonder
afligirse, lament, repine
agraviarse, be grieved, piqued
ahogarse, be suffocated
alegrarse, rejoice, be glad
apercibirse, perceive
aprovecharse, profit
arrepentirse, repent
arriesgarse, risk one's self
asustarse, be terrified
avergonzarse, be ashamed
cansar(se), tire, grow weary
cesar, cease
concertar, agree, covenant
concluir, conclude
confesarse, confess
contentarse, be satisfied

cuidar(se), take care not to, keep from
culpar, blame
dar, give
deber, owe, ought
dejar, leave off, cease, fail
desacostumbrarse, lose the custom
desanimar(se), discourage, be discouraged
descansar, tire, weary
descuidar, neglect
desdeñar(se), disdain, be disdainful
desesperar(se), despair
desistir, desist
detenerse, stop, tarry
dignarse, deign
disculpar(se), excuse
disgustar(se), disgust, be displeased
dispensar, excuse
distraerse, distract (one's self)
disuadir, dissuade
dudar, doubt, hesitate
echar(se), come to
encargarse, take upon one's self
enorgullecerse, take pride
entristecerse, become sad
excusar(se), excuse (one's self)
faltar, fail
fastidiar(se), weary, be weary
fatigar(se), tire, be tired
felicitar(se), congratulate (one's self)
gozar(se), enjoy
guardarse, avoid, guard against
haber, have
hablar, speak, mention
hartarse, satiate one's self, be satisfied
impacientarse, be impatient
incomodarse, be annoyed
indignarse, be indignant
jactarse, boast
jurar, swear
justificar(se), justify (one's self)
ofenderse, be offended
olvidar(se), forget
persuadir(se), persuade
pesar, be sorry
picarse, be vexed
preciarse, boast
privar(se), deprive, be deprived
quejarse, complain
reírse, laugh
reventar, burst
sentirse, feel
ser, be
sonreírse, smile
sospechar, suspect
sufrir, suffer
temblar, tremble
terminar, finish
tratar, try, endeavor
valerse, avail one's self of
venir, come, have just
vivir, live

5. Verbs that require en *before a dependent infinitive are —*

acertar, succeed (in)
acordar, agree
adelantar(se), advance in
adiestrar(se), train (one's self)
andar, undertake
apresurarse, hasten
aventajar, excel, surpass
balancear, hesitate, waver
cansar(se), tire, grow weary
complacerse, take pleasure

condescender, condescend
confiar, confide, trust in, hope
conformarse, agree
consentir, consent
consistir, consist
consumirse, be consumed
continuar, continue
convenir(se), agree
cooperar, coöperate
cuidarse, take pains
dar, come to
deleitarse, delight
deshacerse, try hard to; kill one's self in
detenerse, stop
determinarse, determine
distraerse, amuse one's self
divertirse, amuse one's self
ejercitar(se), exercise (one's self)
empeñarse, try, insist
emplear(se), employ (one's self)
engañarse, be mistaken
entenderse, agree
entretener(se), amuse (one's self)
equivocarse, be mistaken
esforzar(se), attempt, endeavor
esmerarse, to take great pains
fijarse, pay attention
ganar, excel, surpass, bear
gastar, spend
gozar(se), take pleasure
incidar, fall into (as an error)
insistir, insist
instruir(se), instruct (one's self)
matarse, kill one's self
meditar, meditate
mezclarse, meddle with
moderarse, moderate one's self
molestarse, put one's self out
obstinarse, persist in
ocupar(se), busy (one's self)
parar, stop
particularizarse, specialize
pensar, think
perder, lose
perseverar, persevere
persistir, persist
prorrumpir, burst forth, break out
quedar, agree
recrear(se), divert (one's self)
romper, break out (into)
sobresalir, excel
tardar, delay
terminar, end (by)
titubear, hesitate
trabajar, work
vacilar, hesitate
vencer(se), outdo, surpass, excel
vengarse, avenge one's self (by)
venir, agree

6. Verbs having por *before a dependent infinitive are —*

acabar, end by
afanarse, toil
apurarse, exert one's self
dejar, leave to be . . .
estar, yet to be . . . (*see next section*)
hacer, try
incomodarse, put one's self out
matarse, try hard (*see next section*)
morirse, be dying to
quedar, remain to be . . .
pugnar, strive, struggle
rabiar, be crazy to
reventar, be bursting to
trabajar, work

7. Some verbs that vary in idiom or meaning according to the construction before a dependent infinitive are —

acabar de, finish; have just . . .
acabar por, end with; . . . finally
No acaba de llover. It does not stop raining.
El señor acaba de salir. The gentleman has just gone out.
Habían acabado por tomarse mucho cariño. They had finally become very fond of each other.

acertar a, happen; succeed
acertar en, hit it right
Aquel día acertó a ser domingo. That day happened to be Sunday.
Acerté en suponerlo. I was correct in supposing so.

acostumbrar (*direct infinitive*), be in the habit of
acostumbrarse a, get the habit of
No acostumbro mentir. I am not in the habit of lying.
Acostúmbrate a guardar silencio. Acquire the habit of being silent.

dar a, give to
dar de, serve with food, etc.
dar en, insist on
Me dió a entender. He gave me to understand.
El obispo da de almorzar a doce pobres. The bishop serves breakfast to twelve poor men.
Dí de comer a mi caballo. I fed my horse.
El burro dió en rebuznar. The ass insisted on braying.

deber (*dir. infin.*), ought, should
deber de, must (*supposition*)
Debemos estudiar. We should study.
Debe de hacer frío. It must be cold.

dejar (*dir. infin.*), allow, permit
dejar de, fail, neglect; stop
Déjale correr. Let him run.
Dejó de cumplir con su promesa. He failed to keep his promise.
Manuel dejó de silbar. Manuel stopped whistling.

echar(se) a, begin, start
echar a perder, spoil
echar de ver, notice
El vapor echa a andar lentamente. The steamer begins to move slowly.
La carne se echa a perder. The meat is spoiling.
¿No echas de ver las sombras? Don't you observe the shadows?

estar para, be about to
estar por, yet to be . . .; be inclined to
Está para morir. He is at the point of death.
La sala está por barrer. The room is yet to be swept.
Estoy por romperle la cabeza. I am inclined to break his head.

matarse a, kill one's self by
matarse por, try hard
Se mata a trabajar. He is killing himself with work.

Juan se mataba por ganar el premio. John tried hard to win the prize.

pensar (*dir. infin.*), intend
pensar en, think of
Piensa ofrecerles una comida. He intends to offer them a dinner.
La reina pensaba en elegir un ministro. The queen was thinking of choosing a minister.

venir a, come to
venir de, come, to have just . . .
venir en, grant (used in legal style and decrees)
Venga Vd. a verme. Come and see me.
Vino a ser rey. He became king.
Vengo de cumplir un voto. I have just fulfilled a vow.
Vengo en decretar lo siguiente. I decree the following.

APPENDIX III

REPASO DE LA GRAMÁTICA

NOTE. The object of the following review is to supply the technical terminology of Spanish grammar. Not only are the correct terms given to use in classroom discussion, but also idiomatic forms of expression, which cannot be found in books that merely print in the body of the text the Spanish terms after the English. To preserve the idiom the review is not a translation of the English text; therefore the study of facts must be supplemented from the text. To make this easier the sections bear corresponding numbers. The early sections of the review are fuller because the later paragraphs involve fewer new words. As those who make use of this review should adopt a comparative method of study, the special words are not given in the vocabulary. To teachers who desire it, opportunity is thus afforded for both intelligent and idiomatic conversation about grammar.

1. Alfabeto. El alfabeto castellano consta de veinte y ocho signos o letras; a los cuales pueden agregarse otros dos, **k** y **w**, que se emplean en voces de idiomas extranjeros.

2. Vocales. Las vocales representan sonidos producidos cuando vibra la laringe. Llámanse fuertes las vocales **a, e, o**: débiles **i, u.**

3. Diptongos. La combinación de dos vocales pronunciada de un solo golpe se llama diptongo, y la de tres, triptongo. El castellano forma diptongos uniendo una de las vocales fuertes, **a, e, o,** con cualquiera de las dos vocales débiles, **i, u.** Forman diptongo también las dos débiles. En un diptongo o triptongo prevalece siempre la vocal fuerte; y de dos vocales débiles la última.

4. Triptongos. En los triptongos se combinan dos vocales débiles con una fuerte. Son cuatro, **iái, uái, iéi, uéi.**

5. Consonantes. Las demás letras del alfabeto se llaman consonantes porque suenan con las vocales.

8. Acento es la mayor intensidad en la pronunciación de determinada sílaba de una palabra. Acento se denomina también el signo ortográfico, la rayita, que se pone frecuentemente sobre la vocal de la sílaba acentuada. El acento divide las palabras en tres clases, agudas, llanas, y esdrújulas. Son agudas aquéllas cuyo acento carga en la última sílaba; llanas, aquéllas cuya pronunciación grava la penúltima; y esdrújulas las que llevan la fuerza de la pronunciación a la antepenúltima.

9. Acento Ortográfico. (1) Las voces agudas de más de una sílaba acabadas en vocal se acentúan: **café, rubí, amará;** y las que terminan en las consonantes **n** o **s**: **amarán, inglés.** Las voces llanas terminadas en consonante, con excepción de **n** o **s**, se acentúan: **árbol, virgen, amigos.** Acentúanse todos los esdrújulos: **pálido.**

La Gramática de la Real Academia Española da además las siguientes reglas para la acentuación ortográfica. (Los números se refieren al párrafo 9 de este libro.)

«Las palabras que terminan en una vocal débil con acento prosódico seguida de un diptongo y **s** final, lo cual ocurre en ciertas personas de verbos, llevarán acento ortográfico en dicha vocal débil: **decíais.**

(2) En las voces donde haya encuentro de vocal fuerte con una débil, ésta llevará acento ortográfico si sobre ella carga la pronunciación: **día, tíos, baúles.**

Si hay diptongo en la sílaba de dicciones agudas, llanas o esdrújulas que, según lo prescripto, se deba acentuar, el signo ortográfico irá sobre la vocal fuerte o sobre la segunda si las dos son débiles: **buscapié, después, benjuí, Cáucaso.**

(5, *a*) A esta última regla se ajustan las voces monosílabas de verbo con diptongo: **fué, fuí, dió, vió.**

(5) El adverbio **aun** precediendo al verbo no se acentúa, porque en este caso forman diptongo las dos vocales; pero se acentuará

cuando vaya después del verbo, porque entonces se pronuncia como voz aguda bisílaba.

El triptongo se acentúa en la vocal fuerte: **amortiguáis, despreciéis**.

(5) Los monosílabos nunca necesitarían llevar el acento escrito, pues no pueden acentuarse sino en la única sílaba existente; no obstante, se escribe el acento cuando existen dos monosílabos iguales en su forma, pero con distinta función gramatical, en una de las cuales lleva acento prosódico y en otra es átono.

(5, *b*) La preposición **a** y las conjunciones **e, o, u,** no llevando acento prosódico, tampoco deben llevarlo escrito. No obstante, lo llevará escrito la conjunción **o** cuando, por hallarse inmediata a cifras, pudiera confundirse con el cero: **3 ó 4.**

Por costumbre se acentúa la palabra **sólo** cuando es adverbio, y no si es substantivo o adjetivo.

(3, 4) La mayor acentuación prosódica que en la cláusula toman determinadas voces cuando se emplean, ya separadas de aquéllas a quienes se refieren, ya con énfasis, ya en tono interrogativo o admirativo, pide acento ortográfico también, innecesario por regla general en las mismas palabras.

(7, *a*) Los tiempos de verbo que llevan acento ortográfico, le conservan aun cuando acrecientan su terminación tomando un afijo.

(8) Los dos elementos de las voces compuestas conservan su acentuación prosódica, y deben llevar la ortográfica que como simples les corresponda.

Los términos latinos o de otras lenguas usados en la nuestra, y los nombres propios extranjeros, se acentuarán con sujeción a las leyes prosódicas para las dicciones castellanas: **memorándum, Amiéns, Schúbert, Wíndsor.**»

10. Sílabas. Una sílaba consta de una vocal sola, de dos o más vocales que forman diptongo o triptongo, o de una o más vocales acompañadas de consonantes. Para la exacta división de las sílabas conviene saber que, si hay una consonante entre dos vocales, se une para formar sílaba con la vocal que la sigue.

11. Puntuación. En castellano se usan en la escritura algunos signos de puntuación de un modo distinto del inglés.

1. Los signos de interrogación y de admiración se colocan al principio y al fin de la cláusula. El signo de principio de interrogación o de admiración se ha de poner donde empieza la pregunta o el sentido admirativo: **Dígame, ¿ cuál me dió estas flores ?**

2. Los puntos suspensivos denotan que la cláusula está incompleta, o el sentido suspenso.

3. La raya se emplea en los diálogos.

12. Letras Mayúsculas y Minúsculas. Se escriben con letra mayúscula la primera palabra de un escrito y la que vaya después de punto final; los nombres propios y de dignidad; los atributos divinos; los nombres en un título de una obra literaria, pero no se observa esta regla si el título es largo; la numeración romana; las abreviaturas de **don,** de **usted,** y de otros tratamientos.

00. Las Partes de la Oración se llaman nombre substantivo, nombre adjetivo, pronombre, artículo, verbo, participio, adverbio, preposición, conjunción e interjección. El nombre substantivo puede llamarse únicamente nombre o substantivo; también el nombre adjetivo puede llamarse únicamente adjetivo. La oración gramatical consta de sujeto, verbo y complemento.

14. Terminaciones personales. Las personas son tres en el número singular y tres en el plural. La segunda persona se usa cuando los padres hablan con sus hijos o se hablan los amigos íntimos. Cuando se dirige la palabra a aquéllos a quienes no se debe tutear, hay que emplear **usted,** en plural **ustedes,** voces que rigen al verbo en tercera persona.

15. Conjugación. Hay en castellano tres conjugaciones del verbo según las terminaciones del infinitivo, **-ar, -er, -ir.** El infinitivo es el modo que anuncia la idea en abstracto del verbo sin expresar número ni persona. Las letras que preceden a la terminación se llaman radicales o raíz.

16. Modos y Tiempos. Se llaman modos las distintas maneras de manifestarse la significación del verbo. Los modos son cuatro: infinitivo, indicativo, subjuntivo e imperativo. El modo indicativo expresa la significación del verbo como real, sea afirmativo, negativo, interrogativo, admirativo.

El tiempo es la división de la conjugación que denota el tiempo en que sucede la acción del verbo, sea presente, pretérito o futuro.

17. La forma interrogativa. En preguntas por lo común el sujeto va pospuesto al verbo. El signo de interrogación se pone al principio y al fin de la cláusula.

18. La forma negativa. El adverbio de negación se antepone al verbo.

20. (129.) Género. El género indica el sexo de las personas y de los animales, ya sea masculino, ya feminino. Son del género masculino los nombres de varones y de animales machos, los que significan empleos propios de varones y los terminados en **o**. Son del género feminino los nombres de mujeres, de animales hembras y la mayor parte de los terminados en **a**. (De éstos se exceptúan los nombres de origen griego.)

21. El artículo es la parte de la oración que se antepone al nombre y lo determina. Hay dos en castellano, el artículo determinado (definido) y el artículo indeterminado (indefinido). Las formas del artículo determinado son de los géneros masculino, feminino y neutro. El neutro no tiene plural y se usa con el adjetivo cuando significa lo genérico y lo abstracto.

22. Número de los nombres. El plural de los nombres que acaban en vocal no acentuada se forma añadiendo una **s** al singular; los que terminan en consonante o vocal acentuada reciben en el plural la sílaba **es**.

25. El verbo **ser** expresa la esencia y la existencia, y también las condiciones propias de personas y cosas. Se emplea el verbo **estar** para significar la situación o disposición de las cosas.

26. 1. El artículo indeterminado (indefinido) no se emplea por lo común con los substantivos que son términos del verbo **ser.**

2. **(124.)** El artículo determinado (definido) se emplea con los substantivos abstractos y los genéricos que designan la totalidad de un género de cosas. Los nombres de unas regiones, provincias, países, ríos llevan el artículo, así como los epítetos como **señor, general,** etc., a menos que no se dirija la palabra a los individuos.

3. También se usa el artículo con los adjetivos de nacionalidad, con alguna excepción cuando éstos designan el idioma.

27. Concordancia. El artículo y el adjetivo concuerdan con el substantivo en género, número y caso.

28. Género de adjetivos. Los adjetivos acabados en **o** tienen esta terminación para el género masculino y para el género neutro y la terminación en **a** para el género feminino. También admiten la terminación en **a** los adjetivos acabados en **án, ón, or** (salvo los que son comparativos), **ete, ote;** y los que significan nacionalidad. Los demás adjetivos son de una sola terminación para todos los géneros.

30. El plural de los adjetivos se forma de la misma manera que el de los substantivos.

33. Caso genitivo. Para denotar la relación de posesión se emplea el caso genitivo que lleva antepuesta la preposición **de.**

34. Demostrativos. Aplícase **este** a lo que está cerca de la persona que habla; **ese** a lo que está cerca de la persona a quien se habla; y **aquel** a lo que está lejos de una y otra. Cuando los demostrativos hacen oficios de pronombres llevan acento ortográfico.

36. Pronombres personales. Las más veces se omiten los pronombres personales en la conjugación, pero se emplean cuando no hay verbo y para dar énfasis a la persona.

37. Posesivos. Siendo adjetivos, los posesivos concuerdan con los substantivos en género y número.

39. Numerales cardinales son los que sirven para contar.

Los números **uno** y **ciento** se transforman en **un** y **cien** cuando se anteponen a los substantivos.

40. Ordinales son los adjetivos que expresan número con idea de orden o sucesión. Para expresar la fecha se emplean los cardinales salvo el primero del mes.

46. Apócope. Algunos adjetivos pierden la última vocal cuando se anteponen al nombre substantivo en el masculino del singular; **grande** pierde la última sílaba cuando se antepone a un substantivo ya masculino ya feminino.

47. Comparación. Los adjetivos comparativos se forman anteponiendo a los positivos los adverbios **más** o **menos.** **(146.)** El superlativo absoluto se forma añadiendo al positivo la terminación **-ísimo,** que es equivalente al adverbio **muy.**

48. Algunos adjetivos son de por sí comparativos, sin adición de **más** ni **menos**; éstos se derivan del latín.

49. La partícula **que** debe preceder al segundo término de la comparación, pero se convierte en **de** cuando éste expresa una idea de cantidad. En las oraciones negativas es más corriente la partícula **que.**

50. Comparación de igualdad. Si el primer término es un nombre y lo precede **tanto,** debe corresponderle **como. Tanto** pierde la última sílaba siempre que precede a un adjetivo o a un adverbio.

51. El adjetivo que se refiere a nombres de números diversos va en plural; y en la terminación masculina si los nombres son de diversos géneros.

52. Colocación de adjetivos. El adjetivo suele preceder al substantivo cuando significa una calidad propia del objeto y posponerse si denota alguna circunstancia accidental o que no es de la esencia de la cosa. **(139,** 5.) Hay adjetivos que tienen una diferencia de sentido, en razón de estar el adjetivo antes o después del substantivo. **(139,** 4.) Ciertos adjetivos no pueden ir pospuestos al substantivo.

54. Verbos que cambían la vocal radical. Muchos verbos mudan la **e** radical en **ie**, la **o** en **ue**. Algunos verbos de la tercera conjugación cambían la **e** en **i**. Esta irregularidad de conjugación se encuentra en la sílaba acentuada.

55. El Infinitivo. Algunos verbos rigen a otros verbos en infinitivo haciéndolos complemento directo o los rigen por medio de preposiciones.

56. Objeto indirecto es la persona o cosa a que se aplica la significación del verbo sin que sea objeto directo de ella. Va precedido de la preposición **a**.

57. (134.) Objeto directo. Empléase la preposición **a** delante del objeto directo del verbo cuando es nombre que significa persona definida, nombre propio de lugar que no va precedido de artículo, algunos pronombres, y cuando sin la preposición **a** pueda ser ambigua la locución.

59. Verbos Reflexivos. Aquel verbo es reflexivo cuya acción vuelve a la misma persona o cosa que le rige.

61. El castellano da al verbo un sentido pasivo por medio de la forma reflexiva.

63. Pretérito Perfecto. El pretérito se refiere a un tiempo pasado cuando los hechos se consideran como totalmente pasados. Téngase presentes los cambios ortográficos en la conjugación de este tiempo.

65. Pretérito Imperfecto. Este tiempo indica que la acción pasada del verbo coincidía con otra acción ya pasada. Empléase para denotar ocupaciones y costumbres habituales.

67. Participios. En castellano el gerundio en **-ando** y **-iendo** hace las veces del participio presente de inglés. El participio presente en **-ante** y **-ente** sirve para adjetivo. Del participio pasivo o pretérito se forman los tiempos compuestos con el verbo auxiliar **haber.**

68. El Gerundio denota condición, causa o circunstancia de modo y de tiempo.

69. **El Participio Pasivo** o pretérito hace el oficio de adjetivo además de emplearse en la formación de los tiempos compuestos del verbo.

70. **El Pretérito Perfecto Compuesto** se forma del presente de **haber** con el participio pasivo del verbo.

71. **El Pretérito Pluscuamperfecto** se forma del pretérito imperfecto del verbo auxiliar con el participio pasivo del verbo.

72. Las partes de los tiempos compuestos del verbo no admiten adverbio entre ellas.

73. **El Pretérito Perfecto Compuesto** se usa cuando el hecho pasado se considera como aún subsistente en sus resultados o como ocurrido en un período de tiempo que no se considera terminado todavía.

74. Muchos verbos castellanos van seguidos de una preposición.

75. **Los Pronombres Relativos** ***que***, ***quien*** (***quienes***) se refieren a otras palabras en la oración que se llaman antecedentes. **Quien** corresponde sólo a un antecedente que significa persona.

76. **El Futuro** indica una acción venidera, lo que será o sucederá.

77. **Condicional.** Llámase en castellano esta forma del verbo la segunda forma del pretérito imperfecto de subjuntivo. Cuando se emplea este tiempo existe por lo común una condición en la misma oración. También se usa el condicional como un pretérito del futuro.

81. **Los Pronombres Personales,** cuando están en acusativo o dativo, preceden al verbo por regla general, pero se posponen al infinitivo, al gerundio y al imperativo uniéndose con ellos como enclíticos; y entonces se llaman afijos. Los pronombres enclíticos carecen de acento.

82. Los pronombres regidos de preposición se usan para dar énfasis a la oración.

83. **Adverbios** de modo se forman agregando **mente** al feminino del adjetivo.

87. El Modo Imperativo significa mando o súplica. No tiene más personas que las segundas de singular y plural; y no puede usarse con la negación cuando el imperativo es prohibitivo. Se toma el imperativo de tercera persona del presente de subjuntivo.

100. El Modo Infinitivo se emplea cuando el verbo es complemento directo de otro verbo, las más veces con preposición. Algunos verbos rigen al gerundio.

101. Los verbos que significan acción, movimiento, tendencia rigen a otros con la preposición **a.**

104. El infinitivo regido de otro verbo tiene generalmente el mismo sujeto que los verbos regentes. Si el agente no es uno mismo para los dos, el segundo va en subjuntivo.

105. El infinitivo hace las veces de substantivo masculino del número singular, llevando generalmente el artículo, o el adjetivo posesivo o demostrativo.

109. El Modo Subjuntivo toma el nombre de que todas las frases de sus tiempos están determinadas por un verbo de los otros modos con el que las enlaza alguna conjunción. Los verbos que se refieren a los actos de la voluntad y los que significan temor o alegría exigen que se ponga el verbo regido en subjuntivo. **(278.)** También piden el verbo en subjuntivo las cláusulas que indican algo indeterminado, sean condicionales, finales o relativas.

112. Cuando la conjunción **si** precede a una oración que expresa duda, el verbo regido puede usarse en indicativo; pero si la oración expresa una condición irrealizable, el verbo va en el pretérito imperfecto de subjuntivo de las terminaciones **-ra** y **-se.**

NOTE. The Spanish nomenclature of the verb is so confusing to an American student that in some respects it is not good practice to follow it. Its peculiarities will be clear from the following synopsis of the verb **amar,** taken from the grammar of the Spanish Academy. The most confusing features are found in the tenses called *pretérito perfecto de indicativo*, because not only are compound (*compuesto*) forms grouped with a simple form but the two compound forms must be

distinguished as first and second. Likewise the *pretérito imperfecto de subjuntivo* and the *pretérito pluscuamperfecto de subjuntivo* include three forms, each of which must be distinguished by numerals; moreover, the form which is commonly termed conditional in other languages is here given as the second form. The forms of the subjunctive used as imperative are considered as forms of the imperative mood.

EJEMPLO DE LA PRIMERA CONJUGACIÓN

Amar

MODO INFINITIVO

PRESENTE	**amar**
PRETÉRITO	**haber amado**
FUTURO	**haber de amar**
GERUNDIO	**amando**
PARTICIPIO	**amado**

MODO INDICATIVO

TIEMPO PRESENTE	**amo**
PRETÉRITO IMPERFECTO	**amaba**
PRETÉRITO PERFECTO	**amé, he amado, hube amado**
PRETÉRITO PLUSCUAMPERFECTO	**había amado**
FUTURO IMPERFECTO	**amaré**
FUTURO PERFECTO	**habré amado**

MODO SUBJUNTIVO

PRESENTE	**ame**
PRETÉRITO IMPERFECTO	**amara, amaría, amase**
PRETÉRITO PERFECTO	**haya amado**
PRETÉRITO PLUSCUAMPERFECTO	**hubiera amado, habría amado, hubiese amado**
FUTURO IMPERFECTO	**amare**
FUTURO PERFECTO	**hubiere amado**

MODO IMPERATIVO

PRESENTE

SINGULAR	PLURAL
	amemos (nosotros)
ama (tú)	**amad (vosotros)**
ame (él)	**amen (ellos)**

SPANISH–ENGLISH VOCABULARY

a to, at, on, from, *sign of the personal accusative*
abajo below, down
abandonar to abandon, leave
abierto *p.p. of* **abrir**; open
abonar to credit
abrigar to shelter, protect
abrigo *m.* shelter, wrap, overcoat
abril *m.* April
abrir to open
abuelo -a *m. and f.* grandfather, grandmother; *m. pl.* grandparents
acá hither, here
acabar to end, finish; **acabar de** to have just
aceptar to accept
acerca de about
ácido -a sour
acompañar to accompany, go with, sympathize with
aconsejar to advise
acostar to lay down, put to bed; *refl.* to lie down, go to bed
acusación *f.* accusation
acusar to acknowledge
adelante forward; **en adelante** henceforth
además (de) besides
adiós good-by
adjunto inclosed, herewith
admitir to admit
adquirir to purchase; acquire
aduana *f.* custom-house
aeroplano, *m.* aëroplane
afecto *m.* affection
afirmar to affirm
afligirse to worry
af.mo=afectísimo most affectionate
agosto *m.* August
agradecer to thank, be grateful for
agua *f.* water
aguardar to wait for, await
águila *f.* eagle
ahí there
ahora now
aire *m.* air; **aire libre** open air
ajeno -a another's, other people's
al to the
albañil *m.* mason
aldea *f.* village
aldeano *m.* villager
alegrarse to be happy
alegre happy, joyous, merry
alegría *f.* joy
alejarse to withdraw, go away
alemán -ana German
Alemania *f.* Germany
alfombra *f.* carpet
algo something, anything, somewhat
alguien some one, somebody
algún *cf.* alguno
alguno -a some, any; *pl.* some, certain, a few; **no . . . alguno** not . . . any
alhaja *f.* jewel
aliento *m.* encouragement
alimento *m.* food
alma *f.* soul

almacén *m.* store, warehouse
almohada *f.* pillow
almoneda *f.* auction
almorzar to breakfast
almuerzo *m.* breakfast
alquilar to rent, hire
alrededor de around
alto -a high, tall, loud
altura *f.* height
alumbrar to illuminate, light
allá there, thither
allí there
amanecer to dawn
amar to love
amargo -a bitter
amarillo -a yellow
ambos -as both
América *f.* America
americano -a American
amigo -a *m. and f.* friend
amiguito -a *m. and f.* little friend
amistad *f.* friendship
ancho -a broad, wide; (*noun*) breadth, width
anchura *f.* breadth, width
andar to go, walk, run (*as a watch*); travel
animal *m.* animal
anoche last night
anochecer to become night, get dark
anteayer the day before yesterday, two days ago
anterior previous
antes before, beforehand; **antes de** before
anticipar to anticipate
anunciar to advertise
año *m.* year; **tener . . . años** to be . . . years old; **Año Nuevo** New Year
apetito *m.* appetite
aplastado -a flat
apoderarse to seize
apreciable estimable, kind
aprender (a) to learn (to)
aquel -ella *adj.* that, the former
aquél, aquélla, aquéllo, that one, that, the one, the former
aquí here
árabe Arab
árbol *m.* tree
aritmética *f.* arithmetic
armonía *f.* harmony
aroma *f.* perfume, aroma
arpa *f.* harp
arreglar to arrange, regulate, see to
arriba above, up
arroyo *m.* stream
artículo *m.* article
ascensor *m.* elevator, lift
asegurar to insure
asemejar to resemble
asesinar to murder
así as, so, thus; **así como** as well as
asiento *m.* seat
asistir to be present
asno -a *m. and f.* ass, donkey
áspero -a rough
asunto *m.* matter, affair, business
atacar to attack
atención *f.* attention
at.to = **atento** attentive, kind
aun still, yet; *accented after verb* **aún**
aunque although, even if
ausente absent
aventura *f.* adventure
avería *f.* damage
ayer yesterday; **antes de ayer** day before yesterday
ayudar to help
azúcar *m.* sugar
azul blue

bailar to dance
bajar to go down; take down; get out
bajo -a low
balcón *m.* balcony
banca *f.* banking
banco *m.* bank
bando *m.* band, side
barato -a cheap
barco *m.* boat, ship; **barco de vela** sailing ship
bastante enough, sufficient; sufficiently, quite, rather
batalla *f.* battle
baúl *m.* trunk
beber to drink
bebida *f.* drink
bestia *f.* animal
biblioteca *f.* library
bien well, comfortable
billete *m.* bill, bank note, ticket
blanco -a white
blando -a soft
bobo *m.* fool, booby
boca *f.* mouth
bolsillo *m.* pocket
bondad *f.* goodness, kindness
bonito -a pretty
bordado *m.* embroidery
bordar to embroider
bosque *m.* woods
brazo *m.* arm
bueno -a good, well
buey *m.* ox
buscar to seek, look for
buzón *m.* letter-box

cabalgar to ride
caballero *m.* gentleman, sir
caballo *m.* horse
caber to be contained
cabeza *f.* head
cabo *m.* end; **llevar a cabo** to carry out
cada *adj.* each, every; **cada uno (-a)** each, each one
caer to fall; *refl.* to fall down
café *m.* coffee
caja *f.* box
calentar to warm, heat
calidad *f.* quality
caliente hot, warm
calor *m.* heat, warmth; **tener calor** to be warm (*as a person*); **hacer calor** to be warm (*as the weather*)
callarse to hush, be silent
calle *f.* street
cama *f.* bed
camarero *m.* waiter
camarote *m.* stateroom
cambiar to change; to exchange
cambio *m.* change; exchange
camello *m.* camel
caminar to journey, walk
camino *m.* road, way
campana *f.* bell; mantelpiece
campanilla *f.* small bell
campesino -a *m. and f.* countryman, countrywoman
campo *m.* field, country; **casa de campo** country house
cansado -a tired; (*with* **ser**) tiresome
cansar to tire, fatigue
cantante *m. and f.* singer
cantar to sing
cañón *m.* opening of chimney, flue
capital *m.* capital (*money*); *f.* capital (*city*)
capitán *m.* captain
cara *f.* face
caramba good gracious
carbón *m.* coal
cardinal *m.* cardinal

cargar to load, charge; to debit
cariño *m.* affection
Carlos *m.* Charles
carne *f.* flesh, meat; **carne de vaca** beef
carnero *m.* sheep, mutton
caro -a dear, expensive
carta *f.* letter
cartero *m.* postman, letter-carrier
casa *f.* house; **en casa** at home; **a casa** home; **en casa de** *see section* 33, *a*
casar to marry; **casarse con** to marry, be married to
casi almost
caso *m.* case; **en caso que** in case
castellano -a Castilian; **el castellano** Spanish
catálogo *m.* catalogue
catedral *f.* cathedral
causa *f.* cause; **a causa de** on account of
ceguedad *f.* blindness
celebrar to be glad
célebre celebrated
cena *f.* supper
cenar to have supper, sup
centavo *m.* centavo, cent
centenar *m.* a hundred
centésimo -a hundredth
central central
centro *m.* center
cerca near
cerdo *m.* pig, pork
cerrado -a closed, shut
cerrar (*ie*) to shut, close
certificar to register
ciego -a blind
cielo *m.* heaven, sky
ciento, cien, one hundred
cierto -a certain, a certain
citar to mention
ciudad *f.* city
claro -a bright, light, clear
clase *f.* class, kind, sort
clima *m.* climate
cobijar to shelter
cobrar to cash, receive money
cobre *m.* copper
cocina *f.* kitchen, cooking
coche *m.* carriage
cochero *m.* driver, coachman
coger to catch, gather
colegio *m.* school
colgar to hang
colocación *f.* place, job
Colón *m.* Columbus
color *m.* color
comenzar to commence
comer to eat, dine
comerciante *m.* merchant
comercio *m.* commerce
comida *f.* dinner, meal
comisión *f.* commission
comisionista *m.* commission merchant
como as, like; while; **como que** when
cómo how
cómodo -a comfortable
compañero -a *m. and f.* companion
compañía *f.* company
completo -a complete
componer to compose, make up, mend
comprador *m.* buyer
comprar to buy
comprender to understand
compuesto *p.p. of* **componer**
común common; **por lo común** commonly
con with, toward; **para con** toward; **con tal que** provided that

concurrir to attend
conde *m.* count
conducir to conduct, lead, guide
confesar to confess
confiar to confide
confuso -a confused, embarrassed
conmigo with me
conocer to know, be acquainted with
conocido *m.* acquaintance
conozco *pres. indic. 1st sing. of* **conocer**
conque so then, *see section* 214, 9
conquista *f.* conquest
conquistador *m.* conqueror
conquistar to conquer
consentir (en) to consent (to)
considerar to consider
consigo with himself, herself, *etc.*
consiguiente *m.* consequence; **por consiguiente** consequently
consistir to consist
constar (de) to consist (of)
consultar to consult
consumidor *m.* consumer
contado: **al contado** for cash
contar (*ue*) to count, tell, relate; **contar con** count on
contener to contain
contento -a satisfied
contestación *f.* answer
contestar to answer
contigo with you, with thee
continuar to continue
contra against
contrario -a contrary
convertir to convert
convidar to invite
copiar to copy
copla *f.* couplet, verse, stanza
copo *m.* flake
cordillera *f.* mountain range
corregir to correct
correo *m.* mail, post-office
correr to run
corriente present (*month*), instant, current
cortado -a cut, broken
cortar to cut
corte *f.* court, capital, Madrid
cortés polite, courteous
corto -a short
cosa *f.* thing, affair; matter
coser to sew
costa *f.* coast
costar to cost
crecer to grow
creer to believe, think; *pres. part.* **creyendo**
criada *f.* maid servant
criado *m.* servant
Cristóbal *m.* Christopher
c.te = **corriente**
cuadro *m.* picture
cual which; **el (la) cual** who, which, whom
cuál *interrog. adj. and pron.* which, what
cualquier(a) any
cuando when; **cuándo** when, *interrog.*
cuanto -a how much, as much, all the, all that; **cuantos, cuantas,** *pl.* how many, as many, all the, all that; **cuanto antes** as soon as possible; **en cuanto** as soon as
cuánto -a *interrog. and exclam.* how much; *pl.* how many; **cuánto tiempo** how long; **cuántos años tienes** how old are you
cuarto *m.* room
Cuba *f.* Cuba
cubano -a Cuban
cubrir to cover; *p.p.* **cubierto**
cuchara *f.* spoon

cuchillo *m.* knife
cuenta *f.* account, bill
cuerda *f.* rope
cuero *m.* leather
cuerpo *m.* body
cuesta: **á cuestas** on one's back
cuestión *f.* question
cuidar to take care of
cumpleaños *m.* birthday (*anniversary*)
cumplimiento *m.* fulfillment
cumplir to fulfill, complete
cuñado -a *m. and f.* brother-in-law, sister-in-law
cuyo -a whose, of which

chaqueta *f.* jacket
cheque *m.* check
chico *m.* boy; *adj.* small
chimenea *f.* fireplace
chispa *f.* spark [sparks
chisporrotear to burn and throw out

D. = **don** Mr.
daño *m.* harm; **hacer daño** to hurt
dar to give, face, hit, strike (*of a clock*); **dar vuelta** turn
de of, from, since
debajo de under; beneath
deber to be (*morally*) obliged to, ought, owe, should
decir to say, tell
dedo *m.* finger
dejar to leave, allow, let
del of the, from the; **del cual** of whom
delante in front, before
demás other, rest
demasiado -a *adj.* too much, too many; *adv.* too, too much
dentro inside, within
dependiente *m.* clerk
derecho -a right, straight
desagradable disagreeable
descansar to rest
descanso *m.* rest
descubrir to discover
descuento *m.* discount
desde from, since; **desde . . . hasta** from . . . to; **desde que** since
desear to desire, wish
desembarcar to disembark, land
desembolso *m.* expenditure
deseo *m.* desire
desgracia *f.* misfortune
desgraciado -a unfortunate
desmentir to belie
desnudar to undress
despacio slowly
despacho *m.* office; **despacho de billetes** ticket office
despedirse *refl.* to take leave
despertar (*ie*) to awake, wake up; *refl.* to awake
después afterward; **después de** *prep.* after; **después que** *conj.* after
detallado itemized
detener to stop
determinar to determine
detrás behind
deuda *f.* debt
devolver to return, give back
día *m.* day; **de día** by day; **ocho días** a week; **quince días** a fortnight
diario -a daily; a day
dice *pres. indic. 3d sing. of* **decir** to say
diciembre *m.* December
dicho -a said, the said
dichoso -a happy
diente *m.* tooth
difícil difficult
difunto -a deceased
diga *pres. subj. of* **decir**

digo *pres. indic. 1st sing. of* **decir**
dijeron *pret. indic. 3d pl. of* **decir**
dinero *m.* money
Dios *m.* God
dirección *f.* address
directo -a direct, through
dirigir to direct; *refl.* address, turn, direct one's self
discípulo -a *m. and f.* pupil, scholar
discusión *f.* discussion
disgusto *m.* trial, displeasure
disimular to excuse, pardon
dispensar to excuse
dispuesto ready, disposed
distancia *f.* distance
distinto -a different
divertir *refl.* to amuse one's self, have a good time
dividir to divide
Dn. = **don**
Dña. = **doña**
docena *f.* dozen
doler to ache
dolor *m.* pain, ache, grief; **dolor de cabeza** headache
domingo *m.* Sunday
don, doña, *m. and f.* Mr., Mrs., Miss; **don Quijote** Don Quixote
donde where, in which; **en donde** where, in which
dónde *interrog.* where
dormir to sleep; *refl.* to fall asleep
dos two; **los (las) dos** both
dosel *m.* canopy
duda *f.* doubt
dudar to doubt
dueño *m.* master
dulce sweet
duque *m.* duke
duro -a hard, severe
duro *m.* dollar

e and
echar to throw, cast, pour (*as water*); *refl.* to throw one's self down, lie down; **echar en el correo** to mail
edición *f.* edition
edificio *m.* building
educación *f.* education
efectos *m.* effects, goods
ejemplar *m.* copy
ejercicio *m.* exercise
ejército *m.* army
el (la, lo, los, las) the, that, the one, those; **el que** who, whom, he, who, *etc.*
él he, him, it
eléctrico -a electric
elefante -a *m. and f.* elephant
elegante elegant
elevado -a high
ella she, her, it
ello it
ellos, ellas, they, them
emperador *m.* emperor
empezar to begin
emplear to employ, use
emprender to undertake
en in, into, on
encantar to delight
encargar to order; **encargarse de** to take charge of
encender to light, kindle
encina *f.* (evergreen) oak tree
encontrar to meet, find; **encontrarse con** to meet
encuentro *m.* encounter
enemigo -a *m. and f.* enemy; *adj.* hostile
enero *m.* January
enfermedad *f.* illness, sickness
enfermo -a ill, sick
enorme huge

Enrique *m.* Henry
enseñar to teach, show
ensuciar to get dirty
entender to understand; *refl.* to agree
entero -a entire, whole, firm
entonces then
entrada *f.* entrance
entrar to enter, go into; **hacer entrar** to show in, admit
entre between, among
entregar to deliver, hand over
enviar to send
envidiar to envy
equipaje *m.* baggage, luggage
eran *imperf. indic. 3d pl. of* **ser**
es *pres. indic. 3d sing. of* **ser**
escalera *f.* stairs
escoger to select, choose
escribir to write
escrito *p.p. of* **escribir**
escuchar to listen
escuela *f.* school
ese (esa, eso, esos, esas) that (those); **ése** *etc.* that one *etc.*; **eso** that which you say
espalda *f.* back
España *f.* Spain
español -ola Spanish
Español -ola *m. and f.* Spaniard, Spanish woman
especulación *f.* speculation
espejo *m.* mirror
esperanza *f.* hope
esperar to hope, wait (for), expect
espíritu *m.* spirit, mind
esposo -a *m. and f.* husband, wife
esquina *f.* corner
estación *f.* station, season
estado *m.* state
Estados Unidos *m. pl.* United States
estar to be
estatua *f.* statue
este (esta, esto, estos, estas) *adj.* this (these), the latter; **éste** *etc. pronoun*
este *m.* east
estimación *f.* esteem
estimada favor (*letter*)
estimar to value
estómago *m.* stomach
estrechar to press
estrecho -a narrow
estudiar to study
exacto -a exact
exclamar to exclaim
excusar to make excuses
éxito *m.* outcome, result, issue, success
expirar to expire
explicar to explain
explique Vd. explain (*pres. subj. of* **explicar**)
extranjero -a *m. and f.* stranger, foreigner
extrañar to surprise
extremo *m.* end

fábrica *f.* factory
fabricar to make, manufacture
fácil easy
facilidad *f.* ease, facility
factura *f.* invoice
facturar to check (*baggage*)
faltar to lack
familia *f.* family
favor *m.* favor; **hacer el favor** to do the favor
febrero *m.* February
fecha *f.* date
felicitar congratulate
feliz happy

feo -a ugly, homely
ferrocarril *m.* railway
fiel faithful
fiesta *f.* feast, festival, festivity
figura *f.* figure, form
figurar to figure; *refl.* to fancy, imagine
fijar to fix; **fijarse en** to notice, observe
fijo fixed
flor *f.* flower
Flor *f.* Flora
fonda *f.* inn, restaurant
formar to form
fortaleza *m.* fortress
fortuna *f.* fortune
francés -esa French
Francia *f.* France
franco -a frank
franqueo *m.* postage
franqueza *f.* frankness
frase *f.* sentence
frente *f.* front, forehead; **frente a** opposite
fresco -a fresh, cool; **al fresco** in the open air
frío -a *adj.* cold
frío *m.* cold; **tengo frío** I am cold; **hace frío** it is cold
frontera *f.* frontier, border
fruta *f.* fruit
fruto *m.* fruit, crops
fuego *m.* fire
fuente *f.* fountain, spring
fuera *impf. subj. 3d sing. of* **ir** to go
fuera de apart from, outside of
fuerte strong, mighty, powerful
fumar to smoke (*as tobacco*)
funda *f.* cover, case
fundar to found, build

gallina *f.* hen
ganar to earn, make (*money*), gain, win; **ganar a** to surpass
garganta *f.* throat
gas *m.* gas
gastar to spend, waste
gasto *m.* expense
gatito -a *m. and f.* kitten
gato -a *m. and f.* cat
general *m.* general
género *m.* goods
geografía *f.* geography
girar to draw (*drafts*)
giro *m.* turn, revolution; draft, order; **dar giro** to set in movement
gitano *m.* gypsy, tramp
gracias thanks, I thank you; **dar gracias anticipadas** to thank in advance
gramática *f.* grammar
gran *cf.* **grande**
grande great, big, large, grand
gritar to shout
grito *m.* shout
guante *m.* glove
guardar to keep, protect
guardia *f.* guard; *m.* policeman
guarismo *m.* numeral, cipher, figure
guerra *f.* war
guerrero *m.* warrior
gustar to taste, please; **me gusta** I like
gusto *m.* taste, pleasure

ha *pres. indic. 3d sing. of* **haber**
haber to have, be; **hay** there is, there are; **haber de** to have to
habitación *f.* room
habitar to live in, inhabit
hablador -ora talkative
hablar to speak, talk

hacer to make, do; **hacer falta** to be needed; **hace frío** it is cold; **hace una hora y media** an hour and a half ago; **cuánto tiempo hace** how long is it
hacia toward(s)
hacha *f.* ax
hallar to find; *refl.* to be
hambre *f.* hunger; **tener hambre** to be hungry
hasta to, up to, until, as far as, even
hay there is, there are (*cf.* haber)
hecho *p.p. of* **hacer**
herencia *f.* inheritance
hermano -a *m. and f.* brother, sister
hermoso -a beautiful, handsome, fine
hierba *f.* grass
hierro *m.* iron
hija *f.* daughter
hijito -a *m. and f.* little son, little daughter
hijo -a *m. and f.* son, daughter; *m. pl.* sons, children
historia *f.* history
hogar *m.* hearth, home
hoja *f.* leaf
hola hello
hombre *m.* man
hora *f.* hour; **qué hora es** what time is it; **a qué hora** when
horno *m.* oven
hoy to-day
hubo there was, there were (*cf.* haber)
huele *pres. indic. 3d sing. of* **oler** to smell
huevo *m.* egg
humildad *f.* humility

ida going; **billete de ida y vuelta** excursion ticket
idioma *m.* language
igual equal
imperio *m.* empire
importancia *f.* importance
importante important
importar to be of importance, concern, amount to; **no importa** no matter
importe *m.* amount, value
imposible impossible
inca *m.* Inca
incendio *m.* fire, conflagration
inclinar to incline
incluso included
inconveniente: no tener inconveniente to have no objection
indemnizar to indemnify
indicar to point out, show
indio -a Indian, Hindu
informes *m. pl.* information
ingeniero *m.* engineer
Inglaterra *f.* England
inglés -esa English
Inglés -esa *m. and f.* Englishman, Englishwoman
instante *m.* instant; **al instante** instantly
instruir to instruct
instrumento *m.* instrument
inteligente intelligent
intención *f.* intention
intenso -a intense
interés *m.* interest
interesante interesting
interesar to interest
interior interior, internal
invierno *m.* winter
ir to go, go on, continue; *refl.* to go off, go away
italiano -a Italian
izquierdo -a left

jabón *m.* soap
jamás ever, never; **no . . . jamás** never
jaqueta *f.* jacket
jardín *m.* garden
Jorge *m.* George
José *m.* Joseph
joven young
joven *m. and f.* (young) man, woman, youth
Juan *m.* John
Juana *f.* Jane
Juanito *m.* Johnny
jueves *m.* Thursday
juez *m.* judge
jugar to play
junio *m.* June
junto -a together; **junto a** near
justamente exactly

kilómetro *m.* kilometer

la *f.* the, that, the one, she, her, it; *pl.* the, those, they
la *pers. prn.* her, it; *pl.* them
labio *m.* lip
ladera *f.* side, flank
lado *m.* side
lágrima *f.* tear
lámpara *f.* lamp
lana *f.* wool
lápiz *m.* pencil
largo -a long; *n.* length
lástima *f.* pity
lavar to wash
le him, it, you; to him (her, it, you)
lección *f.* lesson
leche *f.* milk
leer to read
lejos far
lengua *f.* tongue, language
lento -a slow
les to them, to you
letra *f.* draft; letter of credit
levantar to raise; *refl.* to rise, get up
ley *f.* law
libertad *f.* liberty
libra *f.* pound
libre free
librero *m.* bookseller
libro *m.* book
limón *m.* lemon
lindo -a pretty
listo -a ready
lo the, it, him, you, so; **lo que** that, which, what; **lo cual** which
lodo *m.* mud
lomo *m.* back
Londres London
longitud *f.* length
los the, them, you; **los que** those who (whom); **los suyos** his own
lucha *f.* struggle
luego directly, soon, next; **luego que** as soon as
lugar *m.* place
lugareño -a *m. and f.* villager
luna *f.* moon
lunes *m.* Monday
luz *f.* light

llamar to call, knock, ring; *refl.* to be named
llano -a level
llave *f.* key
llegada *f.* arrival
llegar to arrive
llevar to bear, carry, take, wear; **llevar a cabo** to carry out
llorar to weep, cry
llover to rain

maceta *f.* flower-pot
madera *f.* wood
madre *f.* mother
maduro -a ripe
mal badly, poorly; *noun m.* evil, harm; *adj. cf.* **malo**
maleta *f.* handbag, valise
malo -a bad, ill, sick
mamá *f.* mamma, mother
mandar to command, order, send
manera *f.* manner, way
mano *f.* hand
mantenimiento *m.* support
mantequilla *f.* butter
manzana *f.* apple
mañana *f.* morning, to-morrow; **mañana por la mañana** to-morrow morning; **pasado mañana** day after to-morrow
mar *m. or f.* sea
marchar to march, go; *refl.* to go away
marearse to get seasick
María *f.* Mary
marido *m.* husband
martes *m.* Tuesday
marzo *m.* March
mas but
más more, most, plus; **no . . . más que** only
matar to kill
mayo *m.* May
mayor greater, greatest; elder, older, oldest; **por mayor** wholesale
me me, to me
medicina *f.* medicine
médico *m.* physician, doctor (of medicine)
medio -a half, a half, middle; **por medio de** by means of
medir to measure
mejicano -a Mexican
Méjico *m.* Mexico
mejilla *f.* cheek
mejor better, best
memoria *f.* memory
mencionar to mention
menor smaller, smallest; younger, youngest; **por menor** retail
menos less, least; **a menos que** unless
menudo: a menudo often
mercader *m.* tradesman
mercadería *f.* merchandise
merino -a merino
mes *m.* month
mesa *f.* table, desk
metal *m.* metal
metro *m.* meter
mi my
mí me
miedo *m.* fear; **tener miedo de** to be afraid of
mientras while
miércoles *m.* Wednesday
mil (one) thousand; *noun m.* thousand
militar *m.* soldier, officer
milla *f.* mile
millón *m.* million
mina *f.* mine
mineral *m.* mineral, ore
minuto *m.* minute
mío -a my, mine
mirar to look
mismo -a self, himself *etc.*; same, very; **mismo que** same as
mitad *f.* half
moda *f.* fashion; **de moda** fashionable
módico -a moderate
modo *m.* way, mode, manner
modulación *f.* modulation
molestar to annoy, trouble, disturb

molestia *f.* trouble
momento *m.* moment
moneda *f.* coin
montaña *f.* mountain
monte *m.* mountain, woodland
morir (*ue*) to die; *refl.* to die, be dying
motivo *m.* reason
mover to move, actuate
movimiento *m.* movement
mozo -a *m. and f.* youth, lad, lass; waiter, waitress
muchacho -a *m. and f.* boy, girl
muchísimo -a (*fr.* **mucho**) very much
mucho -a much, a great deal, very
mueble *m.* article (piece) of furniture; *pl.* furniture
muerte *f.* death
mujer *f.* woman, wife
mula *f.* mule
mundo *m.* world; **todo el mundo** everybody
muy very

nacer to be born
nacionalidad *f.* nationality
nada nothing, anything, any respect; **no . . . nada** nothing
nadar to swim
nadie no one, nobody, any one, anybody; **no . . . nadie** nobody, not anybody
naranja *f.* orange
nariz *f.* nose
nave *f.* ship; nave (*of church*)
Navidad *f.* Christmas Day
navío *m.* vessel
necesidad *f.* necessity
necesitar to need, want
negar to deny
negocio *m.* business, affair
negro -a black
nevar to snow
ni nor, or; **ni . . . ni** neither . . . nor; **ni . . . tampoco** not . . . either, nor . . . either
nieto -a *m. and f.* grandson, granddaughter
nieve *f.* snow
ninguno -a no, none; **no . . . ninguno** not any
niño -a *m. and f.* child, (small) boy, girl
no not, no
noche *f.* night; **esta noche** to-night; **de noche** by night
Nochebuena *f.* Christmas Eve
nombramiento *m.* appointment
nombrar to appoint
nombre *m.* name
norte *m.* north
norte-americano -a North American
nos us; to us, to ourselves
nosotros -as we, us
noticias *f. pl.* news
novedad *f.* novelty; occurrence
noviembre *m.* November
nuestro -a our, ours
nuevo -a new
número *m.* number; **gran número** a large number, many
nunca never, ever; **no . . . nunca** never, not ever

o or
objeto *m.* object
obligar to oblige, compel
obra *f.* work
obscurecer to get dark
obscuridad *f.* darkness
obscuro -a dark
octubre *m.* October
ocultar to hide

oculto -a hidden
ocupación *f.* occupation
ocupado -a busy, occupied
ocupar to occupy
odiar to hate
oeste *m.* west
ofrecer to offer
oído *m.* hearing, ear
oiga *pres. subj.* of **oír**
oír to hear
ojo *m.* eye
oler to smell; **oler a** to smell of
olfato *m.* sense of smell
olor *m.* odor
olvidar to forget
onza *f.* ounce
ópera *f.* opera
operación *f.* operation
opinar to opine, be of the opinion
opinión *f.* opinion
óptimo -a best, excellent
opuesto -a opposite, opposed
orador *m.* orator
orar to pray
orden *f.* order
ordinal ordinal
órgano *m.* organ
oriental Oriental
origen *m.* origin
original original
oro *m.* gold
os you
osar to dare
oscuro dark
otoño *m.* autumn
otro -a other, another
oveja *f.* sheep
oye (*cf.* **oír**) hear

Pablo *m.* Paul
paciencia *f.* patience
padre *m.* father, priest; *pl.* fathers, parents
pagar to pay
pagaré *m.* promissory note
página *f.* page
pago *m.* payment
pagué *pret. indic. 1st sing. of* **pagar**
país *m.* country, region, land
pájaro *m.* bird
palabra *f.* word
palabrota (*fr.* **palabra**) *f.* coarse expression, harsh word
palacio *m.* palace
palma *f.* palm tree
pan *m.* bread
panadero *m.* baker
pantalones *m.* trousers
paño *m.* cloth
pañuelo handkerchief
papá *m.* papa, father
papel *m.* paper; **papel secante** blotting paper
paquete *m.* package
para for, to, in order to; **para que** in order that, that
paraguas *m.* umbrella
pararse to stop
parecer to seem; *refl.* resemble; **qué le parece** what is your opinion
parecido -a similar
pared *f.* wall
pariente -a *m. and f.* relative, relation
parque *m.* park
parte *f.* part, direction; **por todas partes** everywhere; **la mayor parte** most
participar to inform
partida *f.* lot; game
partir to depart, leave
pasado -a past, last; **pasado mañana** day after to-morrow

pasar to pass, pass through, pass over, spend (*time*)
paso *m.* step; **dar un paso** take a step
pasto *m.* forage, food
patinar to skate
paz *f.* peace
P. D. = **posdata** postscript
pecho *m.* breast, chest
pedido *m.* order (*of goods*)
pedir to ask for; **pedir a** to ask of
Pedro *m.* Peter
pegar to stick
pelear to fight
peligro *m.* peril, danger
peligroso -a dangerous
pelota *f.* ball
pensar to think, intend, mean (*followed directly by an infinitive*); **pensar en** to think of, recall; **pensar de** to think of, form an opinion of
peor worse, worst
pequeño -a little, small, slight
percibir to perceive
perder to lose; **perder a** to ruin
pérdida *f.* loss
perfumería *f.* perfumery
periódico *m.* newspaper, periodical
perjuicio *m.* injury
permitir to permit
pero but
perro *m.* dog
persona *f.* person, anybody
personaje *m.* personage
pertenecer to belong
pesar to weigh
pescado *m.* fish
peseta *f.* peseta (*nearly twenty cents*)
peso *m.* weight; dollar
piano *m.* piano
pie *m.* foot; **de pie** standing
piedra *f.* stone
piel *f.* skin, hide
pierna *f.* leg
piso *m.* story, floor
pizarra *f.* slate, blackboard
placer *m.* pleasure
plano -a level
planta *f.* plant
plata *f.* silver
plato *m.* plate
pluma *f.* pen, feather; **pluma tintero** fountain pen
pobre poor
poco -a little; **un poco** a little; **pocos -as** few; **poco ha** a short while ago; **a poco** in a short time
poder (*ue*) to be able, can, may
polo *m.* pole
poner to put, place, set (*a table*), lay (*eggs*); *refl.* to put on (*clothing*), become, begin
por for, through, by, along, on account of, per; **por allí** over there; **por la mañana** in the morning; **por eso** therefore; **por qué** why
porque because
por qué why
portador *m.* bearer
poseer to possess, own
posible possible
postal postal
p.p.^{do} = **próximo pasado**
practicar to practice
precio *m.* price
preciso -a necessary
preferir to prefer
pregunta *f.* question
preguntar (a) to ask (*question*)
presencia *f.* presence
presentar to present, introduce
presente present
presidente *m.* president

préstamo *m.* loan
prestar to lend
primavera *f.* spring
primer(o) -a first
primo -a *m. and f.* cousin
príncipe *m.* prince
principiar to begin
prisa *f.* hurry; **tener prisa** to be in a hurry; **de prisa** quickly, fast
probar to prove, test; try on (*garments*)
producir to produce
profesor *m.* professor, teacher
prohibir to forbid, prohibit
prometer to promise
pronto soon, quickly
propina *f.* tip, gratuity
propio -a own
proteger to protect
próximo -a next; **próximo pasado** last month, ultimo
público -a public; *noun m.* audience
pueblo *m.* people, town
puerta *f.* door, gate
puerto *m.* port, harbor
pues since, well, why; so, then
pujar to bid
punto *m.* point, element

que, el (la, las, los, las) que, who, which, that; **lo que** that which, what
que *conj.* that, for, than, as; **tener que** to have to, must
qué *interrog. and exclam.* what, what a
quedar to remain; *refl.* to remain, stay; **quedarse con** to keep
quemar to burn
querer to wish, want, like, try; **querer a** to love, like; **querer decir** to mean, signify
querido -a dear
quien who, whom, he who, him who
quién *interrog.* who, whom
quitar take from, take off
quizás perhaps

ramo *m.* branch
rancho *m.* ranch
raro -a strange, odd, queer
rato *m.* while; **ratito** little while
rayo *m.* ray, beam
razón *f.* reason, right; **tener razón** to be right
rebajar to allow a discount
rebuznar to bray
recapitular to recapitulate
recibir to receive
recibo *m.* receipt
recobrar to recover
recordar to recall, remind
redondo -a round; **mesa redonda** table d'hôte
reducir to reduce
referir to relate, utter
regalar to give, present
regalo *m.* present, gift
regar (*ie*) to water, irrigate
regatear to bargain
registrar to search, examine
regresar to return
regreso *m.* return
reír to laugh; **reírse (de)** to laugh (at)
reloj *m.* watch, clock
remesa *f.* remittance
remitir to remit
repetir to repeat
reposar to rest
representar to represent
república *f.* republic
repuso rejoined
respetuoso -a respectful

responder to respond, answer; **responder de** to answer for, be responsible for
resultar to result
retrato *m.* portrait, picture
rey *m.* king; *pl.* monarchs
rezar to pray
rico -a rich
riegan water, irrigate (*from* **regar**)
rincón *m.* corner
río *m.* river
riqueza *f.* riches, wealth
rodar to roll
rodilla *f.* knee; **de rodillas** on one's knees
Rodolfo *m.* Rudolph
rogar to ask, entreat
rojo -a red
ropa *f.* clothing, clothes
ruido *m.* noise

S. S. Q. B. S. M. (P.) = seguro(-a) servidor (-ora) que besa sus manos (pies)
sábado *m.* Saturday
saber to know, know how, learn, be able; **saber á** to taste of
sabor *m.* flavor
sacar to take out, get
sala *f.* room; **sala de clase** classroom; **sala de espera** waiting-room
salga *pres. subj. of* **salir**
salida *f.* going out, departure; **salida del sol** sunrise
salir to come out, go out, issue, leave
saltar to jump
salud *f.* health; **bien de salud** in good health
saludar to greet
saludo *m.* greeting
sano -a healthful, well
santo -a holy, saint
sastre *m.* tailor
satisfacer to satisfy, please
se himself, herself, itself, one's self, yourself, themselves, yourselves; **(= le, les)** to him, to her, to it, to them, to you
secar to dry; *refl.* to wipe one's self
sed *f.* thirst; **tener sed** to be thirsty
seguida: en seguida next, immediately
seguir to follow, succeed, keep on
según *prep.* according to; *conj.* according as, as
segundo *m.* second
seguridad *f.* security, safety
seguro -a secure, sure, firm; *noun m.* insurance
selva *f.* forest
sello *m.* stamp
semana *f.* week; **la semana que viene** next week
semejante such a
sentado seated, sitting
sentar to set, seat; fit, suit; *refl.* to sit down, be seated
sentido *m.* sense
sentimiento *m.* feeling, grief, sorrow
sentir to feel, perceive; be sorry, regret
señor *m.* sir, gentleman, Mr.
Señor *m.* Lord
señora *f.* madam, lady, wife, Mrs.
señorita *f.* young lady, miss
sepa *pres. subj. of* **saber**
separar to take
se(p)tiembre *m.* September
ser to be
serie *f.* series
servicial obliging
servicio *m.* service

servidor -ora *m. and f.* servant; **servidor de Vd.** at your service
servir (*i*) to serve; **servirse de** to make use of; **sírvase Vd.** please, be kind enough; **para qué sirve** what is it used for
severo -a strict, severe
Sevilla *f.* Seville
si if; whether (*in indirect questions*); why, indeed (*in exclamations*)
sí yes
sí himself, herself, itself, yourself, one's self, themselves, yourselves
siempre always, ever, still
siga *pres. subj. of* **seguir**
siglo *m.* century
significar to signify, mean
siguiente following
silbar to whistle
silencio *m.* silence
silla *f.* chair, saddle
sin without
singular *m.* singular
sino but, except; **no . . . sino** only
sistema *m.* system
sitiar to besiege
sitio *m.* place
sobrado -a great
sobre on, above; **sobre todo** above all, especially
sobre *m.* envelope
sobrino -a *m. and f.* nephew, niece
sol *m.* sun
soldado *m.* soldier
solo -a alone, solitary
sólo *adv.* only, merely
sombrero *m.* hat
son they are (*from* **ser**)
sonar to sound, ring
sonido *m.* sound
sonreír to smile
sordo -a deaf
Sr., Sor., = **señor**
Sra., Sora., = **señora**
Srta. = **señorita**
su his, her, its, their, your, one's; **su . . . de Vd.** your
suave smooth
subir to go up, take up: get in
substancia *f.* substance
suceder to happen, follow (*in order*)
suelo *m.* floor, ground
sueño *m.* sleep; **tener sueño** to be sleepy; **en sueños** in dreams
sufrir to suffer
suma *f.* sum, amount
suministrar to supply
superficie *f.* surface
superior upper
suplicar to beg, entreat
surtido *m.* stock, assortment
sustituir to substitute, take one's place
sur *m.* south
suyo -a your, yours

tabaco *m.* tobacco
tacto *m.* touch
tal such, such a; **un tal** a certain; **con tal que** provided that; **tal vez** perhaps; **qué tal** how, what kind of
también also, too
tampoco as little, neither, nor . . . either
tanto -a as much, so much; **tantos -as** as many, so many; **tanto . como** as (so) much . . . as
tanto *adv.* so much, so
tardar to delay; **no tardará en venir** it will not be long before he comes

tarde late
tarde *f.* evening, afternoon
tarjeta *f.* card; **tarjeta de visita** visiting card
taza *f.* cup
te you, thee
té *m.* tea
teatro *m.* theater
techo *m.* ceiling
tela *f.* cloth, fabric
temer to fear
temprano early
tenderse to be spread
tenedor *m.* fork
tener to have, hold; **tener que** to have to
tercio -a third
terminar to finish, end
Terranova Newfoundland
terreno *m.* land
tesoro *m.* treasure
ti you, thee
tía *f.* aunt
tiempo *m.* time; weather; **cuánto tiempo hace** how long is it
tienda *f.* shop, store
tienen *pres. indic. 3d pl. of* tener
tierno -a tender
tierra *f.* earth, land
tinta *f.* ink
tío -a *m. and f.* uncle, aunt
tirar to throw; (*of colors*) shade
tiza *f.* chalk
toalla *f.* towel
tocar to touch, ring, play (*a musical instrument*); knock (*on a door*); be one's turn
todavía still, yet
todo -a all, every; *n.* all, everything; **todo el día** all day; **todas las noches** every night
tomar to take
tomo *m.* volume
tonto -a *m. and f.* goose, fool
torre *f.* tower
trabajar to work
trabajo *m.* work
traer to bring
traiga *pres. subj. of* **traer**
traje *m.* suit, costume
transportar to transport
tranvía *m.* tramway, street car
tratar to treat, have dealings (with)
trato *m.* bargain
tren *m.* train
trineo *m.* sleigh
triste sad, gloomy, dismal
tronco *m.* trunk of a tree
tu thy, your
tú thou, you
tuyo -a thine, yours; **el tuyo** *etc.* thine, yours

u or
último -a last
universidad *f.* university
uno -a one; **unos -as** some, any, about; **á la una** at one o'clock
usted (*pl.* **ustedes**) you
útil useful

V.(usted) you; **VV. (ustedes)** you *pl.*
vaca *f.* cow
valer to be worth; **más vale** it is better
valor *m.* valor, courage; value, valuables, securities
valle *m.* valley
van (*cf.* **ir**) they are going
vapor *m.* steam; steamer
vara *f.* yard

variar to vary, change
vario -a various, different
vaso *m.* glass
vaya *pres. subj. of* **ir**
Vd. (usted) you; **Vds. (ustedes)** you *pl.*
vecino -a *m. and f.* neighbor
vedar to forbid
vela *f.* candle; sail
velar to watch
velocidad *f.* speed
vencedor *m.* victor
vencer to conquer; win; fall due
vendedor *m.* seller
vender to sell
venga *pres. subj. of* **venir**
venir to come, happen
venta *f.* sale
ventana *f.* window
ver to see
verano *m.* summer
verdad *f.* truth; **¿no es verdad?** isn't it so?
verdadero -a true, real
verde green
verdura *f.* verdure
verificarse to take place
vestido *m.* garment, clothes, suit
vestir (*i*) to dress, clothe; *refl.* to dress one's self
vez *f.* time; **otra vez** again; **una vez** once
viajar to travel
viaje *m.* journey, travel, trip
viajero *m.* traveler
vida *f.* life, living
viejo -a old
viene (*cf.* **venir**) he comes
viento *m.* wind
viernes *m.* Friday
visible visible, to be seen
visita *f.* visit
visitar to visit
vista *f.* sight, view
visto -a *p.p. of* **ver** to see
vistoso -a showy
viudo -a *m. and f.* widower, widow
vivir to live
volar to fly
voluntad *f.* will
volver to turn, return, come back; **volver a** again, *see section* 107, 5; *refl.* to turn around
vos you
vosotros -as you, ye
voy *pres. indic. 1st sing. of* **ir** I go
voz *f.* voice
vuelta *f.* turn, return; **a vuelta de correo** by return mail; **estar de vuelta** to be back, have returned; **dar vuelta** to turn
vuestro -a your, yours

y and
ya already, now, *see section* 209, *c*; **ya no** no longer, no more
yo I

zapato *m.* shoe
zas smash

ENGLISH–SPANISH VOCABULARY

NOTE. Radical-changing verbs are indicated thus: sentir (*ie*)

a, an, un, una
about (*approximately*) cerca de; (*of*) de; (*with regard to*) respecto á
above *adv.* arriba; *prep.* sobre, encima de
absence ausencia *f.*
absent ausente
accent acento *m.*; *vb.* acentuar
accept aceptar
accompany acompañar
according to según
account cuenta *f.*; **on account** a cuenta; **on account of** a causa de
ache doler (*ue*)
acknowledge reconocer; **acknowledge the receipt (of)** acusar recibo (de)
acquaintance (*person*) conocido; (*knowledge*) conocimiento *m.*; **make acquaintance** conocer
act hecho *m.*; *vb.* hacer
actress actriz *f.*
address dirección *f.*; *vb.* saludar
admire admirar
adorn adornar
advance adelantar
advertise anunciar
advice consejo *m.*; **give advice** aconsejar
advise aconsejar (a)
affair asunto *m.*
affectionate carinoso -a; **very (most) affectionate** afectísimo -a, af.mo -a
afoot á pie
afraid: be afraid (of) tener miedo (de)
after *prep.* después de; *conj.* después que
afternoon tarde *f.*
again otra vez, de nuevo, volver a
age edad *f.*
ago: a long time ago hace mucho tiempo; mucho tiempo ha; *see section* 64, *a.*
agree (to) convenir (en); (*get along together*) entenderse
agreeable agradable
ahead delante; **straight ahead** derecho por adelante
air aire *m.*; **open air** aire libre, al fresco
Alfred Alfredo *m.*
alive vivo -a
all todo -a; **all day** todo el día
allow dejar, permitir; (*a discount*) conceder
almost casi
alone solo
along á lo largo de
aloud alto; en voz alta
already ya
also también

although aunque
aluminum aluminio *m.*
always siempre
A. M. de la mañana
America América *f.*; **North America** la América del Norte
American *adj.* americano -a, norteamericano -a
among entre
amount importar; ascender (*ie*) (a); importe *m.*
amphitheatre anfiteatro *m.*
amusing divertido -a
and y, (*before* i- *or* hi-) e
angry enojado -a, irritado -a, enfadado -a; **be angry** enojarse, irritarse, enfadarse
animal animal *m.*
Anna Ana *f.*
anniversary aniversario *m.*
another otro -a
answer responder; (*to a letter*) contestar (a); (*noun*) contestación *f.*
antiquity antigüedad *f.*
any (one) alguno -a; (*after negatives or expressions suggesting negation*) ninguno -a, alguno -a *after noun*; **in any way** (*after neg. etc.*) en nada
anybody alguien; (*after neg. etc.*) nadie; **anybody who** *see sec.* 166, 3
anything algo, alguna cosa; (*after neg. etc.*) nada
appear aparecer, (*seem*) parecer
applaud aplaudir
apple manzana *f.*; **apple tree** manzano *m.*; **apple orchard** manzanar *m.*
appoint nombrar
appraise apreciar
approach acercarse (a)
April abril *m.*
Arabic árabe
arch arco *m.*
argue argüir
arise levantarse
arithmetic aritmética *f.*
arm brazo *m.*
army ejército *m.*
around alrededor de
arrival llegada *f.*
arrive (at, in) llegar (a)
art arte *f.*
article artículo *m.*
as como; **as . . . as** tan . . . como; **as soon as** luego que, tan pronto como
ascertain averiguar
ashamed: to be ashamed tener vergüenza
ashore a (en) tierra
Asia Asia *f.*
ask (*question*) preguntar; (*beg, request*) pedir (*i*), rogar (*ue*); **ask of** pedir a; **ask for** pedir
assembly asamblea *f.*
at a, (= **in**) en
attack acometer
attend concurrir (a); asistir (a)
attention atención *f.*
auction subasta *f.*
audience los oyentes; asistencia *f.*
August agosto *m.*
aunt tía *f.*
autumn otoño *m.*
avoid evitar
await esperar
awake despertarse (*ie*)
away (*with expression of distance*) a *before noun*; *as adverb with verbs, see the verbs*

bachelor solterón *m.*
back (*of person*) espalda *f.*; (*of animal*) lomo *m.*

bad malo -a; **bad cold** fuerte resfriado; **it's too bad** es lástima
badly mal
bag saco *m.*; **traveling bag** maleta *f.*
baker panadero *m.*
ball pelota *f.*; **play ball** jugar a la pelota
bank banco *m.*
bark ladrar (*of dogs*)
basis tipo *m.*
bathe bañarse
be (*permanently or inherently*) ser; (*position or temporarily*) estar; **be cold** tener frío (*of a person or animal*); estar frío (*of an inanimate object*); hacer frío (*of the weather*)
bear one's self portarse
beard barba *f.*
beautiful bello -a, (*handsome*) hermoso -a
beauty hermosura *f.*
because porque
become ser; hacerse, ponerse
bed cama *f.*; **go to bed** acostarse (*ue*)
bedroom habitación *f.*
beef carne de vaca *f.*
before (*position*) ante, delante de; (*time*) antes de; *adv.* (*formerly, beforehand*) antes; *conj.* antes que
beg (*request*) pedir (*i*), rogar (*ue*)
begin empezar (*ie*;) principiar
believe creer
bell campana *f.*; campanilla *f.*; **bell tower** campanario *m.*
belong ser de, pertenecer
beloved amado -a; querido -a
below abajo
besiege sitiar
best mejor
bet *see section* 233, 2, *c.*
betrothed novio -a *m. and f.*
better mejor
between entre
Bible Biblia *f.*
bill (*account*) cuenta *f.*; (*bank-note*) billete *m.*; **bill of fare** lista de comidas *f.*
bird pájaro *m.*; ave *f.*
birthday día de cumpleaños, cumpleaños *m.*
bite morder (*ue*)
bitter amargo -a
black negro -a
blackboard pizarra *f.*
blind ciego -a
blow (*cornet*) tocar; **the wind blows** hace (hay) viento
blue azul
board pensión *f.*
boarding-house casa de huéspedes *f.*
boat barco *m.*
bold atrevido -a
Bolivian boliviano -a
book libro *m.*
bookkeeping teneduría de libros *f.*
bookstore librería *f.*
born: **be born** nacer
borrow pedir (tomar) prestado -a
bosom seno *m.*
both los dos, ambos; **both . . . and** así . . . como
box caja *f.*
boy muchacho *m.*; (*young boy*) niño *m.*
brand marca *f.*
brave valiente
Brazilian brasileño -a
bread pan *m.*
breakfast almuerzo *m.*; **take (have) breakfast** almorzar (*ue*)
breathe respirar
bridge puente *m.*

brief breve
bright claro -a ; (*of colors*) vivo -a
bring traer; **bring down** bajar ; **bring up** subir
broad ancho -a
broken roto -a
brook arroyo *m.*
brother hermano *m.* ; **brother-in-law** cuñado *m.*
brown moreno -a
brush cepillo *m.* ; *vb.* acepillar
build construir
building edificio *m.* ; caserón *m.*
burn quemar ; *intr.* arder ; **burn up** (*or* **down**) quemarse
burnish bruñir
bushel *use English word, w. accent*
business negocio *m.* (*usually plural*)
busy ocupado -a
but pero, mas ; (*after negative*) sino
butter mantequilla *f.*
button botón *m.*
buy comprar
buyer comprador *m.*
by (*with passive verbs*) por, de ; (*near*) junto á, cerca de, al lado de ; **by day** de día ; **by my watch** en mi reloj

calculation cálculo *m.*
call llamar
camel camello *m.*
can poder (*ue*) ; (*know how*) saber
candidate candidato *m.*
candle vela *f.*
cap gorra *f.*
capital capital *m.*, (*city*) *f.* ; (*letter*) mayúscula *f.*
captain capitán *m.*
car : **street car** tranvía *m.*
card tarjeta *f.*
care cuidado *m.*
Carlist carlista *m.*
carriage coche *m.*
carry off llevar, llevarse ; arrastrar
cart carro *m.*
case caso *m.* ; **in case** en caso que , (*pillow*) funda *f.*
cash al contado
cash-drawer caja de caudales *f.*
Castilian castellano -a
cat gato -a *m. and f.*
catalogue catálogo *m.*
catch coger ; (*take*) tomar ; **catch cold** coger un resfriado
cathedral catedral *f.*
cattle ganado *m.*
cause causa *f.* ; motivo *m.*
ceiling techo *m.*
celebrate celebrar
celebrated célebre
celebration fiesta *f.*
cent centavo *m.*
center centro *m.*
central central
century siglo *m.*
certain : **a certain** cierto -a ; un tal
chair silla *f.*
change cambiar ; (*ideas*) variar de
charge cobrar, llevar
Charles Carlos *m.*
charming encantador -ora
cheap barato -a
child niño -a *m. and f.* ; **children** niños *m. pl.* ; (*sons and daughters*) hijos *m. pl.*
childhood niñez *f.*
choose escoger
Christmas Navidad *f.* ; **Christmas Eve** Nochebuena *f.*
Christopher Cristóbal
church iglesia *f.*

circular circular
citizen ciudadano *m.*
city ciudad *f.*
civilized civilizado -a
class clase *f.*
clean limpiar; *adj.* limpio -a
climb subir
clock reloj (de pared, de mesa); **at six o'clock** a las seis; **what time is it** qué hora es
close cerrar (*ie*)
closed cerrado -a
closet alacena *f.*
cloth tela *f.*; paño *m.*
clothes ropa *f.*; vestidos *m.*
Co. *see* **company**
coach coche *m.*
coat levita *f.*; (*boy's coat*) chaqueta *f.*; (*overcoat*) gabán; (*evening or dress coat*) frac *m.*
coffee café *m.*
coin moneda *f.*
cold *adj.* frío -a; *noun* frío *m.*; (*illness*) resfriado *m.*; **be cold** tener frío; (*of the weather*) hacer frío
collar cuello *m.*
collection colección *f.*
colony colonia *f.*
color color *m.*
Columbus Colón
comb peine *m.*; *vb.* peinar
come venir; **comes** viene; **come in** entrar; **come out** salir; **come up** subir; **come back** volver; **come down** bajar
comfortable cómodo -a
command mandar; mando *m.*
community comunidad *f.*
company compañía *f.*; **Co.** c.ía
comparable comparable
complain quejarse (de)
completely completamente
composition composición *f.*
conceal ocultar
concert concierto *m.*
conclude concluir
condition estado *m.*
confess confesar
confident: be confident confiar (en)
conquer vencer; conquistar
consent consentir (*ie*) (en); consentimiento *m.*
consequently por consiguiente
consist constar (de)
constantly cada vez
consul cónsul *m.*
consumer consumidor *m.*
contain contener (*compound of* **tener**)
content, contented, contento -a, satisfecho -a
continent continente *m.*
continue continuar
copy copia *f.*; (*of a book*) ejemplar *m.*
cork corcho *m.*
corner rincón *m.*; (*of street*) esquina *f.*
cornet corneta *f.*
correct corregir (*i*)
correctly correctamente
Corunna la Coruña
cost costar (*ue*)
cotton algodón *m.*
count contar (*ue*); **count on** contar con
counter mostrador *m.*
countess condesa *f.*
country país *m.*; (*native land*) patria *f.*; (*as distinguished from the city*) campo *m.*; **country house** casa de campo
countryman campesino *m.*
court (*yard*) patio *m.*
cousin primo -a *m. and f.*

cover cubrir, *p.p.* cubierto
cow vaca *f.*
criminal criminal
cross atravesar (*ie*); pasar
cry gritar, dar voces; (*weep*) llorar
Cuba Cuba *f.*
Cuban *adj.* cubano -a
cuff puño *m.*
cup taza *f.*; (*wine cup*) copa *f.*
cure curar, sanar
currency moneda *f.*
custom-house aduana *f.*
cut cortar
cutlery cuchillería *f.*

daily diario -a, todos los días, cada día
dance bailar
danger peligro *m.*
dangerous peligroso -a
dare atreverse (a)
dark o(b)scuro -a
darkness o(b)scuridad *f.*
date fecha *f.*; *vb.* fechar
daughter hija *f.*
dawn amanecer
day día *m.*; **good day** buenos días
dead muerto -a
deaf sordo -a
deal: **a great deal of** mucho -a; *vb.* tratar
dear (*beloved*) querido -a, caro -a; (*expensive*) caro -a, costoso -a; **dear Sir** muy Señor mío; **dear Madam** muy Señora mía
death muerte *f.*
debt deuda *f.*
debtor deudor *m.*
December diciembre *m.*
decide determinar
dedicate dedicar
deed hecho *m.*
deep profundo -a, hondo -a
defend defender (*ie*)
defense defensa *f.*
delight: **be delighted** pasmarse
deliver entregar
demand exigir
denominator denominador *m.*
denote denotar
dense denso -a
depart partir
departure salida *f.*
deposit depositar
desire desear; deseo *m.*
despair desesperarse
destroy destruir
develop (*photo.*) revelar
developer revelador
diameter diametro *m.*
diamond brillante *m.*
dictionary diccionario *m.*
die morir (*ue*), *p.p.* muerto
different distinto -a
difficult difícil
diligence diligencia *f.*
dine comer
dining-room comedor *m.*
dinner comida *f.*
dirty sucio -a
discharge despedir (*i*)
discount descuento *m.*
discover descubrir
discovery descubrimiento *m.*
discuss discutir; tratar
displease dar un disgusto a
dispute disputa *f.*
distinguish distinguir
distribute distribuir; (*mail*) repartir
divide dividir
do hacer

dog perro *m.*
dollar (*in Spain*) duro *m.*, (*in America*) peso *m.*
domestic (*of a country*) nacional
door puerta *f.*
dose dosis *f.*
doubt duda *f.*; *vb.* dudar
down abajo
dozen docena *f.*
draft (*air*) corriente *f.*; (*money*) giro *m.*
draw sacar
drawer cajón *m.*; **little drawer** cajoncita *f.*
drawing dibujo *m.*
dream soñar (*ue*) (con); sueño *m.*
dress vestir (*i*); *intr.* vestirse (*i*)
drink beber
driver cochero *m.*
drop (*let go of*) soltar (*ue*); (*let fall*) dejar caer
drown ahogarse
dry secar; (*wipe*) enjugar
during durante
dust polvo *m.*
duty deber *m.*

each cada; **each other** el uno (al) otro
eagle águila *f.*
ear oreja *f.*; (*hearing*) oído *m.*
early temprano -a; pronto -a
earn ganar
earth tierra *f.*
east este *m.*
easy fácil
eat comer
education instrucción *f.*
egg huevo *m.*
either . . . or o . . . o; **not . . . either** tampoco
elbow codo *m.*
electric eléctrico -a
elevated elevado -a
elevation elevación *f.*
elevator ascensor *m.*
else: something else otra cosa
embrace abrazar
emerald esmeralda *f.*
emotion emoción *f.*
emperor emperador *m.*
employ emplear
employee empleado -a *m. and f.*
end extremidad *f.*; extremo *m.*; fin *m*
ending terminación *f.*
enemy enemigo -a *m. and f.*
England Inglaterra *f.*
English inglés -esa
engrave grabar
engraving estampa *f.*
enough bastante, suficiente
enter entrar (en)
envelope sobre *m.*
equal igual; *vb.* valer, equivaler (a)
establish establecer
estate finca *f.*
Europe Europa *f.*
even *adv.* aun; **even if** aunque
evening tarde *f.*; **good evening** buenas noches
ever (*always*) siempre; (*in a question*) jamás, alguna vez; (*with pronouns or adverbs*) *see section* 197; **not ever** no . . . nunca, no . . . jamás
every (one) todo -a; cada (uno -a); **every night** todas las noches; **every time** cada vez
everybody todos (*pl.*), todo el mundo *m.*
evident: be evident consta (*impersonal*)
exchange cambio *m.*; *vb.* cambiar

exercise ejercicio *m.*
expect esperar
expensive costoso -a; caro -a
express expreso *m.*
extend extender (*ie*)
extraordinary extraordinario -a
extreme extremado -a
eye ojo *m.*

face cara *f.*; *vb.* estar frente a
fact *see section* 206, 2; hecho *m.*
factory fábrica *f.*
fair feria *f.*
faithful fiel
fall caer; **fall down** caerse; (*of prices*) sufrir una baja
false falso -a
family familia *f.*
far lejos; **as far as** hasta
fashion moda *f.*
fast (*firm*) firme, seguro -a; (*swift*) veloz, ligero -a; **be fast** (*as a watch*) adelantar, estar adelantado
fast *adv.* (*firmly*) fuertemente, firmemente; (*rapidly*) aprisa, de prisa
fatal fatal
father padre *m.*; papá *m.*
fault culpa *f.*
favor favor *m.*; *vb.* favorecer; (*a letter*) grata, apreciable, estimada
fear temer
feather pluma *f.*
February febrero *m.*
federal federal
feel sentir (*ie*); *intr.* sentirse
feeling sentimiento *m.*
fellow ése
Ferdinand Fernando
fever fiebre *f.*
few, a few, pocos -as; unos (-as) cuantos (-as)
finally al fin
find hallar; (*meet*) encontrar (*ue*)
fine bueno -a
finger dedo *m.*
finger-nail uña (de dedo) *f.*
finish acabar; concluir
fire (*in the abstract*) fuego *m.*; (*burning wood or coal*) lumbre *f.*; (*conflagration*) incendio *m.*; (*to fire a gun*) disparar
firm casa *f.*; (*firm name*) firma *f.*: *adj.* firme
first primer(o) -a; (*in compound ordinals*) primo -a
fisherman pescador *m.*
fist puño *m.*
fit sentar (*ie*), caer, estar
fix fijar
flag bandera *f.*
fleet escuadra *f.*
floor suelo *m.*; (*story*) piso *m.*
flower flor *f.*
fly volar (*ue*)
fog neblina *f.*; niebla *f.*
foggy: it is foggy hay neblina
folks *see section* 98, *c.*
follow seguir (*i*)
food alimento *m.*
foolish bobo -a; tonto -a
foolishness tontería *f.*
foot pie *m.*; **on foot** a pie
for (*for the sake of, in exchange for*) por; (*destination*) para
forbid prohibir
forehead frente *f.*
foreign extranjero -a; **foreign country** el extranjero
forest monte *m.*; bosque *m.*; selva *f.*
forget olvidar (*often used as impersonal reflexive, see section* 269, 4)
fork tenedor *m.*

formidable formidable
fortnight quince días
found fundar
fraction quebrado *m.*
fragrant oloroso -a, fragrante
France Francia *f.*
Frances Francisca *f.*
French francés -esa
fresh fresco -a
Friday viernes *m.*
fried frito -a
friend amigo -a *m. and f.*
frighten espantar, asustar; **be frightened** asustarse
from de, desde; **from . . . to** de . . . a, desde . . . hasta
front: **in front of** delante de
fruit fruta *f.*
fry freír, *p.p.* frito
fur piel *f.*
furniture muebles *m. pl.*
further más allá

game partida *f.*
garden jardín *m.*
garment vestido *m.*
gasoline gasolina *f.*
generally generalmente
genius genio *m.*
gentleman señor *m.*; caballero *m.*
geography geografía *f.*
George Jorge *m.*
German alemán -ana
get (*obtain*) conseguir (*i*), obtener; (*from*) sacar; (*go after*) buscar; (*supply*) proporcionar, facilitar; (*become*) hacerse, ponerse; **get up** levantarse; **get in** subir a; **get out** bajar; salir
gift regalo *m.*
girl muchacha *f.*; niña *f.*
give dar
glad alegre, contento -a; **I am glad (to)** me alegro (de); tengo mucho gusto (placer) (en); lo celebro mucho
gladly de buena gana
glance mirada *f.*
glass vaso *m.*
glove guante *m.*
go ir; (*of a machine*) andar; **go away** marcharse, partir; **go out** salir; **go up** subir; **go into** entrar (en); **go to bed** acostarse (*ue*); **go on** ocurrir
God Dios *m.*
gold oro *m.*
good bueno -a; **be good for nothing** no valer nada, no servir para nada
good-by adiós; **good-by for a while** hasta luego; **good-by until we see each other again** hasta la vista; **say good-by** despedirse (*i*)
goodness bondad *f.*; (lo) bueno *n.*
goods géneros, mercancías, efectos (*all may be used in the singular*)
Gothic godo -a
govern gobernar (*ie*)
governor gobernador *m.*; (*Moorish*) alcaide *m.*
grammar gramática *f.*
granddaughter nieta *f.*
grandfather abuelo *m.*
grandmother abuela *f.*
grandparents abuelos *m. pl.*
grandson nieto *m.*
grant otorgar, conceder
great gran(de); **a great deal** mucho -a
greatly infinito
greatness grandeza *f.*
Greece Grecia *f.*
Greek griego -a
green verde

greet saludar
ground suelo *m.*
grow crecer; **grow dark** oscurecer
guide guía *m.* (*person*), *f.* (*book or thing*)
gun escopeta *f.*

hair pelo *m.*
half mitad *f.*; *adj.* medio -a; **a half** *or* **half a** medio -a
hand mano *f.*; *vb.* entregar; **come to hand** venir a (mis) manos
handful puñado *m.*
handkerchief pañuelo *m.*
handsome hermoso -a; guapo -a
happen acontecer, suceder
happy feliz
harbor puerto *m.*
hard duro -a; (*difficult*) difícil; *adv.* diligentemente, mucho
harm mal *m.*; (*damage*) daño *m.*
hasten apresurarse
hat sombrero *m.*
hate odiar, aborrecer
Havana la Habana
have *aux.* haber; (*possess, hold*) tener; **have to** tener que, haber de
he él; **he who** el que, quien
head cabeza *f.*
health salud *f.*; **be in good (better) health** estar bien (mejor) de salud
healthful saludable
healthy sano -a
heap montón *m.*
hear oír, sentir (*ie*)
heart corazón *m.*; **by heart** de memoria
heat calor *m.*
heaven cielo *m.*
heir heredero *m.*
help ayudar; socorrer
Henry Enrique *m.*
here aquí, acá
hereupon en esto
hesitate vacilar, dudar
hidden oculto -a
hide ocultar, esconder
high alto -a; elevado -a
highway carretera *f.*
him él, le, lo
his su, sus; suyo, *etc.*
historian historiador *m.*
history historia *f.*
hoarse ronco -a; **get hoarse** enronquecer
holiday fiesta *f.*
Hollander holandés -esa
holy santo -a
home (*to one's home*) a casa; **at home** en casa
honor honra *f.*
hope esperar; esperanza *f.*
horrible horrible
horse caballo *m.*
horseback: on horseback a caballo
hospital hospital *m.*
hot caliente
hotel hotel *m.*; fonda *f.*
hour hora *f.*
house casa *f.*
how cómo; **how much (many)** cuanto -a (-os, -as)
huckster revendedor *m.*
humor humor *m.*
hundred ciento
hunger hambre *f.*
hungry hambriento -a; **be hungry** tener hambre
hunt buscar
hurriedly con prisa
hurry prisa *f.*; **be in a hurry** tener prisa
husband esposo *m.*; marido *m.*

ice hielo *m.*
idea ocurrencia *f.*; idea *f.*
if si
ignorant ignorante
ill enfermo -a, malo -a; *adv.* mal
illness enfermedad *f.*
illuminate alumbrar
imagine imaginar; figurarse
immediately en seguida
imperfect imperfecto -a
importance importancia *f.*
important importante
impure impuro -a
in en; (*within*) dentro de; (*after a superlative*) de
incalculable incalculable
incline inclinar
inclined inclinado -a
inclose encerrar (*ie*)
independence independencia *f.*
independent independiente
India la India
Indian indio -a
indicative indicativo *m.*
indispensable indispensable
inexplicable inexplicable
infantry infantería *f.*
influence influencia *f.*
inform participar, avisar
inherit heredar
ink tinta *f.*
innkeeper posadero *m.*; hostelero *m.*
inquire preguntar (por)
instant instante *m.*; (*of the present month*) del corriente, del presente
instead of en lugar de; en vez de
instruction instrucción *f.*
insult insultar
insurance seguros *m.*
insurrection insurrección *f.*
intend pensar (*ie*), tener la intención de
intended destinado -a
interest interés *m.*; *vb.* interesar
interesting interesante
introduce presentar
invention invención *f.*
invest invertir (*i*)
invite convidar, invitar
iron hierro *m.*
Isabella Isabel *f.*
island isla *f.*
it él, ella, ello, lo, la
Italian italiano -a

Jane Juana *f.*
January enero *m.*
jewel alhaja *f.*
John Juan *m.*
journey viaje *m.*
judge juez *m.*
July julio *m.*
jump saltar
June junio *m.*
just *adv.* justamente, exactamente; **to have just** acabar de

keen vivo -a
keep guardar
key llave *f.*
kilo kilo, kilogramo *m.*
kilometer kilómetro *m.*
kind clase *f.*; especie *f.*; *adj.* bondadoso -a; apreciable *or* atenta (carta); **be kind enough** tener la bondad (de); servirse (*i*)
kindness bondad *f.*
king rey *m.*
kingdom reino *m.*
kiss besar
kitchen cocina *f.*

knife cuchillo *m.*; (*clasp-knife*) navaja *f.*; (*penknife*) cortaplumas *m.*
knock llamar, tocar
know (*be acquainted with*) conocer; (*be aware of, know how, be able*) saber; **I know** conozco *or* sé; **let them know** conozcan *or* sepan

lack faltar
lady señora *f.*
lamp lámpara *f.*
land terreno *m.*; *pl.* tierras *f.*
language idioma *m.*; (*style of language*) lenguaje *m.*
large gran(de). *See section* 46, 2.
last último -a, postrer(o) -a; **last week** la semana pasada; *vb.* durar
late tarde
Latin latín *m.* (*the language*); *adj.* latino -a
laugh reír; **laugh at** reírse de
laundress lavandera *f.*
law ley *f.*
lawyer abogado *m.*
lazy perezoso -a; haragán -ana
leader jefe *m.*
leaf hoja *f.*
leap year año bisiesto *m.*
learn aprender (a); (*news*) saber
least menos; **at least** a (por) lo menos
leave dejar, abandonar; (*depart*) partir; (*go out*) salir; **take leave** despedirse (*i*)
left izquierdo -a; **on the left** a la izquierda
leg pierna *f.*
lend prestar
length longitud *f.*; largo *m.*
less menos
lesson lección *f*
let (*leave*) dejar; (*permit*) permitir; (*rent*) alquilar, arrendar (*ie*); (*to express will*) *present subj. with* que *or without*
letter carta *f.*; (*of alphabet*) letra *f.*
letter-carrier cartero *m.*
level nivel *m.*
liberal liberal
liberty libertad *f.*; **take the liberty** permitirse
library biblioteca *f.*
lie mentir (*ie*)
lie down acostarse (*ue*)
lieutenant teniente *m.*
life vida *f.*
light luz *f.*; *vb.* alumbrar, iluminar; (*kindle*) encender (*ie*)
lighten relampaguear
like querer (a), gustar (de); **I like** me gusta (*lit.* it pleases me); *adv.* como
likely *see section* 266
line linea *f.*; renglón *m.*
listen escuchar; (*exclamation*) ¡oye!
little poco -a; (*small*) pequeño -a; chico -a
live vivir
living vida *f.*
lock cerrar a llave, echar llave a
locked cerrado -a a llave
London Londres *m.*
long largo -a; **a long time** mucho tiempo; *see* **tardar**; **as long as** mientras, mientras que
look (**at**) mirar; (*appear*) parecer; **look for** buscar; **look like** parecerse a
lose perder (*ie*)
loud alto -a
love amar; querer (a)
lovely precioso -a

low bajo -a
lower inferior
luck suerte *f.*
lucky dichoso -a

machine máquina *f.*
madam señora *f.*
magazine revista *f.*
mail correo *m.*; *vb.* echar al correo
male varón *m.*; (*of animals*) macho
man hombre *m.*; **his men** los suyos
mania manía *f.*
manner manera *f.*; modo *m.*
manufacture fabricar
many muchos -as
march marchar
March marzo *m.*
market mercado *m.*
marry casarse (con)
Mary María *f.*
master amo *m.*
match fósforo *m.*; *vb.* caer bien con
matter importar
may poder; tener permiso (de)
May mayo *m.*
meal comida *f.*
mean (*to intend*) pensar (*ie*); (*to signify*) significar, querer decir
measure medir (*i*); medida *f.*
meat carne *f.*
medicine (*science of*) medicina *f.*; (*drug*) medicamento *m.*
Mediterranean mediterráneo
meet encontrar (*ue*); encontrarse con
mend remendar (*ie*), componer; recomponer
merchandise mercancías *f.*
merchant comerciante *m.*
message recado *m.*
meter metro *m.*
metric métrico -a
Mexican mejicano -a
Mexico Méjico *m.*
middle medio -a
mile milla *f.*
military militario -a
milk leche *f.*
million millón *m.*
mind espíritu *f.*
mine mío; el mío *etc.*; (*minerals*) mina *f.*
minimum mínimo *m.*
minute minuto *m.*
mirror espejo *m.*
miser avariento *m.*
Miss (la) señorita; (*before given names*) doña
mistake error *m.*; falta *f.*; **be mistaken, make a mistake,** equivocarse
moderate módico -a
moment momento *m.*
Monday lunes *m.*
money dinero *m.*
month mes *m.*
moon luna *f.*
Moorish moro -a
more más
moreover además
morning mañana *f.*; **to-morrow morning** mañana por la mañana; **good morning** buenos días
most más; (*very*) muy
mother madre *f.*
mountain montaña *f.*
mouth boca *f.*
move moverse (*ue*)
Mr. (el) señor; (*before given names*) don
Mrs. (la) señora; (*before given names*) doña

much mucho -a; **very much** muchísimo -a; **so (as) much as** tanto -a . . . como; **too much** demasiado
mud lodo *m.*; (*mire, slime*) fango *m.*
mule mulo -a *m. and f.* (*the fem. form is generally used*)
music música *f.*
must tener que, haber de; (*moral obligation*) deber; (*conjecture*) deber de
mustache bigotes *m. pl.*
mutton carnero *m.*
my mi, mis; mío -a (-os, -as)

nail clavo *m.*; **finger nail** uña (de dedo) *f.*
name nombre *m.*; (*surname*) apellido *m.*; **my name is** me llamo
napkin servilleta *f.*
narrow estrecho -a
nation nación *f.*
national nacional
native natural *m. and f.*
nature naturaleza *f.*
nave nave *f.*
near cerca de, junto a
nearly casi
necessary necesario -a; **be necessary** ser necesario, ser preciso, ser menester
neck cuello *m.*; pescuezo *m.*
necktie corbata *f.*
need necesidad *f.*; *vb.* necesitar; hacer falta
neglect dejar de
neighbor vecino -a *m. and f.*
nephew sobrino *m.*
never nunca, jamás
new nuevo -a
newcomer recién venido -a
news noticia *f.*; noticias *f. pl.*; **qué . . . de nuevo**
newspaper periódico *m.*
next próximo -a, siguiente; **next month** el próximo mes, el mes que viene (entra); **the next page** la página siguiente
niece sobrina *f.*
night noche *f.*; **last night** anoche; **by night** de noche
no no
no one, none, ningun(o) -a
nobody nadie
noise ruido *m.*
nominally nominalmente
nor ni
north norte *m.*; *adj.* norte
North American norte-americano -a
nose nariz *f.*
not no; **not . . . either** ni . . . tampoco
notary escribano *m.*
note notar; **be noted** notarse
nothing nada
November noviembre *m.*
now ahora
number número *m.*; (*numeral*) guarismo *m.*
numeration numeración *f.*
nut nuez *f.*

oblige obligar
obliging servicial
obtain obtener
occupy ocupar
occur ocurrir
o'clock *fem. def. art.*; **at six o'clock** a las seis; *see section* 78
October octubre *m.*
of de; (*with verb of separation*) a
offer ofrecer; oferta *f.*
office despacho *m.*; (*position*) cargo

often muchas veces; **a menudo**
oil aceite *m.*
old viejo -a, anciano -a; (*ancient*) antiguo -a; **older** (*of persons*) mayor; **be years old** tener años
on en; (*on top of*) sobre, encima de; **on time** a tiempo
once una vez; **at once** en seguida
one un(o) -a; **one or another** uno (-a) u otro (-a), alguno (-a) que otro (-a); **that one** aquel *etc.*
only único -a; *adv.* sólo; no . . . más que; no . . . sino
open abrir, *p.p.* abierto; **open air** *see* air
opinion opinión *f.*
opportunity oportunidad *f.*
opposite opuesto, contrario; *adv.* en frente; *prep.* frente a
or o; u (*bef.* o- *or* ho-); **not . . . or** no . . . ni
orange naranja *f.*
orator orador *m.*
order (*command*) orden *f.*; (*commercial*) pedido *m.*; *vb.* pedir (*i*), mandar; **in order to** para; **in order that** para que
origin origen *m.*
original original
other (*another*), otro -a; (*the rest*) demás
ought deber
our nuestro -a
ours nuestro; el nuestro *etc.*
out fuera; (*outside*) afuera; **go out** salir
outdoors afuera, fuera de casa
over (*upon*) sobre; (*above*) encima de; (*to the other side of*) al otro lado de; **over there** por allí
overcoat sobretodo *m.*; abrigo *m.*; gabán *m.*
owe deber
own propio -a; mismo -a
owner dueño -a *m. and f.*
ox buey *m.*

pace paso *m.*
pack envasar, empaquetar
package paquete *m.*
page página *f.*
painting cuadro *m.*
pale pálido -a
Panama el Panamá
paper papel *m.*; (*newspaper*) periódico *m.*
pardon perdón *m.*; *vb.* perdonar
parents padres *m. pl.*
Paris París
park parque *m.*
parlor sala *f.*
part parte *f.*; *vb.* separarse
partner socio *m.*
party tertulia *f.*; (*political*) partido *m.*
pass pasar
past *adj.* pasado -a; **at half past one o'clock** a la una y media
past (lo) pasado *n.*
patience: get out of patience desesperarse
Paul Pablo *m.*
pay pagar; (*pay a visit*) hacer
payment pago *m.*
peace paz *f.*
pearl perla *f.*
pen pluma *f.*
pencil lápiz *m.*
peninsula península *f.*
penknife cortaplumas *m.*
peon peón *m.*
people pueblo *m.*; (*persons*) gente *f.*
pepper pimienta *f.*
per cent por ciento

perfect perfecto -a
performance representación *f.*
perhaps tal vez, quizás
permission permiso *m.* (de)
permit permitir
person persona *f.*
personage personaje *m.*
personal personal
Peru el Perú *m.*
Peter Pedro *m.*
Philip Felipe *m.*
Philippines Filipinas *f. pl.*; **in the Philippines** en Filipinas
philosophy filosofía *f.*
Phœnicians fenicios *m. pl.*
photographic fotográfico -a
physician médico *m.*
piano piano *m.*
pick up recoger
picture cuadro *m.*; (*portrait*) retrato *m.*
piece pedazo *m.*; (*of music, etc.*) pieza *f.*; (*of furniture*) mueble *m.*; (*coin*) moneda *f.*, pieza *f.*
pillar pilar *m.*
pillow almohada *f.*
pink clavel *m.*
pity piedad *f.*; misericordia *f.*; lástima *f.*; **it is a pity** es lástima
place sitio *m.*; plaza *f.*; lugar *m.*; *vb.* colocar, poner
plain vega *f.*
plan proyecto *m.*
plate plato *m.*; (*photographic*) placa *f.*
play jugar (*ue*) (a); (*on a musical instrument*) tocar
please gustar, agradar; (*be kind enough*) hágame Vd. el favor (de), tenga Vd. la bondad (de)
pleasure gusto *m.*; placer *m.*
plural plural *m.*
plus más
P. M. (*till dark*) de la tarde; (*after dark*) de la noche
pocket bolsillo *m.*
poem poesía *f.*
point punto *m.*
pole (*of the earth*) polo *m.*; **north pole** polo norte
polite cortés
political político -a
politician político *m.*
pond estanque *m.*
poor pobre
population población *f.*
pork carne de cerdo *m.*
portable portátil
porter portero *m.*
position colocación *f.*; puesto *m.*
possess poseer
possibility posibilidad *f.*
possible posible
post (*letters*) echar al correo
postman cartero *m.*
post-office correo *m.*; casa (administración) de correos *f.*
potato patata *f.*; (*in most parts of Spanish America*) papa *f.*
pound libra *f.*
pour echar
practical positivo -a
praise alabar
pray rezar; orar
prefer preferir (*ie*)
presence presencia *f.*
present regalo *m.*; presente *m.*; *vb.* presentar; **present with** regalar; **be present** asistir (a); **at present** al presente
president presidente *m.*
press prensa *f.*
pretty bonito -a; lindo -a

prevent impedir (*i*)
price precio *m.*
priest cura *m.*
principal principal
print imprimir, *p.p.* impreso
prisoner prisionero *m.*; cautivo *m.*
prize premio *m.*
probability probabilidad *f.*
probably probablemente; *see section* 266
produce producir
production elaboración *f.*; producción *f.*
profound profundo -a
project proyecto *m.*
promise prometer
propose proponer
proprietor dueño *m.*
protect proteger
prove probar (*ue*)
provided that con tal que
province provincia *f.*
public público *m.*
publish publicar; **be published** publicarse, salir a luz
punish castigar
pupil discípulo -a *m. and f.*
purchase compra *f.*; *vb.* comprar, adquirir
pure puro -a
purse bolsa *f.*; bolsillo *m.*
push empujar
put poner; **put out** (*a fire or light*) apagar; **put in** meter; **put back** reponer; **put on** poner

quality calidad *f.*
quarter cuarto *m.*; **at a quarter past one o'clock** a la una y cuarto
question pregunta *f.*; (*discussion*) cuestión *f.*

rag trapo *m.*
rail (*railway*) ferrocarril *m.*
rain llover (*ue*); lluvia *f.*
raise levantar
rank orden *f.*
rare raro -a
rascal bribón *m.*
reach alcanzar; (*touch*) tocar; (*extend*) tender (*ie*), extender (*ie*); (*arrive at*) llegar a
read leer
ready listo -a
realm reino *m.*
reason razón *f.*
recall recordar (*ue*)
receipt recibo *m.*
receive recibir
recently recientemente, recién
recognize conocer
recommend recomendar (*ie*)
red rojo -a, colorado -a, encarnado -a
refrigerating = **to make ice**
refuse negarse (*ie*)
regard: **in regard to** referente á
regards recuerdos *m. pl.*
regiment regimiento *m.*
register certificar
regret sentir (*ie*)
relate contar (*ue*); referir (*ie*)
relative pariente *m.*
religious religioso -a
remain quedar, quedarse; restar
remember acordarse (*ue*) (de); recordarse (*ue*)
reminder recuerdo *m.*
remit remitir
rent alquilar
repeat repetir (*i*)
reply contestar
republic república *f.*
resemble parecerse (a)

reserve reservar
reside vivir, tener su casa
residence residencia *f.*
respect estimación *f.*; respeto *m.*
respectable respetable, estimable
rest descansar; (*support*) apoyar; descanso *m.*; los demás
restaurant fonda *f.*
retinue comitiva *f.*
return volver (*ue*), regresar; (*give back*) devolver (*ue*); (*interest*) devengar; (*of mail, steamer, etc.*) vuelta *f.*
reveal revelar
review revista *f.*
ribbon cinta *f.*
rich rico -a
ride ir en coche, tranvía, *etc.*; caminar; (*horse*) montar a caballo
right justo -a; (*as compared to left*) derecho -a; **on the right** a la derecha; **be right** tener razón
ring tocar (*person*); sonar (*ue*) (*thing*)
ring sortija *f.*; anillo *m.*
ripe maduro -a
rise levantarse; (*of sun, moon, etc.*) salir; (*of prices*) alzar
rob robar
roll rodar (*ue*)
Roman romano -a
Rome Roma *f.*
roof techado *m.*
room cuarto *m.*; habitación *f.*; **bedroom** alcoba *f.*; **bathroom** cuarto de baño *m.*; **classroom** sala de clase *f.*; **dining-room** comedor *m.*; **state-room** camarote *m.*; (*space*) lugar *m.*, espacio *m.*
rose rosa *f.*
run correr; **run away** huir
Russian ruso -a *m. and f.*

sad triste
safe seguro -a
said: he said dijo
sailor marinero *m.*
saint san(to) -a *m. and f.*; **saint's day** día del santo *m.*, días *m. pl.*
salary sueldo *m.*
sale venta *f.*; **be for sale** venderse
salt sal *f.*
same mismo -a
satisfied contento -a; **be satisfied** quedar contento
Saturday sábado *m.*
save salvar
say decir
scandalous scandaloso -a
scarcely apenas
school escuela *f.*; (*high*) colegio *m.*
scold reñir (*i*)
scratch lacerar
sea mar *m.*
seam costura *f.*; (*in metal*) junta *f.*
search registrar
season estación *f.*
seat asiento *m.*; **be seated** estar sentado
second segundo *m.*
secret secreto *m.*
secure seguro -a
see ver
seed semilla *f.*
seek buscar
seem parecer, figurarse
select escoger
self mismo -a
sell vender
senator senador *m.*

send enviar, mandar
sense sentido *m.*
sentence frase *f.*
September se(p)tiembre *m.*
serious serio -a; (*dangerous*) grave, peligroso -a
servant criado -a *m. and f.*
serve servir (*i*); **serve as** servir de
service servicio *m.*; **at your service** para servir a Vd.
set sentar (*ie*); (*of the sun, moon, etc.*) ponerse; (*set the table etc.*) poner
several varios -as
severe severo -a
Seville Sevilla *f.*
sew coser
sexton sacristán *m.*
shadow sombra *f.*
shake (*hands*) estrecharse
share (*of stock*) acción *f.*
sharp recio -a
shave afeitar, rasurar; *intr.* afeitarse, rasurarse
sheep oveja *f.*; carnero *m.*
sheet sábana *f.*
shine lucir, brillar; **the sun shines** hace (hay) sol
shipment envío *m.*
shirt camisa *f.*
shoe zapato *m.*
shoot disparar
short corto -a; **a short while (time) ago** poco tiempo ha
should (*ought to*) deber
shout gritar; grito *m.*
show enseñar; (*point out*) indicar; mostrar; representación *f.*
shut cerrar (*ie*); *adj.* cerrado -a
Sicily Sicilia *f.*
sick enfermo -a; **be sick** estar malo
side lado *m.*
sign firmar; (*advertising*) letrero *m.*
signal señal *f.*
silk seda *f.*
silky sedoso -a
sill alféizar *m.*
silver plata *f.*
similar parecido -a
since *prep.* desde; *conj.* desde que
sing cantar
sir señor *m.*; caballero *m.*
sister hermana *f.*
sit down sentarse (*ie*); **be sitting** estar sentado
situated situado -a
situation colocación *f.*
skate patinar
skillful experto -a, hábil
slate pizarra *f.*
sleep sueño *m.*; dormir (*ue*); **go to sleep, fall asleep,** dormirse
sleepy: **be sleepy** tener sueño
slow lento -a, atrasado -a; **be slow** (*as a watch*) atrasar, estar atrasado -a
slowly despacio
small pequeño -a, chico -a
smell oler; **smell of** oler a; **it smells** huele
smoke humear, echar humo; **smoke tobacco** fumar tabaco
snow nevar (*ie*); nieve *f.*
so tan; **so much (many)** tanto -a, tantos -as; **so . . . as** tan . . . como; **he said so** lo dijo; **and so** y por eso, y así
soap jabón *m.*
soldier soldado *m.*
solid sólido -a

some alguno -a; *pl.* algunos -as, unos -as
somebody, some one, alguien; alguno -a
something algo, alguna cosa; **something else** otra cosa
son hijo *m.*
song canción *f.*
soon pronto, presto, temprano; **as soon as** luego que, tan pronto como, en cuanto
sorry afligido -a, triste; **be sorry** sentir (*ie*)
soul alma *f.*
sound sonido *m.*
soup sopa *f.*
south sur *m.*
South America la América del Sur
Spain España *f.*
Spaniard español -ola *m. and f.*
Spanish español -ola; (*the Spanish language*) el castellano, el español
speak hablar
special especial
spectacles quevedos *m.*
speech discurso *m.*
spend (*money*) gastar; (*time*) pasar
spoon cuchara *f.*; **teaspoon** cucharita *f.*
spring (*season*) primavera *f.*
squash calabaza *f.*
stairs escalera *f.*; (*steps*) escalón *m.*
stamp sello *m.*
stand up ponerse de pie; **be standing** estar de pie
state estado *m.*
station (*of railway*) estación *f.*
stay quedar, quedarse; **stay in bed** guardar cama
steal robar
steamer vapor *m.*
steel acero *m.*
step paso *m.*
stick pegar
still todavía; aun (*or* aún)
stocking media *m.*
stone piedra *f.*
stop (*movement*) detenerse, pararse (*leave off*) dejar (de); cesar (de)
story cuento *m.*; historia *f.*
straight derecho -a
strange extraño -a, particular
stranger extranjero -a *m. and f.*; (*unknown*) desconocido -a *m. and f.*; (*from out of town*) forastero -a *m. and f.*
street calle *f.*
street-car tranvía *m.*
strength fuerza *f.*
stripe raya *f.*
strong fuerte
study estudio *m.*; *vb.* estudiar
subscribe suscribirse (**a**)
success éxito *m.*
such, such a, tal
suffer sufrir
sugar azúcar *m.*
suit traje *m.*; **it suits** conviene
suitable a propósito (para)
summer verano *m.*
sun sol *m.*
Sunday domingo *m.*
supper cena *f.*; **have supper** cenar
support mantener
suppose suponer; *see section* 266
sure seguro -a
surface superficie *f.*
surprise sorprender
surround rodear
sweet dulce; **sweets** dulces *m. pl.*
swim nadar
system sistema *m.*

table mesa *f.*
tablet tableta *f.*
tailor sastre *m.*
take tomar; (*carry, conduct*) llevar; **take off** quitar; **take out** sacar
talk hablar
tall alto -a
tank tanque *m.*
taste gusto *m.*; *vb.* gustar; *intr.* saber a
tea té *m.*
teach enseñar
teacher profesor -a *m. and f.*; maestro *m.*
tear lágrima *f.*
tear romper, *p.p.* roto
teaspoon cucharita *f.*
telegraphy telegrafía *f.*
tell decir, contar (*ue*)
term (*word*) voz *f.*; **terms** condiciones *f. pl.*
than que; de (*before numerals*); del que, de la que, *etc.* (*before dependent clauses*)
thank dar (las) gracias (a), agradecer; **thank you** gracias
that *rel.* que
that *dem.* ese -a -o; aquel, aquella, aquello
that *conj.* que; (*in order that*) para que
that one aquél, aquélla
the el, la, los, las, lo
theater teatro *m.*
their su, sus; el (la, los, las) . . . de ellos (ellas)
them los, les, las; ellos, ellas
then entonces
there allí, allá; (*near person addressed*) ahí; **over there** por allá; **there is (are)** hay
therefore por consiguiente; por esto (eso)
they ellos, ellas
thick espeso -a
thief ladrón -ona *m. and f.*
thing cosa *f.*
think pensar (*ie*); (*believe*) creer, opinar; **think of** pensar en; **think about** pensar de
thirst sed *f.*
thirsty: be thirsty tener sed
this *dem.* este -a (-os, -as, -o); **this one** *prn.* éste, ésta, *etc.*
those who los que *etc.*
thousand, one thousand, mil
throat garganta *f.*
through por; **through ticket** billete directo *m.*
throw echar, arrojar; (*throw a ball, stone, etc.*) tirar
Thursday jueves *m.*
ticket billete *m.*
till *prep.* hasta; *conj.* hasta que
time tiempo *m.*; hora *f.*; (*multiplication*) vez *f.*; **what time is it** qué hora es; **the first time** la primera vez; **on time** a tiempo; **have a good time** divertirse (*ie*); **be behind time** estar atrasado
time-table itinerario *m.*
tin estaño *m.*
tired cansado -a
title título *m.*
to a, hasta; (*in order to*) para
tobacco tabaco *m.*
to-day hoy
together junto -a
to-morrow mañana; **day after to-morrow** pasado mañana; **to-morrow morning** mañana por la mañana
ton tonelada *f.*

to-night esta noche
too (*also*) también; **too (much)** demasiado -a; **it's too bad** es lástima
tooth diente *m.*
toothache: he has a toothache le duelen los dientes (*lit.* the teeth ache to him)
toward(s) hacia
towel toalla *f.*
tower torre *f.*
town pueblo *m.*; ciudad *f.*; población *f.*
trade comercio *m.*; mercado *m.*
train tren *m.*
traitor traidor -ora *m. and f.*
tramp gitano *m.*
translate traducir
travel viajar, caminar
traveling-bag maleta *f.*
treasure tesoro *m.*
treat tratar
tree árbol *m.*
tremble temblar (*ie*) (de); estremecer
trial ensayo *m.*
trip viaje *m.*
trousers pantalones *m. pl.*
true verdadero -a; (*faithful*) fiel; **it is true** es verdad, es cierto
trunk baúl *m.*
trust fiarse (en)
truth verdad *f.*
try (*test*) probar (*ue*); (*tempt*) tentar (*ie*); (*endeavor*) tratar (de), procurar, esforzarse (*ue*) (a)
Tuesday martes *m.*
Tunis Túnez
turn (*turn around*) volverse (*ue*); (*become*) ponerse, hacerse; (*a corner*) dar vuelta a; **turn out well** salir bien
twice dos veces
type tipo *m.*
typewriter máquina de escribir *f.*

ugly feo -a
umbrella paraguas *m.*
uncle tío *m.*; **uncle(s) and aunt(s)** tíos *m. pl.*
understand comprender; entender (*ie*)
unfortunate desdichado -a, desgraciado -a
unhappy infeliz
United States Estados Unidos *m. pl.*
unity unidad *f.*
unless a menos que
unpermitted no permitido
until *prep.* hasta; *conj.* hasta que
up arriba
us nos, nosotros -as; **to us** nos
use usar, emplear, servirse (*i*) de
useful útil
usual común
usually por lo común; de costumbre

vacant vacante
valise maleta *f.*
vapor vapor *m.*
various vario -a
vary variar (de)
vegetable legumbre *f.*
verse copla *f.*
very muy; mucho
vest chaleco *m.*
village aldea *f.*
visit visitar; visita *f.*
voice voz *f.*
volume tomo *m.*; volumen *m.*
vowel vocal *f.*

wages jornada *f.*
wait (for) esperar, aguardar
waiter mozo *m.*; camarero *m.*
wake (up) despertar (*ie*)
walk andar; ir; paseo *m.*; **take a walk** dar un paseo, ir a paseo
wall muro *m.*; (*inner wall of house*) pared *f.*; (*of fortification*) muralla *f.*
want (*lack*) carecer de; (*wish*) querer, desear
war guerra *f.*
warm caliente, cálido -a; **I am warm** tengo calor; **it is warm** hace calor; **warm water** agua caliente
warn advertir (*ie*)
wash lavar
wash-basin jofaina *f.*; palangana *f.*
watch reloj *m.*; *vb.* mirar
watchman guardia *m.*
water agua *f.*
wax cera *f.*
way camino *m.*; dirección *f.*; (*manner*) manera *f.*; modo *m.*; **not . . . in any way** no . . . en nada
we nosotros -as
wealth riqueza *f.*
wealthy rico -a, opulento -a
weapon arma *f.*
wear llevar
weather tiempo *m.*; **be good weather** hacer buen tiempo
wedding boda *f.*
Wednesday miércoles *m.*
week semana *f.*; **in a week** en ocho días; **in two weeks** en quince días
weep llorar
weigh pesar
weight peso *m.*
well bueno -a; bien de salud; *adv.* bien
west oeste *m.*
wet mojado -a; **get wet** mojarse
wharf muelle *m.*
what *prn. rel.* lo que; *interrog.* qué; (*which*) cuál; **what is mine** lo mío
whatever is *neuter article with adj.*
wheel rueda *f.*
when cuando; *interrog.* cuándo
whenever cuando, cuandoquiera que, siempre que
where donde; *interrog.* dónde
whether si; (*after* dudar *etc.*) que
which que, el cual, el que; *interrog.* cuál
while (*time*) tiempo; *conj.* mientras, mientras que
white blanco -a
who que, el cual, el que, quien; *interrog.* quién
whose cuyo -a; *interrog.* de quién
wicked malo -a
wide ancho -a
widow viuda *f.*
widower viudo *m.*
width anchura *f.*; ancho *m.*
wife mujer *f.*; señora *f.*; esposa *f.*
will (*be willing*) querer (*ie*); *otherwise* **will** *denotes future time*
win ganar
wind viento *m.*
window ventana *f.*
windy: it is windy hace (hay) viento
wine vino *m.*
winter invierno *m.*
wire hilo *m.*
wish querer (*ie*), desear
with con
without sin
woman mujer *f.*; **young woman** joven *f.*
wood madera *f.*; (*variety of wood*) palo *m.*; (*firewood*) leña *f.*

wool lana *f.*
word palabra *f.*
work trabajo *m.*; (*literary or artistic production*) obra *f.*; *vb.* trabajar
world mundo *m.*
worth: **be worth** valer
wrap abrigo *m.*
write escribir, *p.p.* escrito
writer el que escribe; (*author*) escritor
wrong: **be wrong** no tener razón

yard corral *m.*; patio *m.*; (*measure*) vara *f.*
year año *m.*; **leap year** año bisiesto
yellow amarillo -a
yes sí
yesterday ayer
yet todavía, aun (*or* aún); **as yet** hasta ahora
yield dar
young joven; **younger** menor
your tu; vuestro -a; su, el (la, los, las) . . . de Vd.

INDEX

Figures refer to sections

a, after verbs of motion, 101; 106, 5, *a*
  before direct personal object, 57; 134
  with infinitives, 106, 1; Appendix II, 2
  a — en, 221
  a lo que, 167, 3, *a*
  a ver, 106, 1, *a*
absolute superlative, 146
acá, 208, *a*
acabar de, with infinitive, 107, 4
acaso, 213
accent, 8
  written, 9
accusative case, *see* direct object
adjectives
  agreement, 28; 140
  apocopation, 46; 137
  as adverbs, 148
  as nouns, 147
  comparison, 47
  comparison, irregular, 48; 142, 6
  comparison of equality, 50
  comparative, use, 142
  compound, 138
  expressing dimension, 155
  gender, 29; 135
  meaning, before or after noun, 139
  modifying two nouns, 140
  plural, 30
  position, 52; 139
  superlative, 145
  superlative absolute, 146
adverbs, 208 ff.
  in **-mente**, 83; 211, *a*
  position, 216
agent after passive verb, 270, 2
agreement of verb with its subject, 259 ff.
  after relative, 164, 5; 260, *a*
al, with infinitives, 62, *b*; 106, 2
algo, 182; 210, 3; 277, 4
alguno, 179, 2; 180; 181, note; 185
  alguno que otro, 179, 5
"all," 192
allí, 208, *a*, *b*
alphabet, 1
andar, 283
ante — delante — antes, 222
approximation, 160
aquí, 208, *a*, *b*
arithmetical signs, 154
articles, *see* definite article *and* indefinite article
así, in wishes, 282, 3, *c*
augmentatives, 132

bajo — debajo, 223
bastante, 214, 6
"become," 295
bien, 216, *b*
"both," 186; 236
"but," 232

caber, 284
cada vez, 142, 3
caer, 285
capitalization, 12
cardinal numerals, 39; 149
"certain," 194
ciento, 39, *c*; 137, 3; 152, *b*
con with infinitives, 106, 3; Appendix II, 3

conditional, 77; 268
conditional clauses contrary to fact, 112; 279
conjugation, 15; Chapter XIV
conjunctions, 232 ff.
conocer, 286
conque, 214, 9
consonants, 5
  spelling for consonant sounds, 7
correlatives, 236
cosa, 160; 176, 2; 182; 183
cual, relative pronoun, 168
cuál, interrogative pronoun, 174
cuál . . . cuál, indefinite correlatives, 168, 1
cualquiera, 197, 3
cuán, 177, 3
cuando, 165, *b*; 209, *e*
cuanto, relative pronoun, 170
  cuanto — tanto, 142, 1
cuánto, interrogative pronoun, 175
cuatro, 149, 3
cuyo, relative pronoun, 169
cúyo, interrogative pronoun, 172, 2, *b*

dar, 287
dates, 40, *c*, *d*
days, 43
de, before collective numerals, 152, *d*
  between words in apposition, 128, 3; 237, 8
  denotes agent, 270, 2
  denotes means, 276, 6
  denotes possession, 33
  with infinitives, 106, 4; 277, 2; Appendix II, 4
  de a, 157, *b*; 230
deber de, 100, *c*; Appendix II, 7
decir, followed by noun clause, 104, *a*
definite article
  as demonstrative, 162, 6
  for possessive adjective, 56, *b*; 161, 2
  forms, 21; 123
  omission, 126; 179, 1
  repeated, 141
  uses, 26; 124
dejar
  with infinitive, 104, *b*
  dejar de, 100, *c*
demonstratives, 34; 162
  de los que, de estos que, = "the sort of," 162, 6, *c*, *d*
dimensions, 155
diminutives, 132, 2; 214, 8
diphthongs, 3
direct object, 57; 134; 203, 2
distance, 156
divisions of day, 45
donde, 165, *a*; 208, *f*

"each," 189; 190
echar, 288
"either," 187; 236; 261, *d*
el, feminine, 123, *a*
  el cual, 167
  el que, 108; 162, 6; 167
  el que, after comparatives, 143
"else," 183
en, 221; 225; 274, 5
  en ésta, 162, 4
estar, 25
  conjugation, 250
ethical dative, 204
"ever," 197
"every," 191
exclamations, 177

faltar, 289
family names, 113, 2, note
"few," 185
"former . . . latter," 162, 3
fulano, 196, 4

gender, 20; 129
gerund, 274
"give," 287

grande, 46, 2; 137, 1
gusta, 99

haber
  auxiliary, 70; 71; 276
  conjugation, 250
  finite verb, page 229, note
  impersonal, 253
  haber de, with infinitive, 107, 3
hacer
  with infinitive, 104, *c*
  idiomatic uses, 58; 64; 290
hacia, 208, *c*
hasta, 226; 227
hay que, with infinitive, 107, 2
héme aquí, *see* **haber**, 250

idiomatic expressions, 23
(The following references to idioms in Part I are given in order of occurrence to facilitate review.)
  una lección de español, 23
  una carta en español, 23
  Buenos días, ¿cómo está Vd.? 24
  está bueno, 25, *e*
  no hay, 31
  ¿Cuántos libros hay? 31
  ¿no es verdad? 38, *d*
  adiós, 38, *e*
  hasta luego, 38, *e*
  ¿A cuántos estamos? 40, *d*
  ¿Cuántos años tienes? 53, *b*
  hace buen tiempo, 58, *a*
  hay sol, 58, *b*
  ¿Tiene Vd. calor? 58, *c*
  ¿Quiere Vd.? 58, *e*
  ¿Qué quiere decir? 58, *e*
  Aquí se habla español, 61
  ¿Cómo se llama Vd.? 61
  Me quito el sombrero, 62
  al levantarme, 62, *b*
  hace ocho días, 64, *a*, *b*
  ¿Qué hay de nuevo? 64, *c*
  Muchas gracias, señor, 64, *d*
  No hay de qué, 64, *d*
  todos los días, 66, *b*
  todo el mundo, 66, *b*
  ¿Qué hora es? — Son las seis menos cuarto, 78
  Tiene Vd. su casa, 85
  Servidor de Vd., 85
  Sírvase Vd., 93
  Hágame Vd. el favor de repetir, 93
  Tenga Vd. la bondad de cerrar la puerta, 93
  ¿Qué le parece? 99
  a mí me gusta mucho, 99
  ¿Le gustan las manzanas? 99
  Tengo que despedirme, 107, 1
  Hay que hablar, 107, 2
  Ha de venir, 107, 3
  Acabo de llegar, 107, 4
  Vuelve a gritar, 107, 5

imperative mood, 86; 87; 277, 5
imperfect subjunctive as a pluperfect, 280
imperfect tense, 65; 264
impersonal verbs
  conjugation, 252; 253; 256
  substitute for passive, 272; 273
  use, 269
indefinite article
  form, 127
  use, 128
  omission, 128; 149, 1
indefinite feminine, 201
indefinite pronouns, 178 ff.
indefinite subject, 196
indirect object, 56
infinitive mood, 55; Lesson XIX; 277; Appendix II
inversion of verb, 115
intensification of statements, 214
interjections, 237
interrogative pronouns, 171 ff.
interrogative sentences, 17
"it," 199

la, indefinite, 201
le — lo — la — les, 200
letter-writing, 113
"little," 185
llevar, as auxiliary, 276, 2, *a*
lo, neuter article, 125
  neuter pronoun, 206
  lo cual, 167, 3
  lo de ayer, 162, 5, *c*
  lo que, 167, 3
  lo que, for **cuánto**, 177, 3, *a*
  lo que es, 167, 3, *b*
"long," referring to time, 209, *d*

más, 144
measure, 158
medio, 106, 1, *b*; 151, *c*
-mente, 83; 211
meter, 292
methods of address, 198
mismo, 139, 5, *b*; 205; 209, *b*
months, 42
"most," as a noun, 145, 7
mucho, 96; 184; 210, 2; 277, 4
muy, 96; 210, 1

nada, 182; 210, 3; 277, 4
negation, 18; 212
negative indefinite expressions after comparatives, 142, 4
neuter article, 125; 208, *d*
neuter pronouns, 206
ni, 212, 4; 236
ninguno, 179, 2; 180; 181, note
no, 212
  position, 118; 212
  redundant after comparatives, 142, 5
nouns
  gender, 20; 129
  number, 22; 130
  idiomatic use of plural, 133
  idiomatic use of singular, 66, *c*
  compound, 131
numerals
  cardinal, 39; 149
  ordinal, 40; 150
  fractional, 151
  collective, 152
  multiplicative, 153

o, 232, 2
ojalá, 282
"other," 188
otro, 183; 188

para, 229; 230, 2
  with infinitives, 106, 5
parte, 151, *a*; 208, *e*
participle, 67
  absolute constructions, 276, 5, 7
  past, 69; 249; 276
  present, 68; 274
passive voice, 270; 271
  substitutes for, 271; 272; 273
perfect tense, 70
  use, 73
periphrastic conjugation, 258; 275
personal **a**, 57
personal endings, 14
personal pronouns, 36; 79; 80; 81; 82; 198; 200
  position of objective pronouns, 81; 207
  position with present participle, 68, *a*
  position with imperative, 91; 92
  prepositional (disjunctive) forms, 82; 202
  redundant, 203
  two object pronouns, 94; 203
  = "some" with **hay**, 95; 179, 4
pluperfect tense, 71
poco, 185; 277, 4
poder, 291
poner, 292
por, 217; 229; 270, 2; 272, *a*
  with infinitives, 106, 6

position of adjectives, 52; 139
of adverbs, 117; 212; 216
of infinitive, 120, *a*
of predicate adjective, 116
of subject of participle and infinitive, 121
of subject pronoun, 119
possession denoted by **de**, 33
possessive adjectives, 37; 97
possessive pronouns, 98; 161
prepositions, 217 to 231
before clauses, 231
before infinitives, Appendix II
double, 230
prestar, 293
preterit tense, 63
radical changes, 63, *c*
use, 63; 65, *a*; 73, 2
price, 157
progressive action, 258; 275
propio, 205, *a*
pues, 233, 1
punctuation, 11; page 101, note 1

que
conjunction, 233, 2; 234; 277, 4; 279
a que, 233, 2, *c*
to intensify, 214, 3
relative pronoun, 75; 165
for **cuando**, 165, *b*
qué, interrogative pronoun, 173; 174, *a*
in exclamations, 177, 1; 128, 6
qué de, 177, 2
qué tal, 176, 1
qué tanto, 176, 4
querer, 58, *e*
quien, relative pronoun, 166
quién, interrogative pronoun, 172
in wishes, 282, 3, *d*
quién . . . quién, indefinite correlatives, 166, 5
quisiera, 112, *b*

radical-changing verbs, 54; 89; 244 to 247
rates, 159
recién, 211, 2
reciprocal verbs, 190; 257
reflexive verbs, 59; 60; 61; 92; 255
impersonal, 256; 273
substitute for passive, 272
relative pronouns, 75; 108; 163 ff.

saber, 286; 291
"said," 195
se la escribí, 94, *c*
seasons, 44
ser
as auxiliary, 254; 270, 1; 276, 3
as auxiliary, substitutes for, 270, 1, *a*
idiomatic uses, 295
impersonal, 269, 2
ser and **estar**, 25
ser de, with infinitive, 107, 6
servir, 294
si, 112, *c*; 214, 4
in wishes, 282, 3, *e*
sí, 212, 6
sí que, 214, 2
sino, 232, 4
sobrar, 289
subjunctive mood, 88; 109; 278 ff.
as imperative, 90; 91
future tense, 281
imperfect tense, 110; 279; 280
in dependent clauses, 109; 278
in unreal conditions, 112; 279
in wishes, 90, 2; 282
sequence of tenses after, 111
with adverbs of doubt, 213
"such," 193
suffixes, 132, 4
superlative, 47; 48; 145; 146
absolute, 146
syllabication, 10

tanto
to intensify, 214, 5
with comparatives, 142
tanto (tan) . . . como, 50
tardar en, 209, *d*, (1)
tener
as auxiliary, 276, 2
idiomatic uses, 53, *b*; 58, *c*; 85; 296
tener que, with infinitive, 107, 1
tenses, use
future, 76; 266
future perfect, 267
imperfect, 65; 264
perfect, 70; 73
pluperfect, 71
present, 16; 262
preterit, 63; 65, *a*; 73, 2
preterit perfect, 265
sequence of, 111
"than," 49; 143
"the . . . the," correlatives, 142, 1
time of day, 78
todo, 191; 192; 203, *a*; 212, 5
triphthongs, 4
tú, 36, *a*

uno a otro, 190
uno u otro, 187
uno y otro, 186; 190
unos, 179, 3
with numbers, 149, 2
Usía, 198, 1, *a*
usted, 36, *a*; 80, *a*; 198

valer, 297
vaya, 237, 6
verb
forms, 238 ff. *For particular verbs, see list*, Appendix I
compound tenses, 120; 241
defective, 251
impersonal, 252; 253; 269
impersonal reflexive, 256; 273
inceptive, 242, note, *a*, 10, page 212; 295, *a* (2)
in **-iar** and **-uar**, 242, *d*
in **-uir**, 248
irregular, 250
irregular past participles, 249
orthographic changes, 242
passive voice, 254; 270; 271
passive voice, substitutes for, 271; 272; 273
periphrastic conjugation, 258; 275
principal parts, 243
radical-changing, 244 ff.
reciprocal, 190; 257
reflexive, 255; 272
See also tenses, participle, subjunctive mood, *etc.*
verbal idioms, 283 to 297
vez, 41
volver a, with infinitive, 107, 5
vos, 198, 2, *a*
vosotros, 36, *a*; 198, 2
vowels, 2

wishes, 90, 2; 282
word-order, 114

y, 232, 1
ya, 209, *c*